3rd PREP
FIRST TERM

ENGLISH

AL ADWAA
Gem

2026



ALADWAA
Gem

ENGLISH

for Preparatory Schools

9 الصف الثالث الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Prepared by
Said Darahem
&
A Group of Experts in Teaching English

2026

الاسم: ....

رقم الموبايل: ....



امسح الكود واحصل على لينكات الأضواء الرسمية

Follow Us
16766
www.aladwaa.com

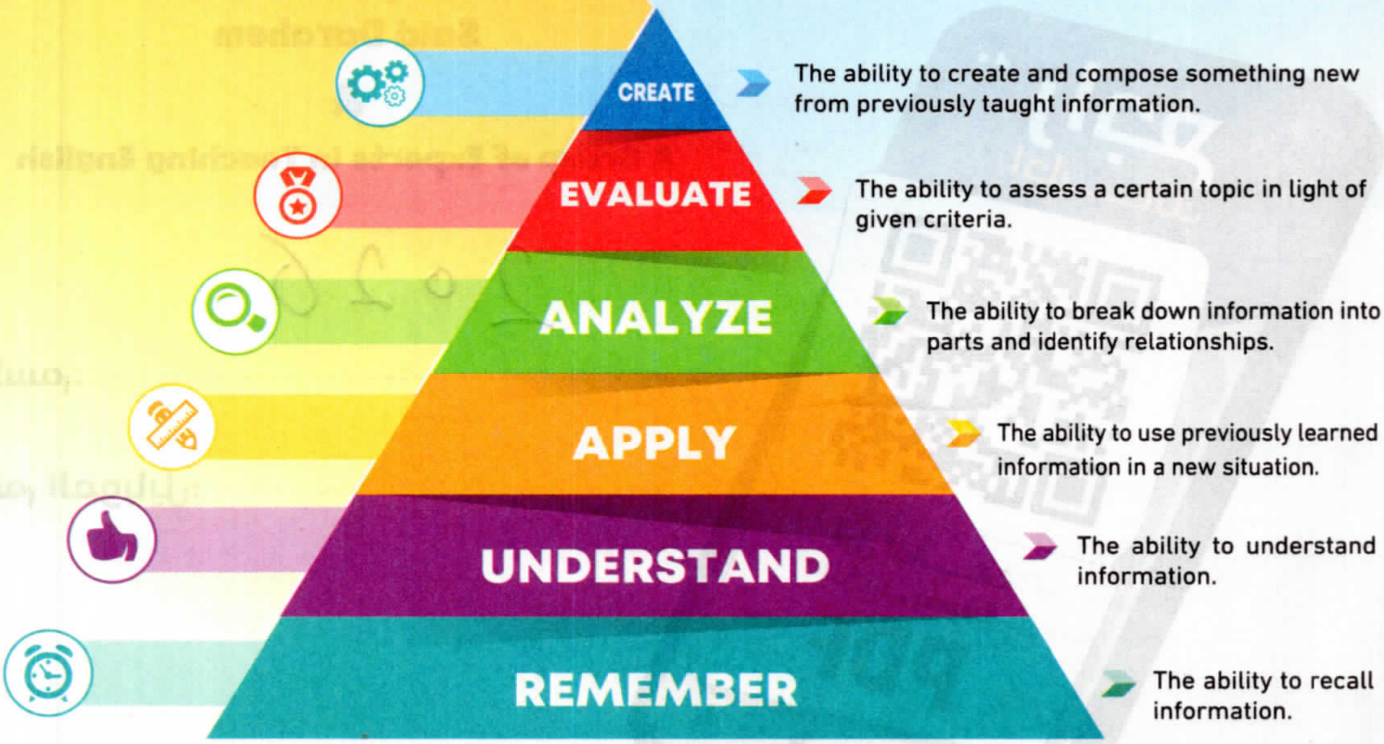
NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

BLOOM'S TAXONOMY
تصنيـــف بلـــوم

نواتـــــج التعلـــــم والمستويـــات المعرفيـــــة

تمثل نواتج التعلم ما ينبغى أن يعرفه الطالب ويكون قادرًا على أدائه بعد دراسته لمقرر دراسى معين، بينما تشمل المستويات المعرفية جميع النشاطات الذهنية أو العقلية، ويبدأ تصنيف نواتج التعلم فى المجال المعرفى من العمليات العقلية البسيطة ويمتد إلى العمليات الأكثر تعقيدًا (تصنيف بلوم)، ويوضح الشكل التالى هذه العمليات:

تم الاعتماد فى
إعداد التدريبات والأنشطة
داخل الكتاب
عـــلى تصنيـــف بلـــوم



ستجد تلك الأيقونات بجانب كل سؤال فى تدريبات الأضواء؛ لمعرفة تصنيف السؤال وفقًا لهرم بلوم المعرفى.

REMEMBER | UNDERSTAND | APPLY | ANALYZE | EVALUATE | CREATE

ALADWAA JOURNEY

من أجل رحلة تعليمية ممتعة تضمن لك التفوق

قمنا بتقسيم كل درس إلى:

Assess your progress | 0-49% Study again | 50-64% Practice more | 65-84% Take more notes | 85-100% Well done!

04 Assess Your Progress

تحديد مستواك
في نهاية كل اختبار

TEST YOURSELF | Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Finish the following dialog:
Leila and Omar are talking about personality. Omar is friendly and a little shy.
Leila : Omar, how would you describe your personality?
Omar : (1)

03 Test Yourself

اختبار على
كل درس

Practice | VOCABULARY EXERCISES

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
value – confidence – kindness – belief – support – confident

02 Practice

تدريبات متنوعة
ومتدرجة المستوى

STUDY | LESSON 1: Beyond My Looks | LESSON 2: Self-Discovery

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary
background (n) | real (adj)

01 Study

شرح مبسط ووافٍ



Contents

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2025-2026

الفصل الدراسي الأول

English for Preparatory Schools - Year Three (SB)

MONTH(S)	SEPTEMBER & OCTOBER	NOVEMBER	DECEMBER	JANUARY (2026)
UNITS	Units 1 + 2	Units 3 + 4	Units 5 + 6	General Revision

Start Smart SB pages 11&12

1 Complete the following dialog:

Leila asks Hany about his weekend activities.

Leila : Hi Hany, how was your weekend?
Hany : (1).. .
Leila : What did you do on Saturday?
Hany : (2).. .
Leila : (3)..?
Hany : I played football with my friends in the park.
Leila : Did you win the match?
Hany : (4).. .
Leila : (5)..?
Hany : Yes, we had pizza and cola after the game.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers most of North Africa and is about 9 million square kilometers. The weather there is very hot during the day and cold at night. There is little rain, so not many plants can grow. However, some people live in the desert. They are called Bedouins. They move from place to place with their animals, especially camels. Camels can survive in the desert because they can go for days without water. Tourists sometimes visit the Sahara to see the beautiful sand dunes and experience desert life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Sahara Desert is located in .... Africa.
   a) South b) North c) East d) West
2. The underlined word "**survive**" means "....................".
   a) die b) live c) visit d) leave
3. What helps camels survive in the desert?
   a) They drink a lot of water. b) They eat many plants.
   c) They can go for days without water. d) They sleep all day.

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

5. Why do tourists visit the Sahara Desert?

....

6. Who does the underlined word "**They**" refer to?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister wants to be a .... when she grows up.
   a) doctor b) job c) work d) career
2. I always enjoy .... to music in my free time.
   a) listen b) listening c) listens d) listened
3. .... you help me with my homework?
   a) Have b) Are c) Can d) Does
4. There are many .... in the zoo.
   a) animal b) animals c) an animal d) the animals
5. The book is .... the table and the chair.
   a) between b) in c) on d) under
6. I haven't finished my project ....
   a) already b) yet c) just d) since
7. The opposite of "happy" is "................................".
   a) sad b) funny c) tired d) busy
8. We should .... our teeth twice a day.
   a) brush b) point c) hurt d) ask
9. Where .... you live?
   a) do b) does c) are d) is
10. My brother is very good at .... football.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She .... (not/visit) her grandparents last weekend.
2. If it .... (be) sunny tomorrow, we will go to the beach.
3. He .... (study) for his exam every evening.
4. I have .... (just finish) my homework.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your school"

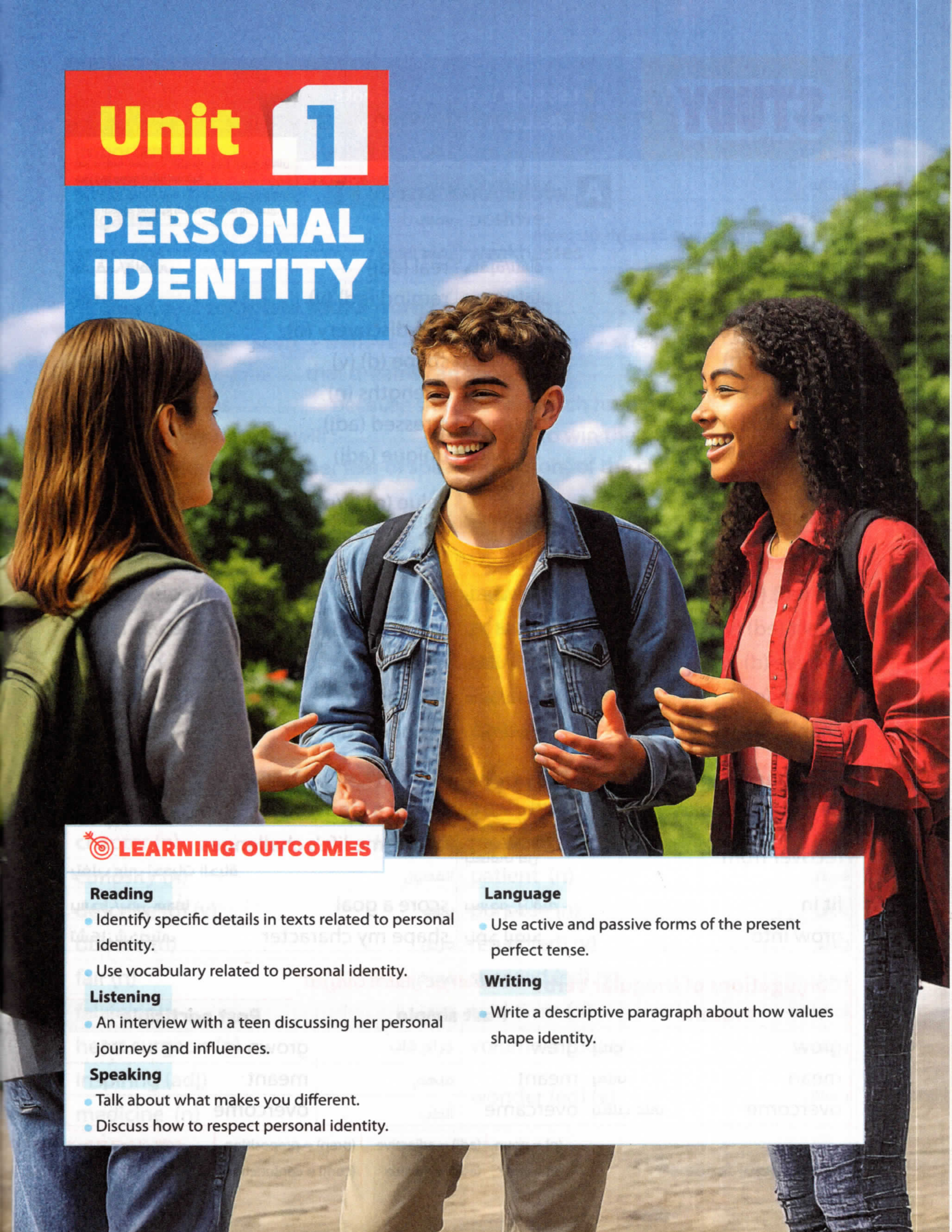
....

....

....

....

....



Unit 1

PERSONAL IDENTITY

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading
- Identify specific details in texts related to personal identity.
- Use vocabulary related to personal identity.

Listening
- An interview with a teen discussing her personal journeys and influences.

Speaking
- Talk about what makes you different.
- Discuss how to respect personal identity.

Language
- Use active and passive forms of the present perfect tense.

Writing
- Write a descriptive paragraph about how values shape identity.

STUDY

- **LESSON 1 :** Beyond My Looks — SB pages 14-15
- **LESSON 2 :** Self-Discovery — SB pages 16-17

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع إلى ملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

background (n)	خلفية/نشأة	real (adj)	حقيقى/واقعى
belief (n)	إيمان/اعتقاد	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكر
challenge (n)	تحدٍ	self-discovery (n)	اكتشاف الذات
character (n)	شخصية	shape (d) (v)	يشكل/يُكَّون
confidence (n)	ثقة	strengths (n)	نقاط القوة
dress (ed) (v)	يرتدى/يلبس	stressed (adj)	مضغوط/متوتر
kindness (n)	عطف/لطف	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
personal (adj)	شخصى	value (d) (v/n)	يقيم/يقدر/قيمة
popular (adj)	شائع/محبوب		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

act (ed) (v)	يتصرف	loud (adj)	عالٍ (صوت)
affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	mention (ed) (v)	يذكر
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يصدق	opinion (n)	رأى
certain (adj)	معين/محدد	scientist (n)	عالم
change (d) (v)	يغير/يتغير	strange (adj)	غريب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

beyond my looks	ما وراء مظهرى	one of a kind	فريد من نوعه
recover from	يتعافى من	overcome life's challenges	يتغلب على تحديات الحياة
fit in	ينسجم/يتأقلم	score a goal	يسجل/يحرز هدفًا
grow into	ينضج ليصبح	shape my character	تشكل شخصيتى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
mean	يعنى	meant	meant
overcome	يتغلب على	overcame	overcome

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
negative	سلبى	positive	إيجابى
strengths	نقاط القوة	weaknesses	نقاط الضعف

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

score – believe – overcame – came – stressed

1 Do you .... that dreams can come true?

2 Sama was .... because she had too much homework.

3 I hope our team will .... more goals to win the match.

4 Hadeer .... her fear of speaking in front of the class.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	individuality (n)	فردية/تميز شخصى
experience (n)	تجربة (حياتية)	personality (n)	شخصية
face (d) (v)	يواجه	qualities (n)	صفات
gain (ed) (v)	يكتسب	support (ed) (v/n)	يدعم/يساند/دعم
growth (n)	نمو	traits (n)	سمات/خصائص

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل	mind (n)	عقل
chapter (n)	فصل (كتاب)	movie (n)	فيلم
curiosity (n)	الفضول	patient (n)	مريض
describe (d) (v)	يصف	purpose (n)	غرض
disease (n)	مرض	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
fair (n)	معرض	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
falafel (n)	فلافل	traditions (n)	تقاليد
heart surgeon (n)	جراح قلب	volunteer (ed) (v)	يتطوع
inspiring (adj)	ملهم	wonder (ed) (v)	يتسائل
medicine (n)	الطب		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن بـ	lead to	يؤدى إلى
build confidence	يبنى ثقة	my voice matters	صوتى (رأيى) يهم
die from	يموت بسبب	people with heart problems	مرضى القلب
enter a science fair	يشارك فى معرض العلوم		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
break	يكسر/ينكسر	broke	broken
lead to	يؤدى إلى	led to	led to
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
succeed	ينجح	fail	يفشل
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

succeed – growth – repaired – broke

1 There is a rapid سريع .... in the world population.

2 Heba studied every day to .... in the final exam.

3 My brother .... the window while playing football.

Language Notes

1 gain يكتسب/win يفوز/earn يكسب

gain: يكتسب شيئًا معنويًا

- I gained a lot of **knowledge** during my training.

win يفوز (بشىء مادى)

- Adel wants to win the gold **medal** for running.

earn: يكسب مالًا/قوت يومه

- My dad earns a lot of **money** from his job.

2 **one of + اسم جمع** واحد من

- I believe listening is one of my **strengths**.

3 **remember يتذكر/remind يُذكر**

- Please, remind me to send him the book he needs. I may not remember to send it.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Definitions التعريفات

background	خلفية/نشأة	where someone comes from
identity	هوية	who a person is
self-discovery	اكتشاف الذات	learning more about who you are
value	يُقيم	have a high opinion[1] of someone or something

(1) انطباع جيد

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
popular (adj)	شائع/محبوب	famous	مشهور
believe (v)	يعتقد/يصدق	think	يعتقد
traits (n)	سمات/خصائص	qualities	صفات

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
person (n) شخصية	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	personal (adj) شخصى
kind (adj) عطوف/لطيف	-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	kindness (n) عطف/لطف
individual (adj) فردى	-ity		individuality (n) فردية/تميز شخصى
personal (adj) شخصى			personality (n) شخصية
compete (v) يتنافس	-tion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	competition (n) منافسة/مسابقة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

1 What do you think is more important: how you look or what is inside you? Why?

2 What things make you different from others?

Read the following text. *SB page 14*

Who I Am Beyond My Looks



At school, many students think they must look or act a certain way to fit in. But I've learned that my identity[1] isn't about what others see - it's about who I really am inside.

I'm Ahmed, 15 years old, and I live in Giza.

My background[2] is simple: I come from a family that values[3] hard work and kindness. These beliefs[4] shape my character and help me know what's right. I may not be the loudest person in class, but I believe listening is one of my strengths[5].

Sometimes, I feel stressed from social media to change how I act or dress. But I remind myself that being real is more important than being popular.

Through self-discovery[6], I've found more confidence. I now know that being unique[7] doesn't mean being strange — it means being real. And with strength[8] and self-respect, I can grow into the person I want to be.

(1) هوية	(2) خلفية/نشأة
(3) يقدر	(4) معتقدات
(5) نقاط القوى	(6) اكتشاف الذات
(7) فريد/مميز	(8) القوة

Post-reading questions:

1 How does Ahmed feel about social media?

....

2 What helps him stay confident?

....

3 What values does Ahmed mention?

....

4 What message is Ahmed trying to give from this text?

....

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think experiences help shape characters ? Why?

Listen to the audio.

SB page 16

"Self-discovery"



Host Today, we're speaking with Leila, a 15-year-old student from Alexandria. Leila has been on a journey of self-discovery[1] – learning what identity[2] means to her. Welcome, Leila!

Leila Hi! I'm happy to share.

Host So, how would you describe your identity?

Leila Well, I think identity is not just your name or where you're from – it's your personality[3], values[4], and your dreams. I come from a big Egyptian family that values traditions[5], but I also love reading, solving problems, and volunteering. That's part of who I am.

Host Have your beliefs[6] changed over time?

Leila Yes. When I was younger, I thought being quiet was a weakness[7]. But now I see it as a strength – I'm a good listener and I think before I speak. That helps me build confidence.

Host What influenced your growth the most?

Leila Honestly, my teachers. One encouraged me to enter a science fair, and that made me believe in my ideas. I realized my voice matters.

Host What does being real mean to you?

Leila It means showing who I really am, even if I'm different. I've learned that individuality[8] is something to celebrate.

Host Any advice for other teens about exploring who they are?

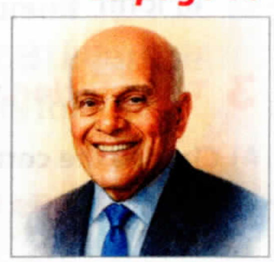
Leila Be patient with yourself. Identity isn't fixed – it grows and your differences are your power.

Host Thank you, Leila. That was inspiring[9].

(1) اكتشاف الذات
(2) هوية
(3) شخصية
(4) قيم
(5) تقاليد
(6) معتقدات
(7) ضعف
(8) الفردية
(9) ملهم

Listen to the text about Dr. Magdi Yacoub. Then, answer the following questions:

SB page 16



Dr. Magdi Yacoub was born in Egypt in 1935. When he was young, he enjoyed reading about science and medicine. When his father's sister died from heart disease, Magdi felt very sad. He began to wonder[1] how doctors could save people with heart problems. This question stayed in his mind[2] for years. He decided to study medicine and learn everything about the heart. His search for answers led him to become a heart surgeon[3]. By following his curiosity[4], Magdi discovered his true purpose[5]: to save lives. His story shows that sometimes our goal comes from a question or a problem we want to solve.

(1) يتسائل (2) عقل
(3) جراح (4) الفضول
(5) غرض

Post-listening questions: SB

1 What did Dr Magdi Yacoub enjoy reading about when he was young? ....

2 What was his true purpose in life? ....

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 12-13 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
wear	يرتدى/يلبس	....	popular	شائع/محبوب	....
think	يعتقد	....	relaxed	مسترخٍ	....
personality	شخصية	....	fail	يرسب	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

فى هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة القطعة:

What does the word "..............." mean?

من الأسئلة الأساسية فى القطعة تخمين معنى كلمة، ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالى:

How to guess the meaning of a word: كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد فى تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. حاول أن تفهم نوع الكلمة (اسم، فعل، صفة ....) .
2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition.
   اقرأ القطعة جيدًا. فمن الممكن أن تجد مترادفات، متضادات أو تعريفًا للكلمة.
3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.
   ابحث عن أدلة: أشر إلى الكلمات المحيطة بالكلمة غير المألوفة التى قد تساعد على فهم معناها.
4. Make a guess. حاول تخمين المعنى.

FOR EXAMPLE:

I'm Ahmed, 15 years old, and I live in Giza. My background is simple: I come from a family that values hard work and kindness. These beliefs shape my character and help me know what's right.

- The underlined word "shape" is similar in meaning to ....

a) form b) value c) face d) damage

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- I come from a family that values hard work and kindness.

- أنا من عائلة تُقدّر العمل الجاد واللطف. ☐
- أنا من عائلة تُحب العمل الشاق واللطف. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- أن تكون حقيقيًا أكثر أهمية من أن تكون مشهورًا.

☐ Being real is more important than being popular.

☐ Being popular is more important than being real.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

value – confidence – kindness – belief – support – confident

My brother always works hard to achieve his goals in life. He tries to be (1)................ about his abilities. At the same time, he tries to (2)................ his friends when they are in trouble. He has a strong (3)................ in being a positive citizen. That is why all my brother's friends (4)................ his behavior so much.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Anna is the main .... in the story I read yesterday.
   a) reader b) character c) listener d) buyer
2. Football is a very .... sport that millions of people around the world love to watch.
   a) personal b) unknown c) boring d) popular
3. A lot of students feel .... when teachers give them much homework at the end of the week; they usually need some time to relax.
   a) relieved b) boring c) stressed d) pleased
4. My brother has a strong .... in his abilities and skills, so he always achieves success.
   a) challenge b) belief c) pressure d) relief
5. Farida tried to be kind, so she could fit .... with the new group of friends.
   a) by b) at c) on d) in
6. The first step to achieve your goals is to have .... in yourself.
   a) confidence b) opinion c) pressure d) injustice
7. Summer camps are a time of .... and shaping characters for many students.
   a) opinion b) growth c) confidence d) self-discovery
8. "................" is where someone comes from.
   a) Identity b) Character c) Station d) Background
9. Don't let negative thoughts stop you. The antonym of "negative" is "................".
   a) complex b) positive c) nervous d) unimportant
10. This is a simple question. It's ....
    a) complex b) easy c) negative d) delicious

LESSON 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

personal – competition – personality – confident – support – playground

Self-discovery is like reading a new chapter in your favorite book. You never know what you'll find out about yourself. Once, I joined a school (1) .... in drawing, and I felt nervous at first. But with practice and (2) .... from my parents, I gained more skills. Besides, I felt (3) .... I've learned I had special qualities since I joined that competition. Exploring your (4) .... is exciting and helps you grow.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. Magdi Yacoub studied medicine, he wanted to be a heart ....
   a) artist b) surgeon c) patient d) writer
2. My uncle died .... a heart disease.
   a) at b) in c) off d) from
3. Teachers has a big .... on students' minds.
   a) influence b) question c) journey d) curiosity
4. In Siwa, people wear the traditional clothes that show their own local ....
   a) food b) identity c) honesty d) language
5. Good friends always .... each other and share happy moments together.
   a) succeed b) support c) describe d) forget
6. You must .... your problems and try hard to overcome them.
   a) face b) leave c) volunteer d) support
7. At the book ...., I bought three new books written by my favorite author.
   a) fear b) fair c) shelf d) fire
8. My grandfather has a lot of life .... because he has traveled all over the world.
   a) experiences b) personalities c) chapters d) traits
9. You need to be .... when you go to a job interview.
   a) tall b) tired c) confident d) sad
10. We all have personal goals. We add the suffix ".................." to form the noun of "personal".
    a) -ness b) -ity c) -tion d) -ment

C Language

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

Affirmative الأثبات

I/You/They/We/اسم جمع + have + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. I have **watched** the match.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + has + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. Mona has **eaten** lunch since 2 o'clock.

Negative النفى

I/You/They/We/اسم جمع + haven't + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. I haven't **watched** the match.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + hasn't + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. Mona hasn't eaten lunch yet.

Question السؤال

Have + I/you/they/we/اسم جمع + P.P. + ...?

e.g. Have you **watched** the match?

Has + he/she/it/اسم مفرد + P.P. + ...?

e.g. Has Mona **eaten** lunch?

Passive المبنى للمجهول

عند تحويل جملة فى زمن المضارع التام من مبنى للمعلوم لمبنى للمجهول نتبع التالى:

Object مفعول + (has - have) + been + P.P.

e.g.
- My car has been stolen since 2020.
- The Pyramids have been **built** for thousands of years.

Negative النفى

Object مفعول + (hasn't - haven't) + been + P.P.

e.g. Lunch hasn't been **served** yet.

Question السؤال

Has/Have + object مفعول + been + P.P.?

e.g. Has Lunch been **served** yet?

Usage الاستخدام

1. **Talk about actions or experiences that happened at an unspecified time in the past.** للتعبير عن مواقف أو التجارب التى حدثت فى وقت غير محدد فى الماضى.

   e.g. • My wife has **cooked** the food recently.

   • I have **bought** five mobiles.

2. **Talk about actions that started in the past and continue up till now.**

   للتعبير عن مواقف بدأت فى الماضى واستمرت حتى الآن.

   e.g. • I have **studied** English since 2014. (That means: I still study English at present).

3. **Talk about recently completed actions.** للتعبير عن حدث انتهى منذ فترة قصيرة جدًا.

   e.g. • We have just **made** our dinner.

4. **Talk about past actions that affect or explain the present.**

   للتعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى لكن أثره فى الحاضر.

   e.g. • They have **closed** the door. We can't go into the house.

Key Words الكلمات الدالة

يستخدم الزمن مع هذه الكلمات:

for – since – ever – never – just – already – yet – recently – lately

(for & since)

for + a period of time **for + مدة وقوع الحدث كاملة**	**since + a point in time** **since + بداية الحدث**
for two ... (hours/ days/ weeks/ months/ years/ centuries)	since ... (two o'clock/ Sunday/May/ 2010/ morning .../ winter ...)
for the last ... (Sunday/ week/ month/ May/ year)	since last ... (Sunday/ week/ month/ May/ year)
for a while للحظة/for ages لمدة طويلة for long لمدة طويلة/for more than لمدة أكثر من for a long time لمدة طويلة/for all of his life طوال حياته	لاحظ التعبيرات التالية: - since + noun/ (inf. + ing) (فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعدها) - since the age of منذ سن/since then منذ ذلك الحين

e.g. • I have spoken English for 26 years. • I have spoken English since 2000.

(just) حالًا/تـوًّا

- تأتى just بين have/has والتصريف الثالث من الفعل

e.g. • I have just eaten my food.

• He has just finished his homework.

(already) بالفعل

- تستخدم فى الجملة المثبتة بعد have, has وقبل التصريف الثالث.

e.g. I have already met Nadia.

- تستخدم فى نهاية الجملة للتأكيد:

e.g. I have booked the tickets already.

- ومن الممكن استخدامها أيضًا للتعبير عن الدهشة فى نهاية السؤال.

e.g. Have you finished cooking already? I'm surprised.

(yet) حتى الآن

- تستخدم فى الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية.

e.g. • Has Ali bought a mobile yet? • Ali hasn't finished his homework yet.

(ever) (من قبل)

- تستخدم فى الإثبات والاستفهام.

e.g. • Have you ever been to Paris?

- فى الجمل التى بها صفات التفضيل. • It's the most interesting match I have ever watched.

(never) ابدًا

- الجملة المثبتة بعد have, has وقبل التصريف الثالث وتفيد معنى النفى.

e.g. • I have never traveled abroad. • We have never lived in Giza.

(lately) مؤخرًا

- تستخدم غالبًا فى نهاية الجملة المنفية أو الاستفهامية.

e.g. • He hasn't visited Alex lately. • Have you seen him lately?

(recently) مؤخرًا

- تستخدم غالبًا فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة.

e.g. I've seen him recently.

Important Notes

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعلين ... أى ربطت بين جملتين تصبح القاعدة كالآتى:

(ماضٍ بسيط) + since + (مضارع تام)

e.g. • We haven't seen Ali since he was in Alex.

لاحظ أن

هناك فرق فى المعنى بين:

Subject فاعل + has/have been to + (place مكان) ...

e.g. My father has been to Paris. (He is in Cairo now.) ذهب إلى/ زار مكانًا وعاد منه.

Subject فاعل + has/have gone to + (place مكان) ...

e.g. My father has gone to France. (He is still there.) ذهب إلى/ زار مكانًا ولم يعد منه.

Practice

LANGUAGE EXERCISE

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I have already .... my homework; I can watch TV now.
   a) do b) did c) done d) doing
2. Don't worry; the problem has just ....
   a) been solved b) solved c) be solved d) be solving
3. The government .... a lot of fly-over bridges recently.
   a) build b) was building c) had built d) has built
4. The old car .... yet.
   a) had been repaired b) hasn't been repaired c) didn't repair d) has been repaired
5. I miss you so much. I haven't seen you .... five years!
   a) when b) ago c) since d) for
6. My sister has studied French since she .... a child.
   a) has been b) was c) is d) were
7. Ali is very happy. He .... a medal for writing poetry.
   a) had won b) has been won c) has won d) have won
8. The tickets .... online since last week.
   a) have bought b) has bought c) had bought d) have been bought
9. I haven't heard from my friend since he .... abroad a year ago.
   a) went b) had gone c) has gone d) goes
10. Have you done your work alone ....? I can't believe it.
    a) yet b) already c) ever d) just
11. Noha .... to the zoo since three o'clock and she is still there.
    a) has gone b) has been c) went d) is going
12. I .... my keys. Can you help me look for them, please?
    a) have lost b) had lost c) lost d) lose
13. A: Have you .... been to Spain? B: No, I have .... been there.
    a) ever/ ever b) ever/ never c) never/ ever d) never/ never
14. This is the first time we have .... seen a tiger.
    a) yet b) just c) ever d) never
15. I haven't seen Mazen .... the last time we met in Alexandria.
    a) for b) since c) when d) while

PRACTICE MORE

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mohamed hasn't .... (have) lunch yet.
2. Salma has been to Cairo .... (since) two years.
3. Rania .... (attend) the meeting already.
4. He hasn't gone to cinema .... (for) New Year's Day.
5. Have they .... (never) visited the park?
6. Dina hasn't seen my tablet .... (already).
7. The new car .... (has stolen) for a few weeks.
8. We have lived in this house .... (when) we got married.
9. Amgad has .... (go) to the baker's. He hasn't come back home.
10. Is that the best pizza you have .... (since) eaten?
11. I've tried Chinese food, but I .... (not/ try) French food yet.
12. How many times have you been late .... (when) the beginning of the term?
13. He hasn't been able to work .... (when).
14. We .... (live) here for 10 years - from 2010 to 2020.
15. Have you .... (never) tried this food?
16. We haven't met .... (for) last September.
17. They've known each other .... (since) a long time.

2 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. The movie have been watched. (..................................) SB
2. He has never saw snow. (..................................) SB
3. Lunch hasn't cooked yet. (..................................) SB
4. We has gone to the market. (..................................) SB
5. She have just finished her work. (..................................) SB
6. She has supported by her friends. (..................................) SB

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Ask and answer about your identity السؤال والإجابة عن الهوية

online

How do people's opinions affect you? كيف تؤثر آراء الناس عليك؟

People's opinions have influenced me, especially when they come from those I respect. لقد أثرت آراء الناس فى، خاصة عندما تأتى من أولئك الذين أحترمهم.

How do you feel when you hear negative opinions? ما شعورك عندما تسمع آراء سلبية؟

At first, I may feel upset or discouraged, but I try to understand if there's any truth in the negative opinion.
فى البداية، قد أشعر بالانزعاج أو الإحباط، لكنى أحاول أن أفهم ما إذا كان هناك أى حقيقة فى الرأى السلبى.

What experiences shape your identity? ما التجارب التى تشكل هويتك؟

Experiences like overcoming challenges at school, learning new skills, and helping others have shaped my identity.
لقد شكلت تجارب مثل التغلب على التحديات فى المدرسة وتعلم مهارات جديدة ومساعدة الآخرين هويتى.

What qualities and values make you a good person? ما الصفات والقيم التى تجعلك شخصًا جيدًا؟

I believe being honest, kind, and respectful are key values that guide my actions. أعتقد أن الصدق واللطف والاحترام هى القيم الأساسية التى توجه أفعالى.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ **Ali and Omar are talking about personal identity.**

Ali : Hey, Omar! We're doing a project about identity. Can I ask you a few questions?
Omar : (1)..
Ali : (2)..?
Omar : People's opinions affect me greatly.
Ali : Interesting! (3)..?
Omar : When someone says something negative about me, I feel sad.
Ali : Oh no! Have you had a lot of experiences that shaped your identity?
Omar : (4)..
Ali : Great! Finally, what three words would you use to describe your personality?
Omar : (5)..
Ali : Thanks, Omar. This will really help with the project!

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about your personal identity.

كيفية الكتابة عن هويتك الشخصية.

1. What is personal identity? ما الهوية الشخصية؟

- My personal identity is what makes me who I am.

هويتى الشخصية هى ما يجعلنى من أنا.

2. What things make you who you are? ما الأشياء التى تشكل هويتك؟

- My name, my age, my background, and what I believe in.

اسمى، عمرى، نشأتى وما أؤمن به.

3. What are your favorite activities or hobbies? ما أنشطتك وهواياتك المفضلة؟

- I enjoy (1 هواية), (2 هواية) and (هواية أو نشاط).

4. What kind of person are you (kind, honest, funny, etc.)? ما شخصيتك (عطوف/أمين/مضحك)؟

- I think I am a (صفة) person because I (السبب).

5. What makes you different from others? ما الذى يجعلك مختلفًا عن الآخرين (يميزك)؟

- What makes me special is (عنصر تميزك).

6. Why is your identity important to you? لماذا تكون هويتك مهمة بالنسبة لك؟

- My identity is important because it helps me know who I am.

هويتى مهمة لأنها تساعدنى على معرفة من أنا.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"My identity"

My personal identity is what makes me who I am. It includes my name, my age, where I come from, and what I believe in. It also shows in my personality, like being kind, honest, or funny. My personal identity is shaped by my family, my culture, and the things I like to do. I enjoy reading, helping my friends, and learning new things. I also speak two languages and love my traditions. These are all parts of what make me special and different from others. I try to be true to myself every day. My personal identity is important because it tells my story and helps me understand who I really am.

1 Finish the following dialog:

Leila and Omar are talking about personality. Omar is friendly and a little shy.

Leila : Omar, how would you describe your personality?

Omar : (1).. .

Leila : (2)..?

Omar : Helping people makes me friendly.

Leila : Are you proud of anything in yourself?

Omar : (3).. . I'm proud that I always tell the truth.

Leila : Do you care about others' feelings?

Omar : (4).. . I try to be kind and polite.

Leila : (5)..?

Omar : Listening more than talking makes me different from others.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

value – mention – has – have – remind – stressed

My name is Ahmed and I live in Giza. I'm 15 years old. I (1)................................ learned that my identity isn't just about how I look. It's about the person I'm becoming. My family taught me to (2)................................ honesty and kindness. These lessons help me stay strong, even when I feel (3)................................ . I (4)................................ myself often that I don't have to be popular. I just have to be real.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. With .... and self-discovery, I can grow into the person I want to be.
   a) importance b) absence c) illness d) strength
2. We should respect other people's ...., even if they are different from ours.
   a) heights b) beliefs c) lessons d) distances
3. Her teacher supported and motivated her, so her .... grew after she had done that task alone.
   a) fight b) fear c) silence d) confidence

4. Pizza is a very popular food. The synonym of "popular" is "..............................".
a) simple b) famous c) important d) real
5. A new secondary school .... in our village already.
a) had been building b) had built
c) has built d) has been built
6. I miss you so much; I .... you for ages!
a) hadn't seen b) won't see c) haven't seen d) have seen

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My uncle .... (was having) a lung disease since 2020.
2. Rana .... (has) been to the circus yet.
3. A new hospital has .... (built) in our village by the government recently.
4. .... (you/ever) read a novel by Charles Dickens?
5. Sayed has stayed in France .... (since) 7 years.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your identity"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the present perfect tense:

1. Is she still studying? (yet)

....

2. I last saw him when we were in the party. (since)

....

3. Amir repaired his car a moment ago. (just)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adjust (ed) (v)	يُعدل	hand-drawn (adj)	مرسوم يدويًا
blazer (n)	بليزر/سترة زى رسمى	identity map (n)	خريطة الهوية
comfort (n)	راحة	mirror moment (n)	لحظة التأمل الذاتى
confused (adj)	متحير/مرتبك	outgoing (adj)	منفتح/اجتماعى
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	panic (ked) (v)	يَفْزع/يُصاب بالذُّعر
curious (adj)	فضولى	portrait (n)	صورة شخصية
curls (n)	تجاعيد شعر	thumbs-up (n)	علامة إعجاب

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

ability (n)	قدرة	mirror (n)	مرآة
assignment (n)	واجب/مهمة	perfect (adj)	رائع/ممتاز
beauty (n)	جمال	row (n)	صف
challenging (adj)	صعب/ملىء بالتحديات	situation (n)	موقف
create (d) (v)	يبدع/يبتكر/ينشئ	sketch (n)	رسم تخطيطى
decision (n)	قرار	sketchbook (n)	دفتر رسم
discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف	talent (n)	موهبة
fake (adj)	مزيف	unlike (prep)	على عكس/بخلاف
importance (n)	أهمية	usefulness (n)	فائدة
include (d) (v)	يتضمن/يشتمل على	worth (n/adj)	قيمة/مستحق
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	written (adj)	مكتوب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a board of	لوحة من	keep to herself	تبقى منطوية (تعتزل الناس)
adapt to	يتكيف مع/يتأقلم مع	proud of	فخور بـ ...
blend into	يندمج فى/ينسجم مع	sit right	يبدو مناسبًا/صحيحًا
go through	يتصفح	stand out	يبرز/يتميز
have a look at	يلقى نظرة على	stood before	يقف أمام

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
keep	يحتفظ بـ ...	kept	kept
show	يبين/يظهر	showed	shown
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
confused	متحير/مرتبك	confident	واثق
sure	متأكد	unsure	غير متأكد

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

outgoing – keep – row – to – for

1 We sat in the front .... to watch the school play.
2 It took me some time to adapt .... my new school.
3 Hany is very .... and makes friends easily.
4 Reda didn't talk much and preferred to .... to himself during the trip.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bench (n)	مقعد	deserve (d) (v)	يستحق
benefit (n)	فائدة	fair (adj)	عادل
concrete (n)	خرسانة	honest (adj)	أمين
depressing (adj)	مُحبِط/مُحزِن	honesty (n)	الأمانة/الصدق

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

care (d) (v)	يهتم/يرعى	preparatory (adj)	إعدادى
community (n)	مجتمع	school environment (n)	بيئة المدرسة
playground (n)	ملعب	solution (n)	حل
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	surprised (adj)	مندهش
improve (d) (v)	يُحسن	trash (n)	نفاية/قمامة
notice (d) (v)	يلاحظ	waste (n)	نفايات/قمامة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

among	بين	take actions	يتخذ إجراءات
make a change	يُحدث تغييرًا	take work	يتطلب عملًا/جهدًا
lead to	يؤدي إلى	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
reason for	سبب لـ ...	throw away	يرمي/يتخلّص من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
empty	فارغ	full	ممتلئ
large	ضخم	tiny	صغير جدًا

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – imagine – takes – on

1 I can't .... life without my best friend.

2 What's the reason .... the loud noise outside?

3 Learning a new language .... work, but it's useful.

Language Notes

1 begin + (inf. + ing) يبدأ

- She began **drawing** again – this time, herself.

2 imagine + (inf. + ing) يتخيل

- She imagined students **eating** lunch among flowers.

3 among بين (أكثر من اثنين) **/ between** بين (اثنين فقط)

- The little girl quickly disappeared among the crowd.
- I sat down between Omar and Hamza.

Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I can't imagine .... to school without my bike.

a) go b) went c) going d) goes

2 At school, I sit .... my friends, Mona and Yasmin.

a) between b) among c) next d) in front

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

confident واثق	feeling sure about your abilities, qualities or decisions	
curious فضولى	interested in discovering[1] new things, feeling interested in learning or knowing	
depressing مُحبط	something that makes you feel sad	
honest أمين	always telling the truth	
worth it يستحق	good enough to deserve the time effort or money	
adjusting يُعدل	adapting well to challenging situations	
values قيم	the importance, worth or usefulness[2] of something	

(1) اكتشاف
(2) الفائدة/الجدوى

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
assignment (n)	واجب/مهمة	homework/task	واجب/مهمة
benefit (n)	فائدة	usefulness	فائدة
improve (d) (v)	يُحسن	develop	يطور

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
create (v) يبدع/يبتكر/ينشئ	-ive	تحول الفعل/الاسم	creative (adj) مبدع/مبتكر
color (n) لون	-ful	إلى صفة	colorful (adj) ملون
useful (adj) مفيد	-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	usefulness (n) فائدة

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	honest (adj) أمين	dishonest (adj) غير أمين
un-		like (prep) مثل	unlike (prep) على عكس/بخلاف

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

1 What does the word "**identity**" mean to you?

2 Do you think it's more important to fit in or stand out? Why?

3 What makes someone real or fake?

Read the following text. What does Leila think about Nour's portraits?

SB page 18

The Mirror Moment



On the first day of Grade 9, Nour stood in front of the mirror, adjusting[1] her blazer for the fifth time. Her curls didn't sit right, and her glasses felt too big. "Why can't I just fit in?" she thought.

At school, Nour stayed quiet, blending into the background. Unlike the confident[2], outgoing students around her, she kept to herself, finding comfort only in her sketchbook. She loved drawing faces — not perfect ones, but real ones. She saw beauty where others didn't.

Then one day, Ms. Hanan introduced a project:

"Create your Identity Map[3]. Show us who you are - your dreams, values[4], and challenges."

Nour panicked. Who am I?

That night, going through her old sketches, something clicked. She began drawing again – this time, herself.

The following week, while others shared colorful posters, Nour stood before the class with a board of hand-drawn portraits. At the center: her own face, glasses and curls included. Around it, she wrote: Strong[5]. Creative. Curious[6].

When she finished, the class clapped. Even Leila, the girl in the front row, gave her a thumbs-up.

After class, Ms. Hanan said, "You didn't just share who you are - you showed us that being different is your strength[7]." And Nour believed her.

(1) يُعدل (2) واثق
(3) خريطة الهوية (4) قيم
(5) قوى (6) فضولى
(7) القوة

Post-reading questions:

1 What does Nour like to do in her free time? ....

2 What assignment did Ms. Hanan give the class? ....

3 What does Leila think of Nour's portrait? ....

4 Have you ever felt unsure about your identity or talents? What helped you? ....

The School Garden Project

Lesson 4

Pre-reading questions:

1 What do you usually see in your school playground? ....

2 Would you like to change it? Why? ....

3 What are the benefits of having a school garden? ....

Read the following text. Why wouldn't Zeina's idea be easy? *SB page 20*

CHAPTER ONE:

A New Challenge

Zeina was a new student at a preparatory school. She was always curious[1] and liked to notice everything around her. On her first day, she looked around the school playground.

It was large but empty and gray. The ground was all concrete, and there were just a few old benches. Students threw their trash[2] on the ground, and no one seemed to care.

"This place could be so much better," Zeina thought. She had an idea, but she didn't know if anyone would listen to a new student.

At lunch, she sat with her new friend Nancy, who was kind and always honest[3] about how she felt.

"I don't like this area," Nancy said.

"It's a little depressing[4]."

"What if we changed it?" Zeina asked.

"What if we planted a garden?"

Nancy looked surprised.

"A garden? Do you know how to grow plants?"

"Not really," Zeina said, showing honesty[5].

"But I want to learn. We could learn together."

The idea stayed in Zeina's mind all day.

She imagined students eating lunch among flowers, plants, and maybe even vegetables. She imagined students being proud[6] of the place.

She knew the idea wasn't easy. It would need time, hard work, help, and even money maybe.

But something inside her said it was worth[7] it.

Maybe, just maybe, this garden could be more than just a place. It could be a way to bring the school together.



(1) فضولي (2) قمامة (3) أمين

(4) محبط (5) الصدق/الأمانة (6) فخور

(7) يستحق

Practice CHAPTER (1) EXERCISES

1 Read and match the words to their meaning.

A	B
1. worth	a) always telling the truth
2. proud	b) good enough to deserve the time effort or money
3. depressing	c) something that makes you feel sad
4. honest	d) feeling good about success

2 Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Zeina feel sad when she saw the playground?

   ....

2. What idea did Zeina have?

   ....

3. Why wasn't Zeina sure anyone would listen to her?

   ....

4. What did Nancy think of the garden idea?

   ....

5. How did Zeina show honesty?

   ....

6. What are some small actions students can take to improve their school environment?

   ....

3 Read and put (T) True or (F) False:

1. Zeina felt that the school playground was full of life. ( )
2. Zeina wanted to plant a garden although she didn't know much about planting. ( )
3. Nancy was a dishonest person. ( )
4. Zeina believed that the garden could bring the school community together. ( )

4 Critical thinking:

1. Why do you think Zeina wanted to improve the playground?

   ....

2. How can small ideas, like planting a garden, lead to bigger changes in a community?

   ....

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 30-31 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
brave	شجاع	....	terrible	سيئ جدًا	....
imaginative	مبتكر	....	shy	خجول	....
skill	مهارة	....	easy	سهل	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

فى هذا الجزء سنقدم مهارة التفكير النقدى وكيفية التعامل مع أسئلتها:

- What is critical thinking?

ما مهارة التفكير النقدى؟

- هى عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التى جمعت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأى نقدى شخصى على ما تم قراءته من معلومات فى النص، ودائمًا ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

On the first day of Grade 9, Nour stood in front of the mirror, adjusting her blazer for the fifth time. Her curls didn't sit right, and her glasses felt too big. "Why can't I just fit in?" she thought.

- Why do you think Nour adjusted her blazer for the fifth time?

....

....

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Nour kept to herself, finding comfort only in her sketchbook.

- ظلت نور منعزلة عن الآخرين، ولم تجد الراحة إلا فى دفتر الرسم الخاص بها. ☐
- ظلت نور منفتحة على الآخرين، ولم تجد الراحة إلا فى دفتر الرسم الخاص بها. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- ألقى الطلاب قمامتهم على الأرض.

☐ Students threw their trash on the floor.
☐ Students threw their trash on the waste.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

strong – since – for – imperfections – assignments – flipping

Nada is a good student. Although she faced many challenges, she remained (1)............................ in achieving her goals. She had been working hard (2)............................ the beginning of the school year to improve her grades. Her teachers admired her determination إصرار and how she thought about her (3)............................ instead of hiding them. During her presentation, she impressed everyone by confidently (4)............................ through her slides, answering questions without hesitation تردد. Her classmates found her journey inspiring and began to believe in their own abilities too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students in the art class practiced drawing ....
   a) portraits b) settings c) diseases d) pieces
2. Nadeen was very .... She wanted to know what was inside the big box.
   a) honest b) curious c) keen d) outgoing
3. If you read the instructions too quickly, you might get ....
   a) confused b) outgoing c) tiring d) strong
4. When the lights went out suddenly, my little brother started to .... and cry.
   a) adjust b) relax c) panic d) rest
5. Ahmed is new to a different school. He is trying to .... to the rules and make new friends.
   a) adopt b) teach c) learn d) adjust
6. I study every day to improve my English. The synonym of "improve" is "..................".
   a) develop b) create c) throw d) bring
7. My brother is so .... that he makes new friends everywhere we go on vacation.
   a) outgoing b) confused c) shy d) bad
8. Blue is my favorite color. We add the suffix ".........." to form the adjective of "color".
   a) -ive b) -ment c) -ful d) -ness
9. After a long day at school, my soft bed is a great source of .... for me.
   a) sadness b) sickness c) comfort d) portrait
10. To feel .... is to feel sure about your abilities, qualities or decisions.
    a) sad b) curious c) nervous d) confident

LESSON 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

known – knew – community – solution – take – bench

Last Monday, our school playground was full of trash. It looked so messy and even depressing. I sat on a (1)........................ thinking, "What can we do?" Our teacher said we needed to (2)........................ action as a class. We made posters and cleaned the ground together. I've (3)........................ that teamwork can really make a change. It wasn't easy, but we all felt proud. The best thing was that we had fun while helping our (4)........................ .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Camelia realized her room was too messy, so she decided to .... actions to clean it.
   a) throw b) bring c) tell d) take
2. The story I read was .... everyone was sad in the end.
   a) depressing b) interesting c) joyful d) bored
3. A/An .... person never takes things that aren't theirs.
   a) rich b) unfair c) quiet d) honest
4. The boys are cleaning the street; they're throwing empty bottles in the ....
   a) river b) library c) kitchen d) trash
5. One benefit of reading daily is learning new words. The synonym of "benefit" is "......................".
   a) solution b) honesty c) assignment d) usefulness
6. Hend broke the window while playing, and she had to .... the truth.
   a) tell b) give c) find d) say
7. The teacher was very .... when she gave everyone the same amount of time to answer.
   a) surprised b) fair c) depressing d) unfair
8. Nour likes to .... for the plants in her garden by watering them regularly.
   a) seem b) care c) notice d) improve
9. Zain's mother taught him to be .... even when it might make other people upset.
   a) interesting b) honest c) surprised d) weak
10. My sister is active like her mother. We add the prefix "....................." to get the opposite of "like".
   a) im- b) im- c) re- d) un-

C Skills

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Making changes in your school or community إجراء تغييرات فى مدرستك أو مجتمعك

online

Have you ever tried to make a change in your school or community?
هل حاولت يومًا إحداث تغيير فى مدرستك أو مجتمعك؟

Yes, I helped my classmates start a clean-up day at school.
نعم، ساعدت زملائى فى بدء يوم لتنظيف المدرسة.

What change have you tried to make? ما التغيير الذى حاولت القيام به؟

We tried to make the school cleaner and more beautiful.
حاولنا أن نجعل المدرسة أنظف وأكثر جمالًا.

Do you enjoy helping others? Why? هل تستمتع بمساعدة الآخرين؟ ولماذا؟

Yes, because it makes me feel happy and useful.
نعم، لأنه يجعلنى أشعر بالسعادة والفائدة.

Do you think you would make a change? Why? هل تعتقد أنك ستُحدث تغييرًا؟ ولماذا؟

Yes, because I identified the problem and tried to find solutions.
نعم، لأننى حددت المشكلة وحاولت إيجاد حلول.

How do you feel when you help your community? كيف تشعر عندما تساعد مجتمعك؟

I feel proud and happy to be part of something good.
أشعر بالفخر والسعادة لأنى جزء من شىء جيد.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ **Hana and Omar are talking about recycling.**

Hana : Omar, do you recycle at school?
Omar : (1).. . We have a recycling bin.
Hana : (2)..?
Omar : Our class started it.
Hana : Do students use it a lot?
Omar : (3).. . They use it every day.
Hana : (4)..?
Omar : We recycle paper and plastic most.
Hana : Can I join you?
Omar : (5).. .

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about helping your community or school.

كيفية الكتابة عن مساعدة مجتمعك / مدرستك.

1. What does it mean to help your school or community?

ماذا يعنى أن تساعد فى مجتمعك أومدرستك؟

- It means doing things that make it a better place, like keeping it clean, being kind to others, or helping people in need.

مساعدة مدرستك أو مجتمعك تعنى القيام بأشياء تجعل المكان أفضل، مثل الحفاظ عليه نظيفًا، ومعاملة الآخرين بلطف،أو مساعدة المحتاجين.

2. What can you do to help at school? ما يمكنك أن تفعل للمساعدة فى المدرسة؟

- By keeping my classroom clean, listening to my teachers, being kind to my classmates, and joining school activities.

من خلال الحفاظ على نظافة فصلى، والاستماع إلى معلمينى، ومعاملة زملائى بلطف، والمشاركة فى الأنشطة المدرسية

3. How can you help your classmates or teachers?

كيف يمكنك مساعدة زملائك او معلمينك؟

- I help my classmates by sharing and working well with them. I help my teachers by listening, following rules, and doing my homework.

أساعد زملائى بالمشاركة والعمل معهم، وأساعد معلمى بالاستماع واتباع القواعد وحل الواجب.

4. What can you do to help your neighborhood or town?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل لمساعدة الحى أو المدينة الخاصة بك؟

- I can help my neighborhood by keeping it clean, helping neighbors, planting trees, and joining activities that make it better.

يمكننى مساعدة الحى الخاص بى بالحفاظ عليه نظيفًا، ومساعدة الجيران، وزراعة الأشجار، والمشاركة فى أنشطة تجعل المكان أفضل.

5. Why is it important to help others? لماذا من المهم أن نساعد الآخرين؟

- Helping others is important because it builds strong communities, and makes people feel supported and happy.

مساعدة الآخرين مهمة لأنها تبنى مجتمعات قوية، وتُشعر الناس بالدعم والسعادة.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"Helping my community"

There are many ways I can help my community or school. At school, I can keep my classroom clean and remind others to throw trash in the bin. I can help my classmates when they don't understand something. I can also be kind and respectful to teachers and students. In my community, I can join clean-up days or plant trees in the park. I can help my neighbors by carrying bags or sharing what I have. I can even make posters to remind people to care for the environment. These small actions can make a big difference. When I help others, I make my school and community a better place for everyone.

TEST YOURSELF

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

confused – adjusted – for – since – weak – improved

Kareem wasn't sure how he felt that morning. He (1)........................ his blazer and looked into the mirror. "Do I look okay?" he asked softly. He felt a bit (2)........................ but his father told him, "This is your chance to shine." That was Kareem's mirror moment. He smiled and walked to school. He has grown more confident (3)........................ the first day of the year. Now he even helps others feel (4)........................, too.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Personal identity is what makes each person unique. It is shaped by many things, such as family, culture, values, personal experiences, and personal goals. From a young age, we begin to form our identity by learning from people around us. Family members teach us how to behave, speak, and understand right from wrong.

As we grow, our identity continues to develop. Friends, school, and personal choices all influence who we become. Some people discover their passions through hobbies like art, music, or sports. Others form their values by facing challenges or learning from mistakes.

Personal identity is also about how we see ourselves and how we want to live. It helps us make decisions and choose our path in life. Although identity can change over time, staying true to your values is always important.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the passage about?
   a) A school subject. b) A type of hobby.
   c) Personal identity. d) A kind of job.
2. Which of the following helps shape your identity?
   a) Only school. b) Watching TV.
   c) Personal experiences. d) Sleeping early.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How does personal identity affect the decisions we make? ....
4. How do family members help shape your identity? ....
5. What can we learn from challenges or mistakes? ....
6. Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What a/an .... student! He believes in his ability to solve any math problem.
   a) nervous b) confused c) confident d) obvious
2. Amina had to .... her plan when she discovered it didn't work well.
   a) adjust b) panic c) think d) keep
3. The teacher asked me to draw a chart about my culture, values, hobbies, and strengths. He wanted me to make a/an ....
   a) art project b) film review c) activity list d) identity map
4. Good citizens have good ....; they respect others and share in voluntary work.
   a) values b) models c) opinions d) options
5. **A:** Why are you so sad, Hala? **B:** My smart phone ....!
   a) has lost b) has been lost c) have been lost d) lost
6. I .... my friend Fadi for 10 years now.
   a) have known b) will know
   c) had known d) have been known

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have they ever .... (grow) their own vegetables?
2. I haven't had such fun .... (for) the last time we met.
3. He .... (break) the record since the last Olympics.
4. The flowers have .... (watered) this morning.
5. Nader .... (have) a motorbike since he was 16 years old.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How you improved yourself"

....

....

....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the present perfect tense:

1. My uncle travelled to Jordan and didn't return. (gone)
2. She hasn't visited Paris since 2010. (for)
3. He has never traveled abroad before. (ever)

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

STUDY

▶ **LESSON 5 :** Let's Talk
▶ **LESSON 6 :** This is me

SB pages 22-23
pages 24

A VOCABULARY | LESSON ▶5

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

body language (n)	لغة الجسد	nod (ded) (v)	يُومئ برأسه
eye contact (n)	تواصل بصرى	supportive (adj)	مساند/مشجع

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

accept differences	يتقبل الاختلافات	go through	يمر ب ...
accept myself	أرضى عن نفسى	in a positive way	بطريقة إيجابية
act with	يتصرف ب ...	show respect/interest	يُظهر احترامًا/اهتمامًا
build self-respect	يبنى احترام الذات	stay true to who they are	
feel accepted	يشعر بأنه مقبول		يحافظون على هويتهم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
accept	يقبل	refuse	يرفض
true	حقيقة	false	مزيف

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – at – nodded – show

1 I asked my friend if she wanted to play, and she .... with a big smile.

2 I was really happy .... my friend when he won the game.

3 We should always .... respect to our teachers by listening carefully.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

absent (adj)	غائب	fairness (n)	عدل
caring (adj)	حنون/رحيم/رءوف	honesty (n)	أمانة
choice (n)	اختيار	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
classmate (n)	زميل دراسة	trust (ed) (v)	يثق فى
clue (n)	دليل/مفتاح حل لغز		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

actions (n)	أفعال/تصرفات	due to (conj)	بسبب
allow (ed) (v)	يسمح بـ ...	indifferent (adj)	غير مبالٍ/لا يهتم
arrange (d) (v)	يرتب	series (n)	مسلسل
brave (adj)	شجاع	task (n)	مهمة
complete (d) (v)	يكمل/يكتمل	weakness (n)	ضعف

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن بـ ...	make a difference	يحدث فرقًا
focus on	يركز فى	stand for	يرمز إلى/يؤمن بـ ...
in public	فى العلن	take part in	يشترك فى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
lead to	يؤدى إلى	led to	led to
lose	يخسر/يفقد	lost	lost

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list: allowed – in – at – build

1 My parents .... me to stay up late on Friday.

2 You should speak politely .... public.

3 We .... trust by always telling the truth.

Vocabulary Builder

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
support (v)	يساند	-ive	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	supportive (adj) مساند/مشجع

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

1 What value should we follow when we disagree with someone?

2 In your opinion, is it important to face challenges positively? Why?

SB page 22

Respecting Personal Identity



(1) اكتشاف الذات
(2) واثق
(3) احترام الذات
(4) الثقة
(5) داعم

Hala Hi Omar! Have you ever learned about personal identity?

Omar Yes, I have. I've learned that everyone is different and special in their own way.

Hala That's right! I've gone through a lot of self-discovery(1) this year. It has helped me feel more confident(2).

Omar That's great! I've also started to feel more confident. I think my self-respect(3) has improved because I've learned to accept myself.

Hala Me too. And I've noticed that people who have faced challenges in a positive way have shown a lot of strength.

Omar Yes, and many students have been helped by teachers who support them. A lot of good changes have been made in our school.

Hala I agree. I've also seen how important it is to act with honesty. When someone has stayed true to who they are, people respect them.

Omar That's true. Respecting personal identity means understanding that we all have different experiences.

Hala Exactly! When people feel accepted, their confidence(4) grows. That's why it's important to always be kind and supportive(5).

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 What have Hala and Omar learned about personal identity?

2 Which words in the conversation show the importance of being yourself?

3 Can you give an example of how someone showed respect for your identity?

4 How can schools help students build self-respect and feel more accepted?

Lesson 5

Read the short conversation below. Then, switch roles and try creating your own using the bold words or words you have learned in the unit. *SB page 23*

Student A	Hi! You look happy today.
Student B	Yes! I've learned something new about myself.
Student A	That's cool! What did you learn?
Student B	I've learned that I know how to be different and strong.
Student A	That's great. You've shown a lot of **strength**.
Student B	Thank you! I feel more **confident** now.
Student A	I can see that. You always have good **self-respect**.
Student B	And I always try to act with **honesty**.
Student A	That's really important. I'm super happy for you!

Lesson 5

4. Read and complete the dialog between Mariam and Salma. *SB page 23*

Mariam	Hi Salma! You look really happy today.
Salma	Hi! Yes, I had a great talk with my teacher yesterday.
Mariam	Oh wow! What did you talk about?
Salma	**We talked about personal identity.**
Mariam	Personal identity! That sounds interesting. **What did you learn?**
Salma	I learned that it's okay to be different. Everyone is different in their own way.
Mariam	**True. If everyone was the same, the world would be boring.**
Salma	Exactly! Being yourself is more important than trying to copy others.
Mariam	**Did your teacher give you any advice?**
Salma	Yes. She said I should focus on my strengths and accept my weaknesses.
Mariam	That's good advice. I think I need to work on my self-respect too.

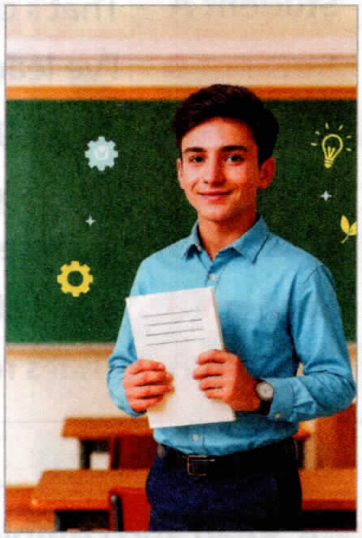
Pre-reading questions:

1 What values or qualities do you think are important for being a good person?

2 Can you name a time when someone was kind or honest with you? How did it make you feel?

SB page 24

What I Stand For



Topic Sentence

I stand for kindness, honesty, and responsibility, and these values have shaped my personal identity.

Explanation

I believe that showing respect and being caring have helped me build trust with others. These actions have also shown that I value fairness in my daily choices.

Evidence / Example

For example, I have helped my classmates with their work, and I have shared my notes with friends who have been absent. I have been trusted by my teachers because I have always completed my tasks honestly. Many experiences have taught me that being brave and kind can make a difference in people's lives.

Ending Sentence

These actions and choices have been important in my life, and they have shown that kindness and honesty are strong parts of my identity.

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What are the three main values the writer stands for?

....

2 How has the writer shown kindness and honesty in their daily life?

....

3 Why do you think the writer's teachers trust them?

....

4 What does the writer mean when they say kindness and honesty are part of their identity?

....

5 How can you show these values in your school or home life?

....

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 43-44 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
encourage يشجع	....	none لا شىء/لا أحد	....
friendly ودود	....	strength قوة	....
qualities صفات	....	caring حنون/رحيم/رءوف	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية فى القطعة هو إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية (أى ما يدور حوله النص)، ويكون السؤال كالتالى:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- What's does the passage talk about?
- What is the passage about?

How to find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1. If there is a title, pay attention to it. إذا كان هناك عنوان فانتبه له.
2. Read the first sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأولى.
3. Read the last sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.
4. Look for repeated words or phrases. ابحث عن الكلمات والعبارات المكررة.

Many experiences have taught me that being brave and kind can make a difference in people's lives. These actions and choices have been important in my life, and they have shown that kindness and honesty are strong parts of my identity.

- What's the passage about?

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- I've learned that everyone is unique and special in their own way.

- لقد تعلمت أن كل شخص فريد ومميز بطريقته الخاصة. ☐
- لقد تعلمت أن كل شخص نادر وشخصي بطريقته الخاصة. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- لقد قمت بمشاركة ملاحظاتى مع الأصدقاء الذين كانوا غائبين.

☐ I kept my notes to myself and didn't share them with anyone.

☐ I shared my notes with friends who had been absent.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analyzing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

LESSON 5

1 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

safe – have – kind – refuse – different – accept

We should respect everyone's personal identity. I (1)........................ read an interesting article about that. People are (2)........................ in how they look, speak, or live. Respect means listening, being (3)........................, and not judging others. When we (4)........................ others, we help build a peaceful world where everyone feels safe.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. When discussing family traditions, children were taught to .... differences with respect.
   a) go b) nod c) accept d) build
2. Farida feels very happy .... her sister who won the school competition.
   a) at b) for c) with d) on
3. The sports coach used positive words to .... each child's self-respect.
   a) accept b) show c) stay d) build
4. Mr Adel is .... He always helps students when they have trouble.
   a) valued b) accepted c) happy d) supportive
5. I can tell you from Ahmed's .... language that he is very excited about the trip.
   a) eye b) way c) body d) hair
6. Walid says that good eye .... helps people know he is listening carefully.
   a) interest b) way c) language d) contact
7. When Mai joined the class, the other children made her .... accepted.
   a) feel b) keep c) show d) stay
8. We told Kady to act .... respect when talking to older people.
   a) at b) on c) with d) for
9. The art teacher told Seif he should .... himself even when his drawings don't look good.
   a) act b) feel c) accept d) build

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dishonest – trust – brave – classmates – helped – helping

My name is Tarek. I like helping my friends at school. I have (1) .... my friends with homework, and I have shared my books with (2) .... who needed them. My teachers (3) .... me because I always finish my work honestly. I have learned that being kind and (4) .... can make people happy.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To be successful in your life, you need to .... in your abilities.
   a) believe b) design c) think d) ignore
2. Omar discovered that his .... in spelling affected his grades badly.
   a) weakness b) strength c) fairness d) price
3. Laila was .... from school because she had a bad cold.
   a) caring b) absent c) brave d) innovative
4. The teacher always shows .... by giving every student the same time to speak.
   a) responsibility b) weakness c) honesty d) fairness
5. Amir had to make a difficult .... between joining the football team or the art club.
   a) responsibility b) choice c) weakness d) problem
6. Some children feel shy when they have to speak .... public places.
   a) at b) in c) on d) with
7. Fatima is a very .... friend who always helps when someone feels sad.
   a) caring b) hidden c) innovative d) indifferent
8. When Amr said sorry for his mistake, he tried to .... trust with his friend again.
   a) have b) make c) get d) build
9. .... is a good value that we must have.
   a) Dishonesty b) Weakness c) Honesty d) Fear
10. What values do you stand ....?
    a) up b) out c) down d) for

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

C Skills

Writing

How to write a descriptive paragraph كيف تكتب فقرة وصفية

(1) Try to use the Present Perfect Tense to describe actions and experiences which shape personal identity.

حاول استخدام زمن المضارع التام لوصف الأحداث والتجارب التى تشكل الهوية الشخصية.

(2) Try to use the present Perfect Tense Passive to describe actions received by the subject. حاول استخدام زمن المضارع التام فى المبنى للمجهول لوصف الأفعال التى قام بها الفاعل.

(3) Try to use linking words (and, because, so ,also) to connect ideas.

حاول استخدام أدوات الربط لربط الأفكار.

What should a descriptive paragraph have?

ما الذى يجب أن تحتوى عليها الفقرة الوصفية؟

(1) Topic sentence جملة الموضوع:

Try to write a clear sentence about what you are describing.

حاول أن تكتب جملة واضحة حول ما تصفه.

(2) Explanation الشرح/التفسير:

Give more details about the topic to help the reader understand.

قم بإدراج المزيد من التفاصيل حول الموضوع لمساعدة القارئ على الفهم.

(3) Evidence / Example الدليل / المثال:

Try to use adjectives and the senses to describe and give examples.

حاول استخدام الصفات والحواس للوصف وإعطاء الأمثلة.

(4) Ending sentence الجملة الختامية:

Try to finish with a sentence that refers back to your topic or shows your feelings.

حاول أن تنهى بجملة تشير إلى موضوعك أو تظهر مشاعرك.

Example

The Journey to Self-Discovery

Topic Sentence : I have developed my personal identity through a variety of meaningful experiences and choices that have shaped who I am today.

Explanation : Over the years, I have learned important values from my family, and I have formed strong friendships that have taught me empathy and trust. Moreover, I have taken part in community service and school activities, which have helped me discover my strengths and passions.

Evidence and Example : In addition, I have faced challenges that have tested my patience and strength, yet each obstacle has made me more confident and independent. Because of these experiences, I have built a clearer understanding of my beliefs and goals.

Ending : As a result, I have grown into someone who values honesty, learning, and connection with others.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Finish the following dialog:

Samy is asking Ali about things he has achieved. Ali has learnt to drive a car.

Samy : What important things have you achieved in life?

Ali : (1).. .

Samy : When did you learn that?

Ali : (2).. .

Samy : (3)..?

Ali : My father taught me that.

Samy : Wow, that's great. Would you please teach me?

Ali : (4).. .

Samy : (5)..?

Ali : We can start tomorrow.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

valued – supportive – has – is – accepting – refusing

Sometimes people go through hard times, but having (1).................... friends can make it easier. I try to show the importance of being yourself by (2).................... my classmates for who they are. I listen to them and make eye contact so they feel heard and (3).................... . My school (4).................... just held a competition for the best act of kindness and I won.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Kareem is a good leader. He is friendly and ....

   a) supportive b) useless
   c) negative d) usual

2. Never .... people who always tell lies.

   a) allow b) trust
   b) leave d) complete

3. Omar .... part in the writing competition. I think he will win.

   a) gave b) entered
   c) stood d) took

4. When people feel ...., their confidence grows.

a) refused | b) accepted
c) left out | d) bored

5. Ola .... arrived from Luxor yet.

a) doesn't | b) has
c) hasn't | d) isn't

6. Since Hatim started that bad habit, he .... a serious health problem.

a) has been | b) has had
c) has | d) had

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hi! I haven't seen you .... (since) 3 months.
2. Has the letter .... (be) sent to the right address?
3. .... (Did) you ever been on a plane?
4. He hasn't been able to work .... (for) last week.
5. Amgad has never .... (travel) by train.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Values that are important for you"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hatim has been busy since .... (start) that job.
2. Nothing .... (said) about the cause of the accident since the policeman left.
3. I haven't met Yaser since he .... (promote) to the new post منصب!

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 1 Assessment

SB page 25

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A journalist needs to be .... to look for new news.
   a) indifferent b) kind c) curious d) lazy
2. Sama's .... helps her overcome different situations.
   a) weakness b) curiosity c) strength d) popularity
3. Being a talented programmer, Rodina soon became .... in the world of digital technology.
   a) self-respect b) unpopular c) unknown d) popular

B Language

2 Use the correct form of the verb in Present Perfect:

1. They .... (just/finish) the science project.
2. We .... (live) in this city since 2017.
3. .... you ever .... (ride) a horse?
4. Ahmed .... (not/see) that movie yet.
5. .... she .... (start) her new job yet?
6. The task .... (carry) out already.

C Writing

3 Write a descriptive paragraph of (110) words about the values you stand for:

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 1 Review

Vocabulary

adjust (ed) (v)	يُعدل
background (n)	خلفية/نشأة
belief (n)	إيمان/اعتقاد
challenge (n)	تحدٍ
character (n)	شخصية
confidence (n)	ثقة
depressing (adj)	محبط/مُحزن/كئيب
fair (adj)	عادل
honest (adj)	أمين
identity map (n)	خريطة الهوية
individuality (n)	فردية/تميز شخصى
innovative (adj)	مبتكر
mirror moment (n)	لحظة التأمل الذاتى
outgoing (adj)	منفتح/اجتماعى
panic (ked) (v)	يفزَع/يُصاب بالذُعر
personality (n)	شخصية
portrait (n)	صورة شخصية
pressure (n)	ضغط/توتر
self-discovery (n)	اكتشاف الذات
self-respect (n)	احترام الذات
thumbs-up (n)	علامة إعجاب
unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
value (d) (v/n)	يقيم/يقدّر/قيمة

Language

1. The present perfect tense

زمن المضارع التام

e.g.
- They **have ('ve)** ridden a horse.
- He **has ('s) traveled** by plane.
- I **have not (haven't)** played a musical instrument.
- Sara **hasn't** traveled by plane.
- **Has** your father **ever visited** Paris?

since/ for

Subject + have/has + P.P. + since + وقت بداية الحدث
Subject + have/has + P.P. + for + مدة الحدث كاملة

e.g. A: How long **has** Talia's grandmother **been married**?
B: Talia's grandmother has been married **since 2010**.
B: Talia's grandmother has been married **for 15 years**.

2. Passive

المبنى للمجهول

Object مفعول + (has-have) + been + P.P.

- My car **has been stolen** since 2020.
- The Pyramids **have been built** for thousands of years.

Skills

A. Speaking

Ask and answer about your identity

A: How do people's opinions affect you?
B: People's opinions have influenced me, especially when they come from those I respect.
A: How do you feel when you hear negative opinions?
B: At first, I may feel upset or discouraged, but I try to understand if there's any truth in the negative opinion.
A: What experiences shape your identity?
B: Experiences like overcoming challenges at school, learning new skills, and helping others have shaped my identity.
A: What qualities and values make you a good person?
B: I believe being honest, kind, and respectful are key values that guide my actions.

B. Writing

How to write a descriptive paragraph

Topic Sentence:
I have developed my personal identity through a variety of meaningful experiences and choices that have shaped who I am today.

Explanation:
Over the years, I have learned important values from my family, and I have formed strong friendships that have taught me empathy and trust. Moreover, I have taken part in community service and school activities, which have helped me discover my strengths and passions.

Evidence and Example:
In addition, I have faced challenges that have tested my patience and strength, yet each obstacle has made me more confident and independent. Because of these experiences, I have built a clearer understanding of my beliefs and goals.

Ending:
As a result, I have grown into someone who values honesty, learning, and connection with others.

General Exercises on Unit 1

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hala is telling Amani how she reached her goal in life.

Amani : I know you have reached your goal in life.
Hala : That is right, but (1).. .
Amani : Which challenge did you face?
Hala : I couldn't discover my own abilities at first.
Amani : (2).. .
Hala : He advised me to try to know which sides I'm good at.
Amani : Is this called self-discovery?
Hala : (3).. .
Amani : (4)..?
Hala : I am good at programming and doing research online.
Amani : You must use safe websites.
Hala : You're right. I already use safe websites. Now, I'm a very good programmer! And you, what are you good at?
Amani : (5)..; I hope I will be an artist.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

learned – common – kindness – believes – unique – beliefs

At school, some children think they need to act a certain way to be liked. But who you are is more than how you dress or look. I come from a background where (1)........................ and hard work are very important. These (2)........................ affect my character. I have (3)........................ that real confidence grows when you stop trying to be popular and start being yourself. Being (4)........................ means you're one of a kind, not strange.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Today's modern life can be tiring. It can be hard to make time for yourself. But it's important to find the time. Relaxing can help keep you healthy, in both your body and mind. **Luckily**, no matter how busy you are, it's simple to learn how to have time for relaxing. You can find five minutes of your day for yourself. Breathe it out. Breathing exercises are one of the simplest ways. <u>They</u> can calm your body

and mind. Sit down in a quiet and safe place, such as your bed or the floor in your home. Breathe in to a slow count of three, and then breathe out to the same slow count of three. Repeat five times.

Write down your thoughts. It may help you relax. When you feel anxious, take a few minutes to write down some short notes about how you're feeling or how your day is going.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The text is about ways of ....
   a) breathing   b) relaxing
   c) thoughts   d) exercises
2. The word **"Luckily"** means ....
   a) ugly   b) lovely
   c) friendly   d) fortunately

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How many ways of relaxation were mentioned in the text?
   ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
   ....
5. Summarize the ways that help you to relax.
   ....
6. What do you think is the best way to relax?
   ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What things make you .... from others?
   a) united   b) appeared   c) quick   d) unique
2. My mom says I am .... because I don't stay sad for long after I get disappointed.
   a) confused   b) outgoing   c) strong   d) creative
3. Past experiences and culture best describe someone's ....
   a) ground   b) background   c) health   d) wealth
4. Everyone should know their points of .... and weakness.
   a) strength   b) width   c) wealth   d) health

5. How long .... you lived in Banha?

a) did b) has c) have d) do

6. Many new schools .... since we lived here.

a) have built b) are building
c) will build d) have been built

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Sayed has stayed in France .... (since) 7 years.
2. A lot of trees have .... (planted) in our community recently.
3. We .... (live) in this house recently.
4. How long have you .... (have) that car?
5. I have .... (ever) ridden a camel. It's scary.

D The Story

6 **A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What did Zeina see in the playground? ....
2. Do you think Zeina is a good girl? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina was a new student who liked to .... everything around her.

a) ignore b) notice c) forget d) hide

4. The school playground was large but ....

a) colorful b) green c) empty d) exciting

E Writing

7 **Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Peter to tell him about your personal identity. Your name is Hossam.**

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Unit 2

COMMUNICATION WITH FAMILY AND FRIENDS

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify main ideas and specific details in texts about communication.
- Recognize meanings of new words related to communication from the context.

Listening

- Recognize key ideas about communication in dialogs.
- Identify examples of respectful communication in conversations.

Speaking

- Express opinions about communication with family and friends.
- Discuss ways to solve problems using communication.

Writing

- Write an opinion paragraph about a communication experience.
- Use target vocabulary in writing about communication.

Language

- Identify and form third conditional sentences.

STUDY

▶ **LESSON 1 :** Staying Connected — SB pages 28-29
▶ **LESSON 2 :** Communication Challenges and Solutions — pages 30-31

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bond (n)	صلة/علاقة/ارتباط	relationship (n)	علاقة
communication (n)	تواصل	resolve (d) (v)	يحلّ/يقرر/يحسم
conflict (n)	صراع	respectful (adj)	محترم للغير
conversation (n)	محادثة	social media chat (n)	دردشة وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
discussion (n)	مناقشة	strengthen (ed) (v)	يقوي
distance (n)	مسافة/بُعد	supportive (adj)	داعم/مساند
facial expressions (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	texting (n)	مراسلة نصية
miscommunication (n)	سوء تواصل	face-to-face talk (n)	محادثة وجهًا لوجه
misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم	siblings (n)	أشقاء

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

active (adj)	نشيط	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب	link (n)	رابط/صلة
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	member	فرد/عضو (نادٍ)
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب	solve (d) (v)	يحل
connection (n)	صلة/ارتباط بـ	supported (adj)	مدعوم/مؤيد
encouragement (n)	تشجيع	thoughtful (adj)	مُتفكِّر/مُراعٍ/مُهتم
failure (n)	فشل	tone (n)	نغمة/نبرة صوت
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل/يهمل	upset (adj)	منزعج

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

communicate with	يتواصل مع	stay in touch	يبقى على تواصل
connect with	يتواصل مع/يرتبط بـ ...	to sum up	للتلخيص/خلاصة القول
form of	نوع/شكل من	feel heard/respected	يشعر أنه مسموع/محترم
key to	عنصر أساسي لـ/طريق لـ ...	make time for	يخصص وقتًا لـ ...
move forward	يتقدم/يتحرك للأمام	share thoughts/feelings/ideas	يشارك أفكارًا/مشاعر/آراء
point of view	وجهة نظر	show care	يُظهر رعاية/اهتمامًا
regard for	يهتم بـ/يُقدر/يعتبر	stay connected	يبقى على اتصال
solution to	حل لـ ...		

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition | (v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
forgive	يسامح	forgave	forgiven
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
open	مفتوح	closed	مغلق

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

feel – show – resolve – to – link

1. We need to .... this problem before it causes further problems.
2. There's a .... between exercise and health.
3. We are trying to find a solution .... the conflict.
4. When my ideas are listened to, I .... respected.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم	topic (n)	موضوع
serious (adj)	جاد/خطير		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

accident (n)	حادث	mostly (adv)	غالبًا
car rides (n)	رحلات بالسيارة	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز/ينجح
exhibition (n)	معرض	prefer (red)	يفضل
loudly (adv)	بصوت عالٍ	instructions (n)	تعليمات
opinion (n)	رأي		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

Thanks for having me.	شكرًا على استضافتي	get worse	تزداد سوءًا
turn in a project	يسلم مشروعًا	in person	شخصيًا
catch the train	يلحق القطار	score a goal	يسجل/يحرز هدفًا
get lost	يَضِلّ الطريق/يَتُوه	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
get wet	يبتل		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
catch يلحق بـ ...	caught	caught
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	woken up

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
correct صحيح	incorrect غير صحيح
different مختلف	similar مشابه

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

get – won – passed – rides

1 If you don't pay attention to the directions, you might .... lost.

2 I don't like car .... on busy days.

3 Maha .... first prize in the national reading competition.

Language Notes

1 find + مفعول + adj. صفة يجد

- Many young people find it **hard** to make time for honest conversations.

2 feel + adj. صفة يشعر

- Thoughtful messages help you feel **closer** and more **supported** in your daily life.

3 connect (يتصل (اتصال اجتماعي/تقنى / communicate (يتواصل (اجتماعيًا

- I connected **my phone** to the Wi-Fi.
- She feels connected to her family.
- I use my phone to communicate with **my friends**.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Definitions التعريفات

bond	صلة	is a strong connection between people
communicate	يتواصل	means to share thoughts, feelings, or ideas
misunderstanding	سوء الفهم	is failure to understand correctly
resolve	يحل	is to find a solution to a problem or conflict
respectful	محترم	showing care and regard for others
siblings	أشقاء	brothers and sisters
supportive	داعم	means giving help or encouragement

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
bond (n)	صلة/علاقة/ارتباط	relationship/link/connection	صلة/علاقة
serious (adj)	جاد/خطير	dangerous	خطير
pass (v)	يجتاز/ينجح	succeed in	ينجح فى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
communicate (v) يتواصل مع	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	communication (n) تواصل
discuss (v) يناقش	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	discussion (n) مناقشة
connect (v) يرتبط بـ ...	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	connection (n) صلة/ارتباط بـ ...
respect (n/v) يحترم/احترام	-ful	تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى صفة	respectful (adj) محترم للغير
thought (n) فكر	-ful	تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى صفة	thoughtful (adj) مُتفكِّر/مُراعٍ/مُهتم
strength (n) قوة	-en	تحويل الاسم إلى فعل	strengthen (v) يقوى
support (v) يدعم	-ive	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	supportive (adj) داعم
loud (adj) عالى الصوت	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	loudly (adv) بصوت عالٍ

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
mis-	communication (n) تواصل	تعطى معنى (سوء)	miscommunication (n) سوء تواصل
mis-	understand (v) يفهم	تعطى معنى (سوء)	misunderstand (v) يسىء الفهم

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- How do you usually communicate with your family and friends?

Read the following text. How can we create stronger relationships? *SB page 28*



Good communication[1] is the key to strong relationships. Whether it's with your parents, siblings[2], or friends, the way you talk and listen affects your connection[3] with others. Communication isn't only about words — it includes your tone of voice, facial expressions, and body language. Even a simple smile or a text message can show someone you care.

In today's fast world, many young people find it hard to make time for meaningful conversations. Social media and texting make it easy to stay in touch, but sometimes messages are misunderstood[4]. Miscommunication can lead to conflict or distance between people.

Having open and respectful[5] conversations helps to solve problems and build trust. If you're feeling stressed or upset, talking to a friend or family member can help. It's important to listen carefully and try to understand the other person's point of view. Being honest and supportive[6] also helps to strengthen the bond[7] between people.

Sometimes, conflicts happen even in close relationships. The best way to resolve[8] them is through calm, honest discussion. When people feel heard and respected, they are more likely to forgive and move forward. Communication is not just about speaking - it's about listening and caring, too.

To sum up, strong communication creates stronger relationships. Taking time to connect with others through kind words, active listening, and thoughtful messages helps you feel closer and more supported in your daily life.

(1) التواصل
(2) أشقاء
(3) اتصال
(4) يساء الفهم
(5) محترم للغير
(6) داعم
(7) الصلة
(8) يحل/يقرر/يحسم

Post-reading questions: SB

1 Do you think good communication can solve problems? How? ....

2 What does strong communication create? ....

3 What is the main idea of the passage? ....

4 According to the passage, what is a good way to solve problems in relationships?
....

Pre-listening questions:

1 Have you ever had a misunderstanding with someone? How did you solve it?

2 Which is better: texting or talking face-to-face? Why?

Listen to the audio. Then, guess the meaning of these words. *SB page 30*



Host Hi everyone! Today, we're joined by Mariam, a 15-year-old student who's here to talk about communication with family and friends. Welcome, Mariam!

Mariam Hi! Thanks for having me.

Host So, let's start with your family. How do you usually communicate with your parents?

Mariam We mostly talk at dinner or in the car. I try to be honest with them, even when it's hard. I think that helps us become closer. I've learned that listening is just as important as talking.

Host Great point. And what about your friends?

Mariam We text a lot, but when something's serious, I always prefer to talk face-to-face. Last year, I had a misunderstanding with a friend over a group project. We kept messaging, and it got worse. But when we finally talked in person, it was easier to understand each other and solve the problem.

Host Sounds like you've learned some great lessons.

Mariam Yeah, I think communication is really about respect, whether with family or friends. Listening, being honest, and staying calm really helps.

Host Thank you, Mariam! That's great advice for all of us.

Post-listening questions: SB

1 What caused the misunderstanding with Mariam's friend?

a) They had different opinions. **b)** They didn't talk face-to-face.
c) They forgot to turn in a project. **d)** They were both late.

2 What helps communication in Mariam's opinion?

a) Speaking loudly. **b)** Arguing to win.
c) Listening, being honest, and staying calm. **d)** Avoiding serious topics.

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

Skills Bank Reading

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 61-62 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
quiet هادئ	....	success نجاح	....
perspective وجهة نظر	....	fail يفشل	....
influence يؤثر	....	miss a goal يضيع هدفًا	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة القطعة:

What does the word "..............." mean?

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة يمكن تخمين معنى كلمة، ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالي:

How to guess the meaning of a word: كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد في تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. حاول أن تفهم نوع الكلمة (اسم، فعل، صفة ....) .
2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition.
اقرأ القطعة جيدًا. فمن الممكن أن تجد مترادفات، متضادات أو تعريفًا للكلمة.
3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.
ابحث عن دلالات تساعدك على فهم الكلمة - اقرأ الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المألوفة لتحاول فهم المعنى.
4. Make a guess. حاول تخمين معنى الكلمة في النص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

In today's fast world, many young people find it hard to make time for honest conversations. Social media and texting make it easy to stay in touch, but sometimes messages are misunderstood. Miscommunication can lead to conflict or distance between people.

- The underlined expression "stay in touch" means to ....

a) refuse **b)** disagree **c)** communicate **d)** ignore

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Good communication is the key to strong relationships.

- التواصل الجيد هو مفتاح العلاقات القوية. ☐
- الحديث المستمر هو مفتاح العلاقات الضعيفة. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- من المهم الاستماع بعناية ومحاولة فهم وجهة نظر الشخص الآخر.

☐ It is important to listen carefully and try to understand the other person's point of view.
☐ It is important to talk quickly and try to misunderstand the other person's point of view.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analyzing · Evaluating · Creating

LESSON 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

miscommunication – facial – make – with – to – solve

Staying connected with friends and family is very important. When we communicate (1)............................ others, we can share our thoughts and feelings. Sometimes, (2)........................ can cause problems, but a respectful tone helps to (3)............................ those problems. Face-to-face talk is one good way to avoid misunderstandings because we can see (4)...................... expressions. If we haven't made time for each other, our bond would have been weaker.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Waleed's .... changed quickly when he heard the bad news.
   a) texting **b)** information **c)** facial expressions **d)** respect
2. Good .... skills are important in the workplace.
   a) misunderstanding **b)** transportation
   c) communication **d)** understanding
3. Hani .... my instructions because he did the opposite.
   a) thought **b)** believed **c)** understood **d)** misunderstood
4. Nabil showed great strength by lifting the heavy boxes. We add the suffix "...................." to get the verb of "strength".
   a) -ment **b)** -en **c)** -ion **d)** -er
5. We must learn to .... people, even when it's not easy.
   a) ignore **b)** forgive **c)** solve **d)** misunderstand
6. A/An .... friend helps you when you feel sad.
   a) unfair **b)** supportive **c)** lazy **d)** loud
7. Climate change is a serious problem. The synonym of "serious" is "....................".
   a) active **b)** upset **c)** respectful **d)** dangerous
8. To avoid ...., we must communicate clearly and respectfully.
   a) texting **b)** misunderstanding **c)** relationship **d)** sibling
9. They worked together to .... the problem quickly and fairly.
   a) make **b)** cause **c)** resolve **d)** ignore
10. A strong .... grows when people trust each other.
    a) band **b)** board **c)** bond **d)** pound

LESSON 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

opinion – stay – understand – misunderstand – topic – map

Sometimes, students face learning challenges because of a misunderstanding of instructions. When teachers explain the (1)................... clearly, it helps children (2)................... better. During lessons, it's important to (3)................... calm and ask questions when confused. Giving your (4)................... in class can also help solve problems. Learning is easier when we try our best and don't give up.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students must .... their projects by next week.
   a) turn on **b)** turn in **c)** turn off **d)** turn into
2. After the ...., the driver called for help immediately.
   a) goal **b)** topic **c)** map **d)** accident
3. They used a .... to find the correct way during their outdoor adventure.
   a) map **b)** goal **c)** accident **d)** train
4. The art .... showed many beautiful paintings from different artists.
   a) misunderstanding **b)** exhibition **c)** map **d)** goal
5. A simple .... can cause a big problem between friends.
   a) accident **b)** misunderstanding **c)** exhibition **d)** bond
6. The doctor said the injury was .... and needed much care.
   a) serious **b)** different **c)** similar **d)** incorrect
7. If you study hard, you will .... the exam with a good score.
   a) prefer **b)** get **c)** catch **d)** pass
8. During long car ...., it's important to stay calm and enjoy the trip.
   a) rides **b)** maps **c)** instructions **d)** topics
9. The teacher gave clear .... for the science experiment in class.
   a) goals **b)** umbrellas **c)** accidents **d)** instructions
10. They mostly agreed on the .... for their group project in school.
    a) umbrella **b)** topic **c)** conflict **d)** expression

C Language

Remember

1 The past perfect tense: زمن الماضي التام:

It is a tense used to express an action that happened before another action in the past. هو زمن يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.

e.g. I had **finished** my homework before I went out.

Form التكوين Subject الفاعل + had + **past participle** (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. I had **left** before the train arrived.

Negative النفي Subject الفاعل + **hadn't** + **past participle** (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. Tarek **hadn't seen** the movie before.

Question السؤال Had + subject الفاعل + **past participle** (التصريف الثالث للفعل)?

e.g. Had they **arrived** before 5 p.m.?

2 If (third conditional): الحالة الشرطية الثالثة

e.g. If you had **helped** me, I would have **finished** faster.

Form التكوين

If + past perfect ماضى تام , subj. فاعل + would have + P.P.

e.g. If Ali had **studied** more, he would have **got** high marks.

Subj. فاعل + would have + P.P. + if + past perfect ماضى تام

e.g. I would have **caught** the bus if I had **woken** up earlier.

Usage الاستخدام

(1) To show an imaginary situation and a different result that could have happened, but didn't.

تُستخدم لإظهار موقف خيالى ونتيجة مختلفة كان من الممكن أن تحدث ولم تحدث.

e.g. If they had scored one more goal, they wouldn't have lost the match.

(2) To express regret, missed chances.

تُستخدم للتعبير عن الندم على الفرص الضائعة.

e.g. If I had attended the party, I would have met my old friends.

(3) To express excuses.

تُستخدم لإبداء الأعذار (فى الماضى).

e.g. If he had told me, I would have helped him.

Practice

LANGUAGE EXERCISE

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. If he had driven carefully, he .... the accident. SB
a) would avoid **b)** would have avoided
c) had avoided **d)** will avoid

2. If we had gone to the museum, we .... the new exhibition. SB
a) would see **b)** saw **c)** would have seen **d)** see

3. If she .... the instructions, she wouldn't have done it incorrectly. SB
a) had read **b)** would have read
c) reads **d)** read

4. If I .... sick, I'd have worked harder.
a) hasn't been **b)** am not **c)** haven't been **d)** hadn't been

5. If he hadn't eaten too much, he .... sick.
a) would have felt **b)** wouldn't have felt
c) won't feel **d)** doesn't feel

6. We .... the match if it hadn't rained.
a) would play **b)** will play
c) would have played **d)** playing

7. If Hatim had listened more carefully to the instructions, he .... that mistake.
a) wouldn't make **b)** didn't make
c) wouldn't have made **d)** will have been made

8. If she had studied medicine, she .... a doctor.
a) will be **b)** would have been **c)** is **d)** would be

9. They .... the place if they hadn't lost the map.
a) would have found **b)** finding
c) wouldn't have found **d)** will find

10. .... if you had invited him to the party?
a) Did he come **b)** Would he have come
c) Will he come **d)** Would he come

11. If they .... more carefully, they wouldn't have been in trouble.
a) listened **b)** have listened **c)** listen **d)** had listened

12. We .... in if you hadn't forgotten your keys.
a) would get **b)** wouldn't have got
c) would have got **d)** will get

13. If he had spoken clearly, everyone .... him.
a) would have understood **b)** would understand
c) wouldn't have understood **d)** will understand

PRACTICE MORE

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I .... (would study) harder, I would have passed the exam.
2. You would have won if you .... (practice) more.
3. If they had come earlier, we .... (will start) on time.
4. If it .... (rains) yesterday, we would have canceled the trip.
5. If we .... (knew) the answer, we would have told you.
6. I would have helped you if I .... (have known) about the problem.
7. If she .... (wasn't) tired, she would have joined us.
8. If I .... (would met) him earlier, we would have worked together.
9. You .... (won't miss) the train if you had left earlier.
10. If she .... (drove) more slowly, the accident wouldn't have happened.
11. If I'd gone to bed earlier, I .... (not be) so tired yesterday.
12. If you .... (be) more careful, the glass wouldn't have broken.
13. They could have won the match if the team .... (train) more.
14. If Heba .... (catch) the bus, she would've arrived on time.
15. If they had arrived on time, we .... (wouldn't wait) so long.
16. If we had known the way, we .... (wouldn't get lost) in the city.
17. If we .... (don't missed) the bus, we would have been there by now.

2 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. If she hadn't forgotten her book, she wouldn't have punished by the teacher. (..................................)
2. If he wouldn't eat too much, he wouldn't have felt sick. (..................................)
3. If you had studied harder, you would pass. (..................................)
4. If they hadn't bring the tickets, they wouldn't have entered. (..................................)
5. If I was sick, I wouldn't have come to school. (..................................)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Express opinions about communication with family and friends

التعبير عن الآراء حول التواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء

online

Do you think it's important to talk with your family every day?
هل تعتقد أنه من المهم التحدث مع عائلتك كل يوم؟

Yes, I do. Talking with my family helps me feel safe and supported.
نعم أعتقد. التحدث مع عائلتي يساعدني على الشعور بالأمان والدعم.

How can you stay connected with others? كيف يمكنك أن تبقى متواصلًا مع الآخرين؟

Through kind words, active listening, and thoughtful messages.
عبر الكلمات الطيبة والإنصات الفعال والرسائل التي تراعي شعور الآخرين.

I think real conversations are better than just texting.
أعتقد أن المحادثات الحقيقية أفضل من الرسائل النصية فقط.

I agree. Face-to-face talk builds stronger relationships.
أنا موافق. الحديث وجهًا لوجه يبني علاقات أقوى.

So true! Good communication makes all relationships better.
صحيح جدًا! التواصل الجيد يجعل جميع العلاقات أفضل.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ **Menna and Leila are talking about expressing opinions about communication.**

Menna : Hi Leila! I like talking to my family.
Leila : Me too. I like talking to my mother.
Menna : How often do you talk to your mother?
Leila : (1).. .
Menna : That's nice. Do you talk to your father, too?
Leila : (2).. . I also like talking to my friends.
Menna : (3)..?
Leila : We talk about music and games.
Menna : (4)..?
Leila : My best friend helps me when I feel sad.
Menna : Do you use social media to talk to your friends?
Leila : (5).. .

Skills Bank **Writing**

How to write about good communication with family and friends.

كيفية الكتابة عن التواصل الجيد مع العائلة والصدقاء.

1. Why is good communication important? لماذا يُعد التواصل الجيد مهمًا؟

- Good communication helps us understand each other.

التواصل الجيد يساعدنا على فهم بعضنا البعض.

2. How do you communicate with your family and friends?
كيف تتواصل مع عائلتك وأصدقائك؟

- By listening carefully, speaking honestly, and showing respect.

من خلال الاستماع بعناية، والتحدث بصدق، وإظهار الاحترام.

3. Do you prefer talking face-to-face or texting? Why?
هل تفضل الحديث وجهًا لوجه أم المراسلة؟ ولماذا؟

- I think face-to-face talk is better because we see feelings.

نعم، لأننى أعتقد أن الحديث وجهًا لوجه أفضل لأننا نرى المشاعر.

4. How do you feel when someone listens to you carefully?
كيف تشعر عندما يستمع إليك شخص بعناية؟

- I feel safe and happy. أشعر بالأمان والسعادة.

5. How do you show respect while talking? كيف تُظهر الاحترام أثناء الحديث؟

- I show respect by not interrupting others. أُظهر الاحترام بعدم مقاطعة الآخرين.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"Good communication"

Good communication with family and friends is very important. When we talk clearly and kindly, others can understand us better. Good communication means listening carefully, speaking honestly, and showing respect. For example, when I have a problem, I talk to my parents or my best friend. They listen to me and give helpful advice. I also try to listen to them when they need help. This helps us trust each other. Sometimes, we laugh and share happy stories too. Talking face-to-face is better than texting because we can see each other's feelings. Communication helps solve problems and makes our relationships stronger. That's why I always try to communicate well with my family and friends.

TEST YOURSELF

1 Finish the following dialog:

Yousef and Salma are talking about ways to solve problems.

Yousef : Hi Salma! Sometimes I have problems at school.

Salma : Me too. When I don't understand something, I ask the teacher.

Yousef : (1)..?

Salma : I ask the teacher for help too.

Yousef : (2)..?

Salma : Yes, I talk to my mom. She always helps me.

Yousef : What do you do if your friend is sad?

Salma : (3).. .

Yousef : That's a good idea! I think talking helps a lot.

Salma : Why do you talk to anyone about your problems?

Yousef : (4).. .

Salma : Do you think talking to others can help?

Yousef : (5).. .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

stay – respectful – respect – have felt – feel – make

Sometimes, distance can cause a problem between friends or family members. But if people (1).................... time for each other and communicate often, they can stay close. Technology, like text messages, helps us to (2).................... connected. If we had avoided talking to our friends when we were busy, we would (3).................... lonely. It is important to be (4).................... and try to solve problems quickly.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Good .... is the key to strong relationships.
   a) location **b)** correction **c)** communication **d)** separation
2. The player ran very fast to .... a goal.
   a) stay **b)** lose **c)** miss **d)** score
3. Hurry up, or we'll miss it! If we don't leave now, we won't .... the train.
   a) stay **b)** lose **c)** catch **d)** pass

4. Honesty is the key .... building strong relationships.

a) in b) on c) at d) to

5. I'd have helped her if I .... enough money.

a) had had b) have had c) was having d) had

6. What would have happened if you .... your passport?

a) lost b) lose c) had lost d) have lost

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Walaa .... (would) missed the bus if she hadn't woken up late.
2. If they had left earlier, they .... (not miss) the train.
3. If he .... (bring) his umbrella, he wouldn't have got wet.
4. Karim wouldn't .... (missed) the meeting if he had checked his email.
5. If I .... (forget) my keys; I wouldn't have entered my house.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Communication"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. You didn't save your file, so you lost your work. (If)

....

2. He didn't take a coat, so he felt cold. (If)

....

3. We didn't ask for directions, so we got lost. (If)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

awkward (adj)	محرج/غير مريح	laughter (n)	ضحك
disagreement (n)	خلاف/نزاع	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى/قيمة
disappear (ed) (v)	يختفى	reconnect (ed) (v)	يعيد التواصل
discipline (n)	انضباط	silence (n)	صمت
distant (adj)	بعيد	silent (adj)	صامت
distractions (n)	مشتتات/ملهيات	speech (n)	حديث/كلام
frustrated (adj)	محبط/مكتئب	stress (n)	توتر/ضغوط
gesture (n)	إيماءة/حركة يد	tradition (n)	تقليد

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

absence (n)	غياب	physically (adv)	جسديًا
annoyed (adj)	متضايق	purpose (n)	غرض
emotion (n)	عاطفة	softly (adv)	برقة/بنعومة
emotionally (adv)	عاطفيًا	sound (n)	صوت
feel like (v)	يرغب فى	strange (adj)	غريب
fix (ed) (v)	يصلح	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
movement (n)	حركة	surprise (d) (v)	يُدهش

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

argument over	جدال على	heavy kind of	نوع حادّ من
at the dinner table	على مائدة العشاء	push around	يدفع/يحرك
build a relationship	ينشئ علاقة	put down	يضع/ينزل
filled with	ملىء بـ ...	with a fork	بالشوكة
from ... on	من ... فصاعدًا		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
put	يضع	put	put

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
distant	بعيد	near/close	قريب
strange	غريب	usual/familiar	معتاد/مألوف

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

missed – lost – disagreement – over

1 Despite بالرغم من their ...., they are close friends.

2 I .... the bus this morning, so I took a taxi.

3 They had an argument .... who was responsible for the mistake.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biology (n)	علم الأحياء	organized (adj)	منظم
council (n)	مجلس	proposal (n)	عرض/اقتراح
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق	research (ed) (v)	يبحث
determination (n)	تصميم/إصرار	shared (adj)	مشترك/جماعى
worthy (adj)	جدير/مستحق	talent (n)	موهبة
initiative (n)	مبادرة	tool (n)	أداة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

achieve (d) (v)	ينجز/يحقق	meeting (n)	اجتماع
anger (n)	غضب	paintings (n)	لوحات/رسومات
cafeteria (n)	كافتيريا	power (n)	قوة/سُلطة
clear (adj)	واضح	react (ed) (v)	يَـرُد الفعل/يَتفاعل
consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر/يفكر فى	sadness (n)	حزن
difficulty (n)	صعوبة	side (n)	جانب
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	suggestion (n)	اقتراح
fear (n)	خوف	teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعى

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

build a team	يُشكِّل فريقـًا	play a role	يلعب/يؤدى دورًا
feel hurt	يشعر بالألم/الضرر	show courage	يُظهر شجاعة
pay attention	ينتبه	ignore a comment	يتجاهل تعليق
good with	جيد التعامل مع	speak to	يتحدث إلى
laugh at	يسخر من	take initiative	يبادر
look for	يبحث عن	take responsibility	يتحمّل المسئولية

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
hurt	يصيب/يؤذى	hurt	hurt
shake	يهز/يهتز	shook	shaken

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل
organized	منظم	untidy	غير مرتب

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

difficulty – played – council – take

1 With practice, Hala overcame her reading ....

2 He .... an important role in building the team.

3 It's important to .... initiative when working in a team.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Definitions التعريفات

deserve	يستحق	to be worthy of something because of what you did	(1) نفسيًا
determination	تصميم/إصرار	not giving up until achieving something	
distant	بعيد	emotionally[1] or physically[2] not close	(2) جسديًا
distraction	التشتت	something that stops you paying attention	
frustrated	محبط/مكتئب	feeling annoyed[3] or upset	(3) منزعج
gesture	إيماءة/حركة يد	a movement[4] or action that shows emotion[5]	(4) حركة
meaningful	ذو معنى/قيمة	having purpose[6] or deep importance	
proposal	عرض/اقتراح	a plan or suggestion for others to consider	
reconnect	يعيد التواصل	to build a relationship[7] again after distance	(5) عاطفة/شعور
research	يبحث	looking for information about something	
courage	الشجاعة	the ability to do something different or when you are afraid	(6) غرض
shared	مشترك	given or used by more than one person means	
silence	صمت	the absence of sound	(7) علاقة
talent	موهبة	a natural ability to do something well	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
consider (v)	يعتبر/يفكر فى	think	يفكر
proposal (n)	عرض/اقتراح	suggestion	اقتراح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
disagree (v)	لا يوافق	-ment	تحول الفعل/الصفة إلى اسم	disagreement (n)	خلاف/نزاع
move (v)	يتحرك			movement (n)	حركة
difficult (adj)	صعب	-y		difficulty (n)	صعوبة
sad (adj)	حزين	-ness		sadness (n)	حزن

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	appear (v)	يظهر	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disappear (v)	يختفى
re-	connect (v)	يوصل	تعطى معنى الإعادة	reconnect (v)	يعيد التواصل

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

1. Have you ever reconnected with someone after a disagreement? What helped?
2. Do you talk to your family every day? Why or why not?

2. Read the following text. What can families do to stay connected? *SB Page 32*



Omar sat at the dinner table, pushing his food around with a fork. His parents were sitting across from him, quietly eating. The room was filled with silence—that strange, heavy kind of silence that made everything feel awkward(1).

It wasn't always like this. A year ago, Omar and his parents used to laugh together at dinner. But lately, things had changed. Due to school stress, phone distractions(2), and arguments over small things, communication had almost disappeared. Everyone seemed frustrated(3) but no one said why.

That night, Omar decided to try something different. Instead of eating quietly, he spoke.

"I miss how we used to talk," he said, looking at his plate. "I feel like we've all been strangers lately."

His words surprised his parents. His mother put down her fork. "You're right," she said softly. "We all have been too busy or tired to talk."

His father nodded his head. "Let's fix that."

It wasn't a long conversation, no big speeches, just a few honest words and a meaningful(4) gesture(5). At that moment, the silence broke. It was the start of something better.

That small act of communication helped them reconnect(6) — not through shouting or long messages, but by simply choosing to speak and listen. And from that night on, their dinners slowly became filled with laughter again.

(1) محرج/غير مريح
(2) مشتتات/ملهيات
(3) مُحبط
(4) ذو معنى/قيمة
(5) إيماءة/حركة يد
(6) يعيد الاتصال

Post-reading questions:

SB

1. What is the best title of the passage?
   a) Food traditions. b) Family discipline.
   c) Reconnecting. d) School stress.
2. Why did Omar and his parents become distant?
   a) They were spending too much money. b) They moved to a new house.
   c) They were busy and distracted. d) They didn't enjoy meals anymore.
3. What helped Omar's family start talking again?
   a) A big family meeting. b) An honest and simple sentence.
   c) A written letter. d) A holiday trip.

The School Garden Project

Lesson 4

Pre-reading questions:

1 Have you ever tried to speak in front of others to share an idea? ....

2 How do you feel when people don't support your idea at first? ....

2. Read the following text. Why is teamwork important in a school project?

SB Page 34

CHAPTER TWO:

Taking Initiative and Building a Team

Zeina decided to take responsibility for her idea. She researched[1] school gardens online and wrote a simple proposal[2]. She explained both the good and the difficult sides.

The next week, she showed courage[3] by speaking at the student council meeting. Her hands were shaking, but she believed in her plan.

"I want to create a garden behind our school," she said. "It would be a beautiful place to eat lunch, and we could grow vegetables for the cafeteria. But I need help."

Some students laughed.

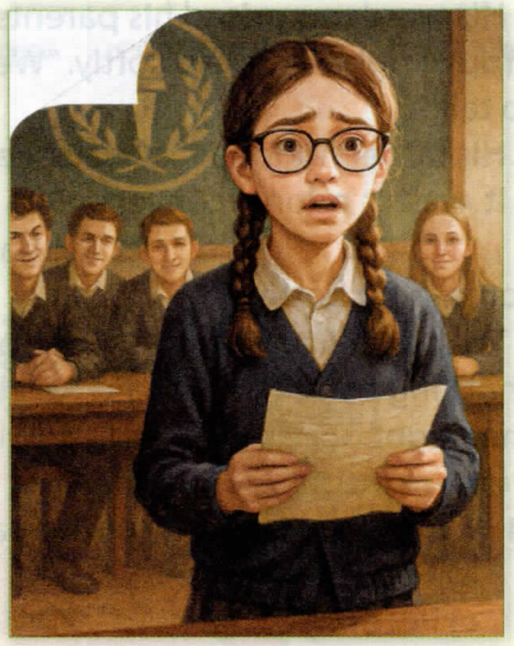
"You're just a new student," one said.

"Why should we listen to you?"

Zeina felt hurt, but she ignored the comment.

"This is my school too. Everyone deserves[4] a nice place to learn and enjoy breaks."

Ms. Hoda, the biology teacher, liked Zeina's determination[5]. She helped Zeina speak to different students.



Zeina soon found that many students had special talents[6]: Nancy was good with tools, Noha loved painting, Amal was strong, and Sarah was very organized.

Zeina helped everyone feel confident about their talents. The garden was no longer just her idea—it became their shared project.

(1) بحث (2) عرض/اقتراح
(3) شجاعة (4) يستحق
(5) تصميم/إصرار (6) مواهب

Practice CHAPTER (2) EXERCISES

1 Read and write the correct word from the box:

research – courage – talent – proposal – determination – shared – deserves

1. A plan or suggestion for others to consider is a ....
2. Looking for information about something means to ....
3. Not giving up until achieving something means ....
4. The ability to do something different or when you are not afraid means ....
5. Given or used by more than one person means ....
6. To be worthy of something because of what you did means ....
7. A natural ability to do something well means ....

2 Read and put (T) True or (F) False:

1. Zeina wrote a simple proposal about her idea. ( )
2. Zeina explained the good and difficult sides of her proposal. ( )
3. Zeina showed weakness when she spoke at the student council meeting. ( )
4. Ms. Hoda liked Zeina's determination. ( )

3 Answer the following questions:

1. How did Zeina prepare to share her idea?

....

2. What happened at the student council meeting?

....

3. How did Zeina react when students laughed at her?

....

4. What role did Ms. Hoda play?

....

5. What skills did the other students bring to the project?

....

4 Critical thinking:

1. What do you think made Zeina brave when she spoke?

....

2. Do you think Zeina's idea will succeed? Why/ Why not?

....

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

Skills Bank Reading

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 77-78 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
uncomfortable	غير مريح	....	agreement	اتفاق	....
far	بعيد	....	disrespect	عدم الاحترام	....
goal	هدف	....	happiness	سعادة	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الممكن أن يطلب منك وضع عنوان للفقرة بدلًا من السؤال عن الفكرة الأساسية، ولذلك سنقدم فى هذا الجزء كيفية وضع عنوان لفقرة:

To give a title to a passage, you should: لتضع عنوانًا لقطعة، يجب أن:

- Read the passage carefully: Understand what the passage is mainly about—what the main idea is.
  اقرأ القطعة بعناية وحاول أن تفهم الفكرة الرئيسية لها.
- Pick out keywords: Choose 2–3 important words from the passage that relate to the topic.
  استخرج الكلمات المهمة التى ترتبط بالموضوع.
- Keep it short and clear: A good title is usually 3–7 words. Make it catchy and meaningful.
  اجعل العنوان قصيراً وواضحًا، فعادة ما يكون من ٣ إلى ٧ كلمات. اجعله جذابًا وله معنى.

لاحظ أنه عندما نقوم بإعطاء عنوان نضع الكلمات الرئيسية بحروف كبيرة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Omar sat at the dinner table, pushing his food around with a fork. His parents were sitting across from him, quietly eating. The room was filled with silence—that strange, heavy kind of silence that made everything feel distant and awkward.

- The best title for the passage is "........................".

a) The dinner table **b)** Silence at dinner
c) Eating dinner **d)** The dinner room

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- A year ago, Omar and his parents used to laugh together at dinner.

- منذ عام، كان عمر ووالداه يضحكون معًا على العشاء. ☐
- منذ سنة، عمر ووالداه كانوا يصرخون معًا فى العشاء. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- أريد إنشاء حديقة خلف مدرستنا.

☐ I want to destroy a garden behind our school.
☐ I want to create a garden behind our school.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hadn't – haven't – meaningful – frustrated – correct – reconnect

Something went wrong between me and one of my close friends. I was in a very bad situation and he didn't support me. That is why got (1) .... When he realized his mistake, he apologized to me. This was completely (2) .... This action helped (3) .... us. If he (4) .... apologized, I wouldn't have forgiven him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To .... is to build a relationship again after distance.
   a) ride b) recycle c) reconnect d) refuse
2. I got .... when my close friend refused to help me when I was in trouble.
   a) pleased b) excited c) ready d) frustrated
3. My brother and I often disagree on which movie to watch. We add the suffix "...................." to form the noun of "disagree".
   a) -ness b) -ment c) -ful d) -ion
4. The boy felt .... when he tripped تعثر in front of everyone.
   a) awkward b) meaningful c) distant d) brave
5. The bird .... into the trees after singing loudly.
   a) fixed b) shouted c) laughed d) disappeared
6. A .... is a movement or action that shows emotion.
   a) stranger b) movement c) relationship d) gesture
7. Some people need quiet places with no .... to think clearly.
   a) surprises b) distractions c) emotions d) meals
8. If something is ...., it is far away.
   a) distant b) high c) constant d) relevant
9. The room was full of .... No one spoke!
   a) silence b) laughter c) sound d) plate
10. It's important to .... a relationship with your classmates to enjoy school.
   a) do b) build c) miss d) fix

LESSON 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

confident – had given – gave – research – individuality – search

Last year, Huda started a small project to help students learn better. She spent months doing (1) .... to understand their needs. Her goal was to encourage each student by supporting their (2) .... The project would have never succeeded if she (3) .... up when things got hard. Thanks to بفضل her determination, many students now feel more (4) .... and motivated in their studies.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Books .... a role in teaching new ideas.
   a) build **b)** paint **c)** play **d)** explain
2. The firefighter was a person with ....; he took the risk and saved the children from the burning house.
   a) courage **b)** absence **c)** fear **d)** fun
3. The students felt .... after the teacher let them lead the project.
   a) online **b)** confident **c)** organized **d)** offline
4. Nader has much..................; he never gives up even when things are too difficult.
   a) determination **b)** silence **c)** carelessness **d)** thinking
5. We saw colorful .... at the art museum today.
   a) tools **b)** maps **c)** ideas **d)** paintings
6. It's important to .... responsibility for your actions and mistakes.
   a) take **b)** explain **c)** play **d)** look
7. We .... online to find the meaning of "initiative".
   a) painted **b)** arrived **c)** considered **d)** researched
8. Basma .... my comment on her photo. I think she misunderstood it.
   a) liked **b)** ignored **c)** excited **d)** designed
9. The team had a .... goal and worked together.
   a) useless **b)** frustrated **c)** shared **d)** bored
10. Try to stay calm and don't .... in anger.
   a) catch **b)** reconnect **c)** react **d)** laugh

C Skills

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about reconnecting with a family

كيفية الكتابة عن إعادة التواصل مع العائلة

1. What does it mean to reconnect with family? ما معنى إعادة التواصل مع العائلة؟

- Reconnecting means talking more and spending happy time together.

إعادة التواصل تعنى التحدث أكثر وقضاء وقت سعيد معًا.

2. Why do people sometimes feel far from their families?

لماذا يشعر الناس أحيانًا بالبعد عن عائلاتهم؟

- Sometimes I feel far from my family when we are all busy.

أحيانًا أشعر بالبعد عن عائلتى عندما نكون جميعًا مشغولين.

3. What are some good ways to reconnect? ما بعض الطرق الجيدة لإعادة التواصل؟

- One way to reconnect is by having dinner together or playing games.

إحدى طرق إعادة التواصل هى تناول العشاء معًا أو لعب الألعاب.

4. How do you feel when you spend time with your family?

كيف تشعر عندما تقضى وقتًا مع عائلتك؟

- It feels nice to laugh and talk with my family again.

أشعر بالسعادة عندما أضحك وأتحدث مع عائلتى مرة أخرى.

5. Why is it important to be close to your family?

لماذا من المهم أن تكون قريبًا من عائلتك؟

- Family is important because they care for me and help me when I need it.

العائلة مهمة لأنها تهتم بى وتساعدنى عندما أحتاج إلى ذلك.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"Reconnecting with a Family"

Sometimes, we may feel far from our family because of busy days or small problems. Reconnecting with family means spending time together, talking kindly, and showing love. We can start by saying "I miss you" or asking how their day was. Eating meals together or playing a game can help us feel close again. It is also good to listen carefully and say sorry if we made a mistake. Sharing stories or memories helps everyone smile and feel happy. When we reconnect, we feel safe and loved. Family is important because they support us and care about us. Reconnecting with family makes our hearts feel warm and brings everyone together again.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

proposal – interesting – would have – had – proud – courage

Magda walked into the meeting room feeling nervous. It took a lot of (1)........................ for her to speak in front of the team. She gave a clear and organized (2)........................ to improve their work process. If she had not been so clever, the manager (3)........................ ignored her ideas. Everyone appreciated her effort, and she felt(4)........................ of what she had achieved

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Good communication is one of the most important parts of a happy family. When family members talk openly and listen to each other, they understand one another better. This helps them solve problems quickly and reduces misunderstandings. For example, parents who listen to their children can know when they need help or support. Children also feel more confident when their opinions are respected.

Spending time together without phones or TV can improve communication. Having meals together or doing simple activities like walking or playing games allows family members to talk and connect. It's not about how long the conversation is, but about being honest and kind while speaking.

Good communication builds trust and strong relationships. Without it, small problems can grow into bigger ones. Families who learn how to speak clearly and listen well often enjoy a more peaceful and loving home.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   a) Families should eat together.
   b) Children need to obey their parents.
   c) Good communication creates stronger families.
   d) Watching TV helps family bonding.
2. According to the passage, how can families reduce misunderstandings?
   a) By spending money together. **b)** By using phones more.
   c) By listening and talking openly. **d)** By playing games online.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of activities help improve communication?
4. According to the passage, what are two benefits of good family communication?
5. What does the writer suggest about the use of phones during family time?
6. In your own words, explain how listening is important in family life.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. That star in the sky is very .... from Earth.
   a) silent b) deep c) comfortable d) distant
2. Too much .... can make students feel tired and sad.
   a) sound b) stress c) laughter d) voice
3. Noura began to .... hurt when her friend ignored her.
   a) show b) shake c) feel d) strengthen
4. Mona couldn't hide her .... when the lights went out. She didn't like the dark.
   a) fear b) fight c) meeting d) suggestion
5. Would Fatma .... the exam if she had studied hard?
   a) pass b) had passed c) have passed d) passed
6. What would you .... if you had been a pilot?
   a) do b) has done c) have done d) will do

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I .... (been) rich, I would have bought a helicopter.
2. If he .... (would take) my advice, he wouldn't have failed.
3. I .... (had come) if I hadn't been busy.
4. If you .... (didn't lose) your wallet, you would have bought all that you wanted.
5. If the teacher .... (explained) it clearly, I would have understood.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Talking to your family"

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I didn't study hard, so I failed the exam. (If)

....

2. They forgot your birthday, and you were upset. (If)

....

3. We didn't book early, so there were no tickets left. (If)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

STUDY

LESSON 5 : Let's Talk
LESSON 6 : Staying Close

SB pages 36-37

A VOCABULARY | LESSONS 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

apologize (d) (v)	يعتذر	intent (n)	نِيّة/قَصد
cool (adj)	رائع/جميل/ممتاز	misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم
deal (n)	صفقة/اتفاق/أمر	proper (adj)	مناسب/ملائم
fight (n)	شجار/معركة/نزاع	tough (adj)	قاسٍ/صلب/شديد

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

absolutely (adv)	تمامًا/قطعًا	openly (adv)	بصراحة/علنًا
completely (adv)	تمامًا/كليًا	rebuild (v)	يُعيد البناء
finally (adv)	أخيرًا	totally (adv)	تمامًا/كليًا/بالكامل
glad (adj)	سعيد/مسرور		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

get bigger	يزداد حجمًا	turn into	يتحول إلى
close to	قريب من	work on	يطوّر/يعالج
end up	ينتهي به المطاف إلى	say sorry	يُقدم اعتذارًا
take courage	يتطلب شجاعة	share true feelings	يُشارك مشاعر حقيقية
solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	stay close	يبقى على تواصل/قريبًا
get mixed up	يَختلِط عليه الأمر		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
fight	يُقاتل	fought	fought

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
proper	مناسب/ملائم	improper	غير ملائم
tough	قاسٍ/صلب/شديد	weak	ضعيف

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

stay – rebuild – up – solve

1 After the storm, they had to .... their house.

2 We need to .... this problem quickly.

3 The teacher told the kids to .... close during the field trip.

Language Notes

either أيضًا فى نهاية الجملة المنفية.

- We wouldn't have ended up upset with each other either.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
apologize (v)	يعتذر	say sorry	يُقدم اعتذارًا
glad (adj)	سعيد/مسرور	pleased	مسرور
openly (adv)	بصراحة/علنًا	frankly	بصراحة

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
final (adj)	نهائى	-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	finally (adv)	أخيرًا
complete (adj)	مكتمل	-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	completely (adv)	تمامًا/كليًا

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re-	build (v)	يبنى	تعطى معنى الإعادة	rebuild (v)	يُعيد البناء

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- What could have helped you solve the problem more easily?

SB page 36

Proper Communication Skills



(1) سوء فهم	(2) يتواصل
(3) أمين/صادق	(4) يحل
(5) رابط/صلة	(6) يعاود الاتصال

Mona Hi Naglaa, you seemed sad yesterday. Everything okay?

Naglaa Yes, I'm alright now. Just had a little misunderstanding[(1)] with my cousin, Noha, last weekend.

Mona Oh, that's tough. Did you solve the problem?

Naglaa We did. Honestly, if we had communicated[(2)] better, we wouldn't have argued at all.

Mona I totally agree. If I had been more honest[(3)] with my sister last week, we wouldn't have ended up upset with each other either.

Naglaa Right? It's like one small thing turns into a big deal. But we talked yesterday, and it helped us solve[(4)] everything.

Mona That's good to hear. Once people talk openly, it's easier to rebuild the bond[(5)], you know?

Naglaa For sure. I feel like we've finally reconnected[(6)]. It just took a real conversation.

Mona So true. It's amazing how much better things go when we just say what we're feeling.

Naglaa Absolutely. Communication makes such a big difference.

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What caused the misunderstanding between Naglaa and her cousin?

....

2 What could Naglaa and Mona have done differently to avoid their situations?

....

3 Why is being honest important in communication?

....

Lesson 5

Work with a partner. Use the chatty phrases below to practice a conversation.

SB page 37

Role A Hey, I've been thinking about our fight. Honestly, if we had **communicated** better, it wouldn't have happened.

Role B I totally get that. Sometimes things just get mixed up. It's important to be **honest** with each other.

Role A For sure! I really want to **resolve** this and keep our our bond strong.

Role B That's cool! I want that too. Let's work on it together.

Role A Great! I'm glad we can **reconnect** after all this.

Role B So true. Talking helps a lot, right?

Role A Right! Thanks for listening.

Lesson 6

SB page 38

Writing

Staying close to others needs good communication and a strong connection. If we had talked face-to-face, we could have avoided any misunderstanding because we would have been honest about our feelings. Sometimes people become distant, but if we had been more supportive, we could have resolved problems. It also takes courage to say sorry or to share true feelings. If we had stayed close to family and friends, life would have been more meaningful and happier.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analyzing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fight – apologized – won't – wouldn't – deal – share

Good communication skills help us stay close to the people we care about. When we (1)........................ true feelings, we can resolve misunderstandings easily. I once had a (2)........................ with my best friend. It was totally upsetting. But we talked openly and (3)........................ to each other. If I had said sorry earlier, the fight (4)........................ have got worse. I'm so glad we rebuilt our friendship. Proper communication really makes everything go better.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sandy didn't give a .... answer to the teacher's question, so he was angry.
   a) tough **b)** glad **c)** proper **d)** wrong
2. Samar had no bad .... when she said those words. Don't be angry.
   a) misunderstanding **b)** deal **c)** intent **d)** fight
3. If you're not careful, you might end .... getting hurt.
   a) at **b)** up **c)** with **d)** in
4. Nader spoke .... about his mistakes to help others.
   a) totally **b)** openly **c)** finally **d)** completely
5. It was a simple .... that caused the whole problem.
   a) courage **b)** misunderstanding **c)** communication **d)** solution
6. I had to .... for being late for the meeting.
   a) realize **b)** apologize **c)** rebuild **d)** create
7. You should always .... close to your family and friends.
   a) stay **b)** go **c)** say **d)** share
8. It's a .... decision, but we have to make it. It isn't easy.
   a) glad **b)** tough **c)** cool **d)** proper
9. Hala has a .... idea for the school art project. It is great.
   a) glad **b)** cool **c)** tough **d)** close
10. We .... reached the top of the hill after two hours. It was a difficult task.
    a) totally **b)** finally **c)** openly **d)** completely

PRACTICE MORE

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Saying – up – Speaking – had explained – have explained – get

When people argue, it often starts small and gets bigger quickly. That's why communication is important. I once ended (1) .... in a fight because I didn't explain my intent. If I (2) .... things clearly, it wouldn't have turned into such a big problem. (3) .... sorry, and being open helped us solve it. Now, I always take time to talk before things (4) .... bigger. Communication is tough, but totally worth it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My house is very close .... the school, so I walk there.

a) on **b)** for **c)** in **d)** to

2. It will .... courage to stand up and speak in public.

a) take **b)** go **c)** say **d)** do

3. I'm really .... that you came to my party today.

a) proper **b)** glad **c)** tough **d)** honest

4. Our city plans to .... the old bridge this year.

a) rebuild **b)** share **c)** stay **d)** fight

5. If you water the plant regularly, it will soon .... bigger.

a) end **b)** go **c)** get **d)** say

6. I don't know how to .... that problem. I need advice.

a) ignore **b)** solve **c)** make **d)** have

7. You should always .... sorry when you hurt someone's feelings.

a) take **b)** say **c)** work **d)** get

8. I'm .... sure that I left my keys on the table.

a) completely **b)** finally **c)** closely **d)** openly

9. It's good to .... your true feelings with close friends.

a) say **b)** go **c)** share **d)** take

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Fixing a misunderstanding and staying close with family or friends.

إصلاح سوء الفهم والبقاء قريبًا من العائلة أو الأصدقاء.

تُستخدم هذه العبارات لإظهار التفاعل الطبيعى والودى أثناء الحديث، خاصة مع الأصدقاء، أو العائلة، أو الزملاء المقربين.

Chatty phrases: عبارات ودية/غير رسمية:

- I totally get that. — أنا أفهمك تمامًا.
- Honestly ... — بصراحة...
- Absolutely. — تمامًا/بالتأكيد.
- That's cool! — هذا رائع!
- For sure. — بالتأكيد.
- Right? — صحيح؟ / أليس كذلك؟

That's cool! فى المحادثات اليومية العادية، نستخدم:

- **A: I just finished my project early.**
  B: That's cool!

Honestly/I totally get that: عند إظهار التعاطف أو الفهم، نستخدم:

- **A: I was really stressed yesterday.**
  B: I totally get that. Work can be tiring.

Absolutely/For sure: عند التأكيد والموافقة، نستخدم:

- **A: This movie is amazing.**
  B: Absolutely! I loved it too.

Right! عند تشجيع الطرف الآخر على الاستمرار فى الحديث، نستخدم:

- This weather is crazy, right?

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ **Lina and Youssef are talking after a small misunderstanding.**

Lina : Hi Youssef, can we talk for a minute?
Youssef : (1)... . What's up?
Lina : Honestly, I felt hurt yesterday when you didn't talk to me at lunch.
Youssef : Oh no! I didn't mean to.
Lina : (2)...?
Youssef : No, you didn't do anything wrong. I was just feeling tired.
Lina : That's cool. (3)...?
Youssef : Yes, we are okay. (4)... .
Lina : Me too, I care about our friendship. Let's talk right away next time.
Youssef : (5)...! Talking helps us stay close.

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.

2. Writing

How to write an opinion paragraph كيفية كتابة فقرة عن الرأى

(1) Try to use the Present Perfect Tense to describe actions and experiences which shape personal identity.

حاول استخدام زمن المضارع التام لوصف الأفعال والتجارب التى تشكل الهوية الشخصية.

(2) Try to use the present Perfect Tense Passive to describe actions received by the subject.

حاول استخدام زمن المضارع التام فى المبنى للمجهول لوصف الأفعال التى يتلقاها الفاعل.

(3) Try to use linking words (and, because, so, also) to connect ideas.

حاول استخدام كلمات الربط (و لأنه كذلك أيضًا) لربط الأفكار.

What should an opinion paragraph have?

ما الذى يجب أن تحتوى عليه فقرة الرأى؟

- **Introduction:** المقدمة:
  - Start with the experience or topic you're giving your opinion on.
    ابدأ بالتجربة أو الموضوع الذى تعطى رأيك فيه.
  - Describe the experience. صف التجربة.
- **Briefly explain what happened.** اشرح بإيجاز ما حدث.
- **Personal feelings and thoughts:** المشاعر والأفكار الشخصية
  - Share how you felt during the experience. شارك بما شعرت به أثناء التجربة.
- **Lesson learned:** الدرس المستفاد
  - Explain what you learned or how the experience changed you.
    اشرح ما تعلمته أو كيف غيرتك التجربة.
- **Closing sentence:** الجملة الختامية
  - End with a sentence that shows why this experience is important.
    اختتم بجملة توضح أهمية هذه التجربة.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

Example

"A good experience"

One of the best experiences I had was joining a school clean-up day. We cleaned the school garden and planted some flowers. It was my first time doing this, and I was a little nervous at the beginning. At first, I didn't know what to do, but my friends helped me. I started to enjoy the work. I felt happy because I was helping my school. Working together with my classmates was fun and made me feel proud. This experience taught me that helping others is important. I also learned that small actions can make a big difference. It made me feel more confident and responsible. In my opinion, every student should try to do something good for their school or community. It helps us become better people and teaches us to care for others. This experience was simple, but I will never forget it.

TEST YOURSELF

1 Finish the following dialog:

Youssef and Basel are planning to meet up tomorrow.

Youssef : Hi, Basel. Can we spend some time on PlayStation games?

Basel : (1) .... I'd prefer to go somewhere outside.

Youssef : (2) ....?

Basel : I want to go to the public library.

Youssef : (3) ....?

Basel : Because I like reading exciting stories.

Youssef : How can we go there?

Basel : (4) ....

Youssef : Then we can meet tomorrow at the bus station.

Basel : (5) ....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

turn – turned – tough – takes – shares – proper

Sometimes, just listening carefully shows others that you care. Communication isn't always easy, especially during (1) .... times. But staying calm and speaking with (2) .... intent can change everything. If I had apologized the moment I realized my mistake, the misunderstanding wouldn't have (3) .... into a big problem. Now I always try to speak kindly and openly. It (4) .... courage, but it's worth it. Finally, we all feel closer again.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I hope things will .... better next time during the event.
   - a) say
   - b) take
   - c) go
   - d) think
2. I'm glad to help you. The antonym of "glad" is ".....................".
   - a) curious
   - b) sad
   - c) pleased
   - d) happy
3. I couldn't find a .... place to study quietly.
   - a) proper
   - b) glad
   - c) tough
   - d) strong

4. If you hurt someone's feelings, you should always ....

a) apologize **b)** fight

c) memorize **d)** destroy

5. If we had looked after our plants, they .... faster.

a) will grow **b)** would grow

c) would be grown **d)** would have grown

6. If they'd remembered the tickets, we .... missed the show.

a) don't have **b)** wouldn't have

c) had wouldn't have **d)** didn't have

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If she .... (didn't forgot) her keys, she wouldn't have got back home.

2. If he .... (wouldn't eat) too much, he wouldn't have gone to hospital.

3. I would .... (meet) you if you hadn't traveled abroad.

4. Would Sara have finished the project if she .... (has) more time?

5. Hatim .... (catch) the train if he had run faster.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of communication"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I wasn't careful, and I broke the vase. (If)

....

2. He didn't follow the map, so he got lost. (If)

....

3. They didn't water the plants, so they died. (If)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 2 Assessment

SB page 39

A Vocabulary

1 Match the words from column (A) with the suitable meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. awkward	a) a sign or action that shows feeling or intent
2. gesture	b) feeling upset due to difficulty
3. reconnect	c) feeling uncomfortable or strange
4. frustrated	d) to build a relationship again
5. meaningful	e) full of importance or feeling

B Language

2 Fill in the blanks using the correct form of the Third Conditional verbs in brackets:

1. If I .... (do) my homework, the teacher .... (not be) angry.
2. If she .... (know) about the test, she .... (study) harder.
3. They .... (win) the game if they .... (practice) more.
4. If we .... (bring) a map, we .... (not get) lost.

3 Read and complete with the Third Conditional.

1. If you had missed the school bus last week, you ....
2. If he had gone to the party, he ....
3. If I had studied harder, I ....
4. If she had forgotten her homework, her teachers ....
5. If it had rained during our school trip, ...

C Writing

4 Write a paragraph of (110) words about communication.

....

....

....

Vocabulary

apologize (d) (v)	يعتذر
awkward (adj)	محرج/غير مريح
bond (n)	صلة/علاقة/ارتباط
communication (n)	تواصل
conflict (n)	صراع
determination (n)	تصميم/إصرار
disagreement (n)	خلاف/نزاع
discipline (n)	انضباط
distance (n)	مسافة
distractions (n)	مشتتات/ملهيات
face-to-face talk (n)	محادثة وجهًا لوجه
facial expressions (n)	تعبيرات الوجه
fight (n)	شجار/معركة/نزاع
frustrated (adj)	محبط/مكتئب
gesture (n)	إيماءة/حركة يد
initiative (n)	مبادرة
intent (n)	نِيّة/قَصد
laughter (n)	ضحك
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى/قيمة
miscommunication (n)	سوء تواصل
misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم
proper (adj)	مناسب/ملائم
proposal (n)	عرض/اقتراح
reconnect (ed) (v)	يعيد التواصل
relationship (n)	علاقة
siblings (n)	أشقاء
silence (n)	صمت

Language

If (The Third Conditional)

الحالة الشرطية الثالثة

e.g. If you had **helped** me, I would have **finished** faster.

Form: التكوين

If + past perfect ماضى تام , Subject فاعل + would have + P.P.

e.g. If Ali **had studied** more, he would have got high marks.

Subject فاعل + would have + P.P. + If + past perfect ماضى تام

e.g. I would have **caught** the bus if I **had woken** up earlier.

Skills

A. Speaking

Express opinions about communication with family and friends

A: Do you think it's important to talk with your family every day?

B: Yes, I do. Talking with my family helps me feel safe and supported.

A: How can you stay connected with others?

B: - Through kind words, active listening and thoughtful messages.

- That's nice! And what about your friends?

A: I stay in touch with my friends through messages and calls. It keeps us close.

B: I think real conversations are better than just texting.

A: I agree. Face-to-face talk builds stronger relationships.

B: So true! Good communication makes all relationships better.

B. Writing

How to write an opinion paragraph

One of the best experiences I had was joining a school clean-up day. We cleaned the school garden and planted some flowers. It was my first time doing this, and I was a little nervous at the beginning. At first, I didn't know what to do, but my friends helped me. I started to enjoy the work. I felt happy because I was helping my school. Working together with my classmates was fun and made me feel proud. This experience taught me that helping others is important. I also learned that small actions can make a big difference. It made me feel more confident and responsible. In my opinion, every student should try to do something good for their school or community. It helps us become better people and teaches us to care for others. This experience was simple, but I will never forget it.

General Exercises on Unit 2

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Ali and Leila are talking about staying connected.

Ali : How do you usually talk to your friends, Leila?

Leila : (1).. .

Ali : Do you talk to them every day?

Leila : (2).. . I like to stay in touch.

Ali : (3)..?

Leila : My family! We talk a lot at home and share our day.

Ali : Do you think staying connected is important?

Leila : (4)... . It helps us feel close to each other.

Ali : (5)..?

Leila : When I stop talking to friends, I feel lonely.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

had – has – fix – takes – went – got

Sharing true feelings doesn't make you weak. But it (1).................... courage. During a group project, a classmate was upset but didn't say anything. Things got worse. If he (2).................... spoken openly, we would have dealt with it earlier. Later, he apologized, and everything (3).................... better. I learned how powerful it is to talk with kindness. Misunderstandings might happen, but proper communication can (4).................... almost anything. I'm absolutely sure of that.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

We all have problems sometimes. It can be at school, at home, or with friends. The best way to solve a problem is to stay calm and think clearly. If we get angry, we may make the problem worse.

One good way is to talk to someone you trust, like a friend, a teacher, or a parent. When we talk, we feel better, and sometimes we find a good idea.

Another way is to write the problem on paper. Then write two or three possible solutions. Think: what will happen if I do this?

We should try to fix problems in a kind and smart way. Sometimes we need help, and that's okay. Solving problems is a skill we can all learn.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the best way to solve a problem?

a) Get angry. b) Cry a lot.
c) Stay calm and think. d) Run away.

2. Who can help you with a problem?

a) A stranger. b) A trusted person.
c) No one. d) The internet only.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where can problems happen, according to the passage?

....

4. What does the writer say about being angry when you have a problem?

....

5. Write one thing you can do to help solve a problem.

....

6. Do you think writing your problem helps you find a solution? Why or why not?

....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The way we talk and listen affects our .... with others.

a) solution b) connection c) flying d) falling

2. There was strange ....; no one could speak after hearing the bad news.

a) patience b) absence c) silence d) violence

3. The young man felt hurt, but he showed .... and continued the task.

a) resilience b) absence c) rest d) laziness

4. To be emotionally or physically not close means to be ....

a) distant b) near c) connected d) selected

5. If we .... more money, we would have spent the summer vacation in Marina.

a) would have saved b) had saved c) had been saved d) saved

6. If he had asked for help, he .... the task on time.

a) would finish b) had finished

c) would have finished d) would be finished

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. What would have happened if you .... (have) arrived late for the meeting?
2. If she had listened to her parents, she .... (would) have had this problem.
3. The ground .... (be) wet if it had rained yesterday.
4. Adel would .... (travel) to many countries if he had been a pilot.
5. If you .... (listening) to my advice, you wouldn't have made that mistake.

D The Story

6 **A) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why did Zeina go online?..
2. Why do you think Zeina was brave when she spoke?..

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina wrote a proposal after she .... school gardens online.

a) ignored b) researched c) avoided d) forgot

4. Zeina showed .... by speaking at the student council meeting.

a) courage b) fear c) doubt d) anger

E Writing

7 **Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Donia to tell her about ways of communication with your family. Your name is Hams.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

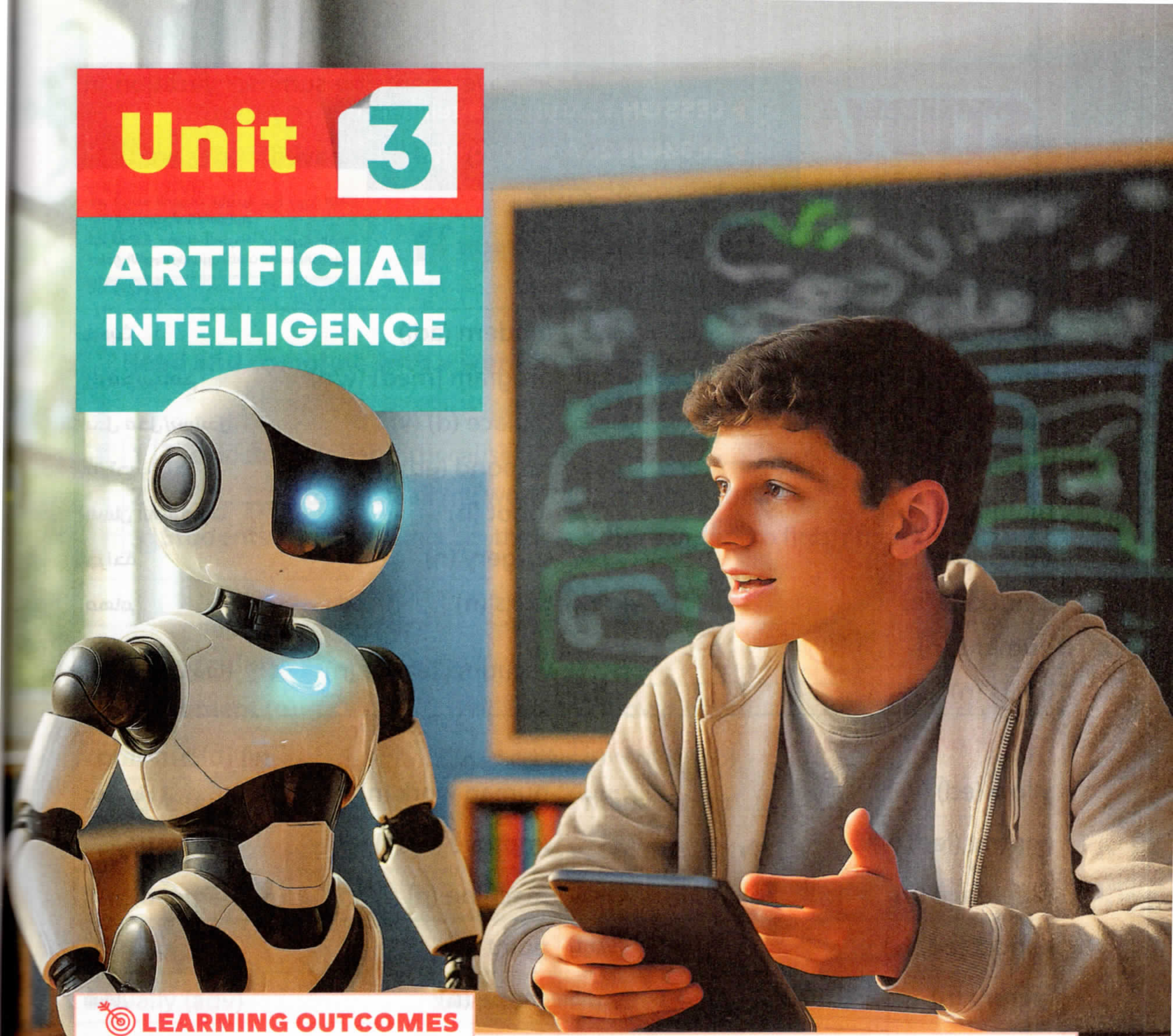
....

....

....

Unit 3

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main idea of a text about Artificial Intelligence.
- Identify specific details of a text about Artificial Intelligence.
- Recognize meaning of words from the context.

Listening

- Identify the main idea and specific details in audio texts related to AI.

Speaking

- Express expectations for the future use of AI in the future.
- Share opinions on AI's impact on jobs, education, and daily life.

Writing

- Write about the benefits of AI in the future.
- Write a descriptive paragraph using descriptive adjectives and linking words.
- Use vocabulary related to Artificial Intelligence in meaningful context.

Language

- Use the future simple active/ passive to describe future actions.

STUDY

- **LESSON 1 :** Artificial Intelligence — SB pages 42-43
- **LESSON 2 :** AI Technology — pages 44-45

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advanced (adj)	متقدم/متطور	modern (adj)	حديث
artificial intelligence (AI) (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	program (med) (v/n)	يبرمج/برنامج
basic (adj)	أساسى	replace (d) (v)	يحل محل/يستبدل
behavior (n)	سلوك	respond (ed) (v)	يستجيب/يرد
brain (n)	مخ	robot (n)	إنسان آلى/روبوت
developed (adj)	متطور	surgery (n)	جراحة
emotions (n)	عواطف	tasks (n)	مهام
humans (n)	البشر	vacuum cleaner (n)	مكنسة كهربائية
limits (n)	حدود		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	human work (n)	عمل بشرى
control (led) (v)	يتحكم فى	improve (d) (v)	يتحسن/يحسن
difference (n)	اختلاف	machine (n)	آلة
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	point (n)	نقطة/غاية
factory (n)	مصنع	shape (n)	شكل
further (adv/adj)	أبعد/إضافى	smart (adj)	ذكى/أنيق

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

go inside	يذهب إلى الداخل	follow orders	يتبع الأوامر
do a task/work	يؤدى مهمة/عملًا	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
put	يضع	put	put

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
expensive	غالٍ	cheap	رخيص
same	نفس	different	مختلف
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

follow – ignore – responded – expect

1 The doctor was happy because the patient .... quickly to the medicine.

2 I .... to finish all my work by lunchtime today.

3 Students should .... their teacher's orders to finish their project.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advertisement (n)	إعلان	innovation (n)	ابتكار/إبداع
compose (d) (v)	يؤلف/يكتب	invention (n)	اختراع
creative (adj)	مُبدع/مبتكر	manager (n)	مدير
error (n)	خطأ	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
improvement (n)	تحسُن	replacement (n)	بديل/استبدال

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

actually (adv)	فى الواقع/فعلًا	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
benefits (n)	فوائد	mend (ed) (v)	يصلح
check (ed) (v)	يفحص/يراجع	prepare (d) (v)	يعد/يجهز
correct (ed) (v)	يُصَحِّح	report (n)	تقرير
driverless (adj)	بدون سائق	return (ed) (v)	يعود/يرجع
education (n)	تعليم	self-driving cars (n)	سيارات ذاتية القيادة
essay (n)	مقال	serve (d) (v)	يخدم/يقدم
field (n)	مجال/حقل	transform (ed) (v)	يحول
incredible (adj)	لا يصدق	transport (n)	مواصلات/نقل

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

automate tasks	تشغيل المهام تلقائيًا	make an advertisement	يُعِـد إعلانًا
diagnose diseases	يشخص الأمراض	personalize learning	يخصص التعلم
enhance transportation	يحسّن وسائل النقل	power healthcare	يدعم الرعاية الصحية
get tired	يـتـعـب	reduce human errors	يقلل الأخطاء البشرية
improve customer service	يحسن خدمة العملاء		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

get – errors – go – checked

1 Making .... is normal because we can always learn from our mistakes.

2 We .... the list to see if our names were there.

3 I usually .... tired after playing football with my friends for a long time.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

advanced	متقدم/متطور	very modern, developed, or complex;[1] not basic
behavior	سلوك	the way someone or something acts or responds[2]
compose	يؤلف	create or produce
creative	مبدع/مبتكر	producing or using unusual ideas
emotions	عواطف	feelings like happiness, sadness, anger[3], or fear[4]
humans	البشر	people; men, women, and children
innovation	إبداع	invention and improvement[5]
limits	حدود	the point where something stops or cannot go further[6]
tasks	مهام	jobs or actions that need to be done

(1) معقد
(2) يستجيب
(3) الغضب
(4) الخوف
(5) تطوير
(6) يبتعد

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها
advanced (adj)	متقدم/متطور	developed	متطور
allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	let	يسمح
emotions (n)	عواطف	feelings	مشاعر

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ence		تحول الفعل إلى اسم		difference (n)	اختلاف
driver (n)	سائق	-less		تعطى عكس الكلمة		driverless (adj)	بدون سائق

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re-		place	يضع فى مكان	تعطى معنى الإعادة		replace (v)	يحل محل/يستبدل
in-		expensive	غالٍ	تعطى عكس المعنى		inexpensive	غير مكلف

Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 This phone has many advanced features. The synonym of "advanced" is "..............................".

a) backward
b) actual
c) developed
d) creative

2 "..............................." means the points where something stops or cannot go further.

a) Errors
b) Limits
c) Reports
d) Fields

3 The two plans differ in cost and time. We add the suffix "..............................." to form the noun of "differ".

a) -er
b) -ly
c) -ness
d) -ence

B Reading & Listening Skills

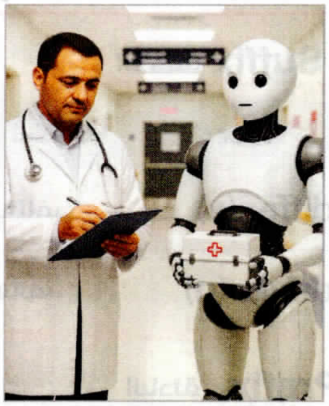
Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

1 What is Artificial Intelligence?

2 Would you like a robot to help you with homework? Why or why not?

Read the following text about Artificial Intelligence. *SB page 42*



Many people think robots and Artificial Intelligence[1] (AI) are the same, but they are different. A robot[2] is a machine that can move and do tasks[3]. Some robots are very simple, like a machine in a factory that puts bottles in a box. Other robots are more advanced[4], like robot dogs that can walk, run, and even play with people.

AI is the "brain" that can go inside a robot. AI allows the robot to make decisions, learn from actions, and change its behavior[5]. For example, a robot vacuum cleaner with AI can learn the shape of your room and clean it better each time. Without AI, the robot can only follow basic orders.

Some robots with AI are used in hospitals. They can bring medicine to patients or help during surgery. In schools, robots can help students learn new languages or solve math problems.

Still, robots and AI have limits[6]. They can't truly understand emotions[7], and they often need humans[8] to help or program them. Also, making smart robots can be very expensive.

As technology improves, we will see more robots in our daily lives. But it's important to know: not all AI is in robots, and not all robots are smart.

(1) الذكاء الاصطناعى
(2) إنسان آلى
(3) مهام
(4) متقدم/متطور
(5) سلوك
(6) حدود
(7) عواطف
(8) البشر

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 What is the difference between a robot and AI?

....

2 Give two examples of robots that use AI.

....

3 What are two limits of robots and AI?

....

Pre-listening questions:

1 What are some good things and bad things about using AI?

2 Will you ever use AI to help you write a story? Why?

Listen to a conversation between Adham and Lina. *SB page 44*



Lina Hey Adham, I read something interesting today. It said that AI can make art and music. Isn't that something only humans[1] can do?

Adham Yeah, a lot of people think that. But with all the new innovation[2] in technology, AI can actually create pictures, songs, and even stories!

Lina Really? How does that work?

Adham Well, there are AI programs. For example, you type something like "a cat flying in space," and it makes a picture! It uses a special algorithm[3] to turn words into images.

Lina Wow! That sounds fun. Can it make music too?

Adham Yes! Some AI can compose music or even write poems. Some writers use AI to get ideas or write the first draft of a story.

Lina But can AI really be creative? Doesn't it just copy things?

Adham Good question. AI learns by studying thousands of human-made songs, books, and art. Then it finds patterns[4] and makes something new. It's like a virtual artist[5].

Lina Can AI feel emotions[6] like a human artist?

Adham No. AI is just a tool, not a replacement[7]. But it's an exciting w ay to help humans be even more creative.

(1) البشر	(2) الأبداع
(3) خوارزميات	(4) أنماط
(5) فنان افتراضى	(6) عواطف
(7) بديل	

Listen to an audio about the future of technology and answer the following. *SB page 44*

The future of technology Artificial Intelligence is transforming[1] our world, offering incredible[2] benefits across many fields. Today, AI powers healthcare[3], such as diagnosing[4] diseases; education, such as personalized[5] learning; and business, such as automating tasks[6]. It enhances[7] transportation with self-driving cars[8] and improves customer service. It also reduces human errors.

(1) يحول
(2) لا يصدق
(3) الرعاية الصحية
(4) يشخص
(5) مخصص/شخصى
(6) تشغيل المهام تلقائيا
(7) يطور
(8) سيارات ذاتية القيادة

Post-listening question: SB

- What is one benefit of AI mentioned in the article?

a) It gets tired quickly. **b)** It replaces students at school.
c) It reduces human errors. **d)** It works only at night.

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

Skills Bank Reading

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 106-107 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
primary	أساسى	....	old	قديم	....
reply	يرد	....	damage	يتلف	....
mistake	خطأ	....	increase	يزيد	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

How to answer this question:

كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال:

أولاً: عليك أن تعرف إلى ماذا تشير الضمائر:

Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

الضمائر عادة تشير لأقرب اسم يسبقها.

ثانيًا: عليك قراءة الجملة التى تسبق الضمير جيدًا وتحديد الاسم الذى تشير إليه.

FOR EXAMPLE:

AI is the "brain" that can go inside a robot. AI allows the robot to make decisions, learn from actions, and change its behavior. For example, a robot vacuum cleaner with AI can learn the shape of your room and clean it better each time. Without AI, the robot can only follow basic orders.

- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- A robot is a machine that can move and do tasks.

- الروبوت هو آلة يمكنها أن تتحرك وتقوم بالمهام. ☐
- الروبوت محرك ذكى يستطيع التحدث واللعب. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- يسمح الذكاء الاصطناعى للروبوت اتخاذ القرارات والتعلم من الأفعال.

☐ Artificial intelligence allows the robot to make decisions and learn from actions.

☐ Artificial intelligence helps the robot sleep and have dreams from actions.

Practice VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

limits – robots – make – do – control – follow

Artificial Intelligence (AI) is changing how we live. Robots with AI can (1) .... many tasks, like cleaning or helping in surgery. These machines are often used in hospitals, where they (2) .... orders carefully. Although robots are smart, they still have (3) .... They cannot feel emotions like humans do. In the future, more (4) .... will be used in schools to support learning. As technology grows, we can expect further improvements in AI behavior.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We use .... in machines to make them think and learn like humans.
   a) electricity b) emotions
   c) human power d) artificial intelligence
2. I use a smart .... that cleans the floor by itself.
   a) vacuum cleaner b) point c) oven d) fan
3. Modern robots use .... technology to work better and faster.
   a) old b) advanced c) manual d) no
4. The .... went well, thanks to the skilled team of doctors and nurses.
   a) surgery b) emotion c) shape d) disease
5. We need more time to .... a good decision.
   a) make b) fix c) ignore d) mend
6. Students were asked to .... orders from the teacher.
   a) watch b) lose c) follow d) draw
7. Robots have .... and can't do everything a human can.
   a) games b) emotions c) limits d) minds
8. AI can learn from human .... and improve over time.
   a) behavior b) emotion c) surgery d) point
9. .... help humans express their feelings.
   a) Machines b) Engines c) Emotions d) Robots
10. The new robot will .... human work in some factories.
    a) expect b) put c) allow d) replace

LESSON 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

write – feel – compose – innovation – wrong – correct

Artificial Intelligence is found in many fields. AI can now (1) .... poems and even write an essay in seconds! This (2) .... surprises many students. Some creative kids feel amazed, while others (3) .... challenged. Soon, textbooks will be written using AI tools. One student said, "I asked AI to help, and it gave me a great story!" Teachers still check and (4) .... students' work, but AI brings a new way to learn.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We realized a big .... in Abdullah's reading after more practice.
   a) suggestion b) advertisement c) improvement d) replacement
2. My teachers always .... our homework and give us feedback.
   a) check b) return c) invite d) get
3. We must .... our bags before the trip.
   a) correct b) return c) prepare d) invite
4. A good .... helps the team solve problems quickly.
   a) reporter b) manager c) writer d) cleaner
5. AI has .... benefits that will improve the world.
   a) usual b) shy c) confused d) incredible
6. AI powers healthcare, such as .... diseases and suggesting treatment.
   a) diagnosing b) improving c) spreading d) powering
7. Good .... helps people get to work on time.
   a) report b) transport c) essay d) airport
8. The old computer stopped working, so we got a/an .... for it.
   a) decision b) invention c) story d) replacement
9. We need a/an .... person to write the play to create new ideas.
   a) creative b) driverless c) artificial d) complex
10. We need to .... an advertisement to let people know about our event.
    a) see b) make c) draw d) go

C Language

Remember

The Future Simple Active المستقبل البسيط فى المبنى للمعلوم

Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + will /won't + inf.

e.g. • My Father will **mend** his car tomorrow. • Amany won't **go** to school tomorrow.

Usage الاستخدام

To describe actions that someone will do in the future.

لوصف الأفعال التى سوف يقوم بها شخص فى المستقبل.

e.g. We will **finish** this project next Friday.

Key Words الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow غدًا/in the future فى المستقبل/soon قريبًا/one day فى يوم من الأيام/
(next ...(week/month/year/Friday)): (الأسبوع/الشهر/السنة/الجمعة ... القادم/القادمة)

The Future Simple Passive المستقبل البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول

Form التكوين

Object مفعول + will/won't be + P.P. + by + subject الفاعل

e.g. • In schools, lessons will be **explained** by AI programs.
• A lot of jobs won't be **found** in the future because of AI.

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions:

Will + object (المفعول) + be + P.P. ...?

e.g. Will lessons be **explained** by AI programs?

Wh- questions:

Q. word + will + object (المفعول) + be + P.P. ...?

e.g. Where will the new school be **built**?

Usage الاستخدام

To describe actions that will be done by someone in the future.

لوصف الأفعال التى سوف يقوم بها شخص ما فى المستقبل.

e.g. This project will be **finished** next Friday.

Practice | **LANGUAGE EXERCISE**

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The book .... by the author next week.
   a) will be written b) will write c) is writing d) writes
2. The streets .... after the festival by the workers.
   a) will clean b) are cleaning
   c) clean d) will be cleaned
3. Aya .... the email tomorrow.
   a) is sent b) will be sent c) will send d) sent
4. The flat .... by the workers next month.
   a) will paint b) will be painted c) is painting d) paints
5. Don't worry, the problem .... soon.
   a) will be solved b) is solving c) were solved d) will solve
6. The teacher .... the lesson tomorrow.
   a) will explain b) will be explained c) is being explain d) explains
7. The game .... at 6 next Friday.
   a) is playing b) will playing c) will be played d) plays
8. The cake .... by Mona tomorrow.
   a) will be baked b) is baking c) will bake d) bakes
9. Will the mistake .... soon?
   a) correct b) be corrected
   c) to correct d) be correcting
10. The message .... next week.
    a) will be delivered b) is delivered
    c) is delivering d) will deliver
11. The house .... by a famous architect.
    a) will design b) is designing
    c) will be designed d) are designed
12. My car .... at the service center tomorrow.
    a) will check b) is checking
    c) was checked d) will be checked
13. .... the project be done in time?
    a) Was b) Is c) Will d) Are

PRACTICE MORE

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The exam papers will be .... (check) by the teacher. SB
2. Our essays will be .... (return) next week. SB
3. We will .... (used) driverless cars. SB
4. The homework .... (will correct) tomorrow. SB
5. Father .... (mend) his car tomorrow. SB
6. The homework .... (will do) by the students.
7. The guests .... (will be invites) to the party.
8. She will .... (be clean) the windows tomorrow.
9. The message will .... (send) soon.
10. A school trip .... (organize) next Saturday.
11. Will the team .... (designed) the new logo?
12. Will questions .... (answer) next week?
13. The road repairs will be finished .... (at) the workers next week.
14. The mail .... (will) be sent by the secretary. It will be sent by me.
15. Will the meeting .... (held) at 10 a.m. by the director?
16. The school will be cleaned .... (on) the volunteers.
17. The teacher will .... (be announced) the results tomorrow.
18. The photos will .... (take) by an experienced photographer.

2 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. The mechanic will be fixed the car soon. (..............................)
2. A new movie will shown soon at the cinema. (..............................)
3. The floor will be cleaned by Sara. Mona will clean it. (..............................)
4. Are the new rules be followed by everyone? (..............................)
5. Will you traveling to Alexandria by train tomorrow? (..............................)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Expressing expectations for the future use of AI in the future

التعبير عن التوقعات بشأن استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعى فى المستقبل

online

What jobs do you think AI can do in the future?
ما الوظائف التى تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعى يمكن أن يقوم بها فى المستقبل؟

It can drive cars, teach students, and help in hospitals.
يمكنه قيادة السيارات، وتعليم الطلاب، والمساعدة فى المستشفيات.

Do you think AI will be able to replace humans?
هل تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعى سيتمكن من استبدال البشر؟

No, I don't think so. لا، لا أعتقد ذلك.

Do you think AI and robots can make our life better? Why?
هل تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعى والروبوتات يمكن أن يجعلا حياتنا أفضل؟ ولماذا؟

Yes, because they can do boring and dangerous jobs.
نعم، لأنهما يستطيعان القيام بالأعمال المملة والخطيرة.

Do you think robots can do all human work? Why?
هل تعتقد أن الروبوتات يمكن أن تقوم بكل أعمال البشر؟ لماذا؟

No, because they don't have feelings or creativity.
لا، لأنها لا تملك مشاعر أو إبداعًا.

Do you think robots can help doctors in surgery?
هل تعتقد أن الروبوتات يمكن أن تساعد الأطباء فى الجراحة؟

Yes, they can make surgeries safer. نعم، يمكن أن تجعل العمليات الجراحية أكثر أمانًا.

Do you think AI will become smarter than humans one day?
هل تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعى سيصبح أذكى من البشر يومًا ما؟

Maybe, but humans will still control it. ربما، لكن البشر سيظلون يتحكمون به.

- I expect AI will control everything in the future.
- أتوقع أن الذكاء الاصطناعى سيتحكم فى كل شىء فى المستقبل.

2. Sharing opinions on AI's impact on jobs, education, and daily life

مشاركة الآراء حول تأثير الذكاء الاصطناعى على الوظائف والتعليم والحياة اليومية

online

What do you know about Artificial Intelligence (AI)? ماذا تعرف عن الذكاء الاصطناعى؟

It's a type of technology that helps machines think.

إنه نوع من التكنولوجيا يساعد الآلات على التفكير.

What fields can you use AI in? فى أى مجالات يمكن استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعى؟

We can use AI in medicine, education, and transport.

يمكننا استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعى فى الطب والتعليم والمواصلات.

How do you think AI helps in education?

كيف تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعى يساعد فى التعليم؟

It helps students learn faster and provides useful information.

يساعد الطلاب على التعلم بشكل أسرع ويوفر معلومات مفيدة.

Can AI replace teachers in the future? Why?

هل يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى أن يحل محل المعلمين فى المستقبل؟ لماذا؟

No, because teachers understand students' feelings.

لا، لأن المعلمين يفهمون مشاعر الطلاب.

Would you like a robot to help you with homework?

هل تود أن يساعدك روبوت فى أداء الواجب المنزلى؟

Yes, it would make studying easier. نعم، سيجعل الدراسة أسهل.

Will you use AI to help you write a story?

هل ستستخدم الذكاء الاصطناعى لمساعدتك فى كتابة قصة؟

Yes, it can give me ideas and help with grammar.

نعم، يمكنه أن يعطينى أفكارًا ويساعدنى فى القواعد.

Would you like to have a robot at home? Why?

هل تود أن يكون لديك روبوت فى المنزل؟ ولماذا؟

Yes, to help me clean and cook. نعم، ليساعدنى فى التنظيف والطبخ.

How does AI help in daily life? كيف يساعدنا الذكاء الاصطناعى فى حياتنا اليومية؟

It helps us with shopping and using smart devices.

يساعدنا فى التسوق، واستخدام الأجهزة الذكية.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Ahmed and Omar are discussing the future use of AI.**

Ahmed : What jobs do you think AI can do in the future?

Omar : (1).. .

Ahmed : I don't think it will be able to drive cars.

Omar : (2)..?

Ahmed : Because driving cars needs thinking. (3)...?

Omar : AI can think like humans, but faster than us.

Ahmed : Do you think AI will be able to replace humans?

Omar : (4).. .

Ahmed : Will you use AI in the future?

Omar : (5).. . It will help me finish on time.

2 Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Salma and Aya are talking about the use of AI in the class.**

Salma : Do you think we'll have robots in our classroom?

Aya : (1).. .

Salma : (2)..?

Aya : Because teachers understand our feelings.

Salma : Right! Teachers understand our feelings. (3)...?

Aya : Yes, it can help in class by checking our answers.

Salma : Will we stop using books?

Aya : (4).. . I think we'll use books and technology.

Salma : Thanks for your time.

Aya : (5).. .

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about benefits of AI now and in the future

كيفية الكتابة عن فوائد الذكاء الاصطناعى الآن وفى المستقبل

1. What is Artificial Intelligence (AI)? ما الذكاء الاصطناعى؟

- AI is a kind of smart technology. الذكاء الاصطناعى هو نوع من التكنولوجيا الذكية .

2. How is AI helping us today? كيف يساعدنا الذكاء الاصطناعى اليوم؟

- Today, AI helps us find information and use smart devices.

يساعدنا الذكاء الاصطناعى اليوم فى ايجاد المعلومات واستخدام الأجهزة الذكية.

3. In what ways does AI help at school or at home?
كيف يساعد الذكاء الاصطناعى فى البيت والمدرسة؟

- Students use AI to learn new things and do homework. It can do many tasks at home.

يستخدم الطلاب الذكاء الاصطناعى فى تعلم أشياء جديدة وعمل الواجب. كما يمكنه تأدية العديد من المهام فى المنزل.

4. How can AI help us in the future? كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى المساعدة فى المستقبل؟

- In the future, AI may drive cars or help clean our homes. It can save time and make life more comfortable.

فى المستقبل، يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى أن يقود السيارات ويساعد فى تنظيف المنازل. يمكنه توفير الوقت ويجعل الحياة أكثر راحة.

5. What is a good sentence to end your paragraph?
ما الجملة الجيدة التى ستختم بها فقرتك؟

- In conclusion, AI is helpful now and will be even better later.

وفى الختام، الذكاء الاصطناعى مفيد الآن وسيكون أفضل بكثير لاحقًا.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"Benefits of AI Now and in the Future"

Artificial Intelligence, or AI, is helping people in many ways today and will be even more helpful in the future. Right now, AI helps us use smart phones, search for information quickly, and talk to voice assistants. It also helps doctors find health problems faster and helps students learn with fun apps. In the future, AI may drive cars safely, clean houses, and help teachers in classrooms. It can even help protect the environment by saving energy and water. AI works fast and does not get tired, which makes it very useful. In conclusion, AI is making life easier now and will make the future even better for everyone.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Finish the following dialog:

Ali and Waleed are talking about robots at home.

Ali : Do you think robots will be in every house in the future?

Waleed : (1).. . They'll help with cooking and cleaning.

Ali : (2)..?

Waleed : They can also play music and help kids study.

Ali : (3)..?

Waleed : Yes, I'd love to have a robot friend.

Ali : How can AI help us learn?

Waleed : (4).. .

Ali : I agree with you it can explain lessons in easy ways.

Waleed : (5).. . I want it to help at home.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

limits – doing – making – will build – will be built – respond

Robots are becoming more advanced, thanks to artificial intelligence. They are now helping people with disabilities, (1).................... tasks like picking up things or opening doors. AI helps the robot (2).................... correctly to its environment. But even advanced robots have (3).................... . They can't think creatively or feel emotions. In the future, more robots (4).................... to help people live more independently and safely.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... can think, feel, and make decisions on their own.
   a) Robots b) Humans c) Engines d) Feelings
2. A/An .... computer can perform many jobs at once.
   a) brave b) empty c) advanced d) slow
3. The smart watch is a useful .... for busy people.
   a) innovation b) human c) advertisement d) replacement
4. The manager read the final .... to the team.
   a) field b) invention c) report d) advertisement

5. The shirts will be washed and .... as usual.

a) ironed b) will iron c) irons d) be ironed

6. Will the report .... by the secretary?

a) typed b) be typed c) be typing d) is typed

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The window won't .... (repair) until next week.
2. The letter will be .... (send) next week.
3. The homework .... (will) be checked by the teacher because he is sick today.
4. The room .... (be) cleaned by my sister tomorrow.
5. The project.................... (will) completed next week.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"AI in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. AI will do more tasks in the future. (be)

....

2. Hana won't make dinner tonight. (made)

....

3. Volunteers will plant a lot of trees in our community. (be)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

STUDY

- **LESSON 3 :** A Robot Teacher — SB pages 46-47
- **LESSON 4 :** Story Time — SB pages 48-49

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

AI app (n)	تطبيق ذكاء اصطناعى	instantly (adv)	فورًا/فى الحال
confused (adj)	مرتبك/مشتت	learning website (n)	موقع تعليمى
congratulate (d) (v)	يُهنّئ	notice (d) (v)	يُلاحظ
connection (n)	اتصال	shiny (adj)	لامع
customize (d) (v)	يُخصّص/يُعدّل	surprising (adj)	مُفاجئ/مُدهِش
extra (adj)	إضافى		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

AI teacher (n)	مُعلِّم بالذكاء الاصطناعى	helpful (adj)	مُعين/مُفيد/متعاون
artist (n)	فنان/رسام	normal (adj)	عادى/طبيعى
delay (ed) (v/n)	يُؤخِّر/تأخير	ordinary (adj)	عادى/مألوف
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة/تقييم	robot teacher (n)	مُعلِّم روبوت
grammar (n)	قواعد		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

in your opinion	فى رأيك	walk into	يَدخُل إلى
aware of	واعٍ بـ/مدرك لـ ...	puzzled	متحير/مشوَّش
by Friday	قبل يوم الجمعة	wait for	ينتظر لـ ...

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
teach	يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught
stand	يقف	stood	stood

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

artist – teacher – notice – of

1. You should be aware .... the dangers of crossing the street alone.
2. We met a kind ...., who showed us his drawings.
3. Please .... the sign on the door before entering.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

climate (n)	مناخ	motivated (adj)	متحفز
disappointed (adj)	محبط	quit (ted) (v)	ينسحب/يترك
donation (n)	تبرع	seed (n)	بذرة
local (adj)	محلى	soil (n)	تربة زراعية

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

die (d) (v)	يموت	reaction (n)	رد فعل
failure (n)	فشل	watering system (n)	نظام الرى
plan (n)	خطة		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

ask for	يطلب	protect from	يحمى من
care for/about	يعتنى/يهتم بـ/يرعى	with determination	بعزيمة/بإصرار
good for	مفيد لـ ...	work out	يسير على ما يرام

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
local	محلى	global	عالمى

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

out – quit – on – reaction

1 I was tired, but I didn't .... the race.
2 His quick .... helped him catch the falling glass.
3 Don't worry. Things will work .... in the end.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

customize	يُخصص/يُعدِّل	to change something to make it the way you want
connection	اتصال	a link(1) between people, things, or ideas
instantly	فورًا/في الحال	without any delay(2)
confused	مرتبك	feeling unsure or puzzled
notice	يلاحظ	to see or become aware of(3) something
initiative	مبادرة	taking action without waiting for others
donations	تبرعات	money or gifts(4) given to help a project
quit	ينسحب/يترك	to stop doing something because it's too hard
disappointed	محبط	feeling sad when something doesn't work out
climate	المناخ	the usual weather in a place

(1) اتصال
(2) تأخير
(3) على دراية بـ
(4) هدايا

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها
shiny (adj)	لامع	bright	لامع
normal (adj)	عادى/طبيعى	ordinary	عادى/مألوف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
disappoint (v)	يحبط	-d/ed	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	disappointed (adj)	محبط
motivate (v)	يحفز	-d/ed		motivated (adj)	متحفز
shine (v)	يلمع	-y		shiny (adj)	لامع
surprise (n)	يدهش	-ing		surprising (adj)	مُفاجِئ/مُدهِش

B Reading & Listening Skills

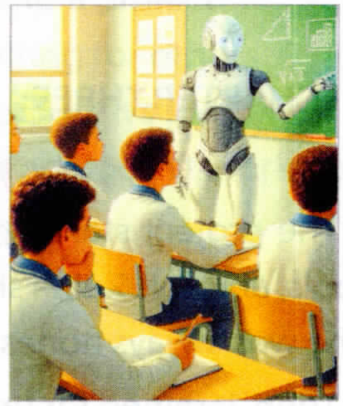
Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

1 How do you use technology at school?

2 Have you ever used an AI app, or a learning website to help you study?

Read the following text and guess the meaning of the words in bold. *SB page 46*



One rainy morning, Sara walked into her classroom and saw something **surprising**[1]. Her teacher wasn't there. Instead, a **shiny**[2] robot stood at the front of the room.

"Good morning, students," it said. "I am a robot teacher. I will be your AI teacher this week."

The students were **confused**[3]. The robot teacher explained, "I will help each of you learn in a special way. At the end of the week, your lessons will be **customized**[4] just for you."

The robot teacher knew what each student needed. It gave Sara extra grammar practice.

Nader was given fun math games. All homework was checked **instantly**[5], and no one had to wait long for feedback.

"You will be taught so much by Friday," the robot teacher said.

But after a few days, Sara missed her real teacher.

The robot teacher was helpful, but it didn't smile or **notice**[6] when students felt tired or sad.

By the time their human teacher returned, everyone had improved. But they had also learned something important: technology can help, but it cannot replace the care and **connection**[7] of a real teacher.

In the future, AI will be used in many classrooms—but it will not replace real teachers completely.

(1) مدهش
(2) لامع
(3) مرتبك
(4) مخصص
(5) فورًا/في الحال
(6) يلاحظ
(7) اتصال

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 Sara saw something .... in the classroom.
a) ordinary b) surprising c) dangerous d) normal

2 Sara and her classmates .... their real teacher.
a) missed b) lost c) hated d) congratulated

3 We understand from the story that AI can't .... humans.
a) benefit b) help c) replace d) wait

4 Why were the students confused? ....

5 What is the difference between technology and humans? ....

The School Garden Project

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- What problems do you think a school garden project might face?

....

Read the following text. Could the team solve the problem they faced?

SB page 48

CHAPTER THREE:

Facing problems with determination

The project started, but it wasn't easy. First, they needed money to buy seeds, tools, and soil. Zeina showed initiative[1] by asking local community for donations[2]. She was always honest about how the money would be used.

Then, it rained for two weeks, and some of their first plants died. Amal was upset.

"This is too hard," she said. "Maybe we should just quit[3]."

Zeina felt disappointed[4], too. But instead of giving up, she showed determination[5].

"I understand you're frustrated," she said kindly.

"But we're doing something good for the school. We can't stop now."

The team worked together to solve the problems. They decided to change their plan.

They researched which plants grow best in their climate[6] and how to protect them from too much rain.

They also built a better watering system and learned how to care for different kinds of plants.

Slowly, the garden started to look better again.

The team felt proud because they had solved the problems together.



(1) مبادرة (2) تبرعات (3) ينسحب/يترك

(4) محبط (5) إصرار (6) المناخ

1 Match the words in column (A) with their meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. initiative	a) money or gifts given to help a project
2. donations	b) taking action without waiting for others
3. quit	c) to stop doing something because it's too hard
4. climate	d) feeling sad when something doesn't work out
5. disappointed	e) the usual weather in a place

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When the project ran into trouble, Zeina showed ....
   a) donation b) climate c) initiative d) sadness
2. Some members wanted to ...., but Zeina encouraged them to go on.
   a) quit b) compose c) create d) innovate
3. The students considered which plants suit their .... best.
   a) behavior b) emotion c) limit d) climate

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What problem did the team face first?
   ....
2. How did Zeina try to get money for the project?
   ....
3. What happened after it rained for two weeks?
   ....
4. What was Amal's reaction? What was Zeina's?
   ....
5. How did the team solve the plant problem?
   ....

4 Critical thinking:

1. How can failure help you learn something new?
2. If you were in Zeina's place, would you do the same thing? Why?
3. What do you think helped Zeina stay motivated when things were hard?

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

Skills Bank Reading

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 123-124 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
amazing	مذهل/مدهش	....	liar	كاذب	....
quickly	بسرعة	....	global	عالمى	....
give up	يقلع عن	....	live	يعيش	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

Extract information: استخراج المعلومات:

عليك قراءة السؤال جيدًا والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيدًا ثم العودة للنص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

By the time their human teacher returned, everyone had improved. But they had also learned something important: technology can help, but it cannot replace the care and connection of a real teacher.

- Can technology replace a real teacher? Why?

....

....

....

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- AI will be used in many classrooms, but it will not replace real teachers.

- سيتم استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعى فى العديد من الفصول، لكنه لن يحل محل المعلمين الحقيقيين. ☐
- سيتم استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعى فى العديد من المدارس، لكنه سيحل محل المعلمين الحقيقيين. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- عمل الفريق معًا لحل المشكلات.

☐ The team worked alone to create problems.

☐ The team worked together to solve problems.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

donations – will be organized – will organize - quit – invention – initiative

The town is planning a charity event. A new (1) .... was started to help collect money for building a hospital. People are already making (2) .... to support the project. The event (3) .... next month, and many more donations are expected. Some volunteers might (4) .... if they can't share effectively.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The instructions were not clear, so I was ....
   a) honest b) confused c) surprising d) helpful
2. The students .... the app with their favorite colors and tools.
   a) delayed b) hated c) congratulated d) customized
3. I visit a great .... every day to improve my grammar.
   a) robot teacher b) learning website c) pilot d) practice
4. It was .... to see how fast the robot learned. We didn't expect that.
   a) disappointed b) extra c) surprising d) ordinary
5. My parents are always aware .... where I am.
   a) at b) for c) of d) with
6. We didn't .... the error until the feedback came.
   a) delay b) hate c) notice d) customize
7. I had to wait .... my turn for a long time.
   a) to b) with c) for d) at
8. The teacher didn't forget to .... Ali for his great work.
   a) delay b) blame c) congratulate d) hate
9. I had a/an .... day at school with nothing surprising.
   a) normal b) unusual c) surprising d) fun
10. We downloaded a science .... that lets you watch real experiments.
    a) artist b) grammar c) AI app d) fun

LESSON 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dishonest - determination – organizing– organized – initiative – honest

Manal always loves to help her community. She started a new (1)................ to clean up the park. With her (2)................, she encouraged many people to join. The cleanup will be (3)................ next weekend, and everyone is excited to take part. Manal is known for being (4)................, and people trust her to lead the project.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Plants need sunlight, water, and healthy .... to grow well.
   a) plan b) watering c) soil d) reaction
2. Ahmed trained every day .... determination to win.
   a) with b) on c) in d) by
3. I felt .... when the plants I grew died.
   a) frustrated b) excited c) interested d) connected
4. If I .... now, I'll never reach my dream.
   a) quit b) motivate c) hate d) reach
5. This area has cold .... in winter.
   a) climate b) sun c) plan d) reaction
6. We bought vegetables from a .... market near our house.
   a) local b) disappointed c) motivated d) global
7. Nader was .... to win the race and practiced every day.
   a) motivated b) unlucky c) disappointed d) respectful
8. We thanked everyone who gave a .... to the new project for our city.
   a) determination b) donation c) seed d) connection
9. My dad's .... to my good grades made me feel proud.
   a) initiative b) reaction c) plan d) system
10. We were .... after losing the game. We expected to win.
   a) disappointed b) motivated c) creative d) local

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about a robot teacher.

كيفية الكتابة عن المعلم الآلى.

1 What is a robot teacher?
ما المعلم الآلى؟
e.g. A robot teacher is a machine used to help children learn.
هو آلة تستخدم لمساعدة الأطفال على التعلم.

2 What can a robot teacher do in class?
ماذا يمكن للمعلم الآلى أن يفعل فى الفصل؟
e.g. It can teach different subjects like math, science, and reading.
يمكنه تدريس مواد مختلفة مثل الرياضيات والعلوم والقراءة.

3 How is a robot teacher different from a human teacher?
كيف يختلف المعلم الآلى عن المعلم الحقيقى؟
e.g. It doesn't get tired or make mistakes.
المعلم الآلى لا يتعب ولا يُخطئ.

A Robot Teacher

4 What is good or bad about having a robot teacher?
ما المميزات والعيوب فى الحصول على معلم آلى؟
e.g. It can talk, explain lessons, and show videos, but it can't understand feelings.
المعلم الآلى يمكنه التحدث، شرح الدروس، عرض الفيديوهات ولكنه لا يستطيع فهم المشاعر.

5 How do you feel about learning from a robot?
ما شعورك تجاه التعلم من معلم آلى؟
e.g. I think robot teachers can be useful, but they can't replace a real teacher.
أعتقد أن المعلم الآلى مفيد ولكن لا يمكن أن يستبدل بالمعلم الحقيقى.

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرتك:

....

....

....

....

....

....

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"A Robot Teacher"

In the future, schools might have robot teachers to help children learn. A robot teacher is a machine that can talk, explain lessons, and answer questions. It never gets tired or forgets things. Robot teachers can teach math, reading, science, and more. They can show videos, play learning games, and even speak different languages. Some robot teachers have screens for faces and can smile or move their arms. Children can ask them questions anytime, and the robot will always try to help. But human teachers are still important because they understand feelings. A robot teacher is great for helping students learn better. In the future, schools might have both robots and humans working together.

TEST YOURSELF Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

will be – will – confused – feedback – website – confident

We met a robot that works as a grammar teacher. It can explain rules very clearly. I used an AI (1) .... to practice writing. When I got (2) ...., it helped me right away. Soon, grammar lessons (3) .... explained by robots all over the world. Besides, they will give us (4) .... instantly.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In some modern schools, robots help children learn. A robot might help a student read or answer questions. Some robots have screens and faces that smile and talk. Teachers use robots to help children who find learning difficult. Robots can also help teach subjects like math, science, and even art. In group work, a robot might lead a game or explain a rule. Students enjoy working with robots because they are fun and helpful. Some schools are testing robots that walk around the class and answer students' questions. In the future, robots may become teaching assistants in many schools.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is robots are ....
   a) better teachers than people b) helpful in schools
   c) only art teachers d) not good in schools
2. Robots can help teach ....
   a) math b) running
   c) shopping d) flying

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do some robots do during group work? ....
4. Why do students enjoy working with robots? ....
5. Write a short summary of how schools use robots. ....
6. What do you think robots in schools might do next? ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A: Did you ....the beautiful painting on the wall? B: Yes, it's surprising!
   a) notice b) dislike c) think d) fall
2. The teacher gave us helpful .... after our speaking test.
   a) disappointment b) feedback c) delay d) grammar

3. The nurse cares .... her patients kindly.

a) for b) at c) on d) with

4. The desert has very dry and hot ....

a) river b) climate c) soil d) plan

5. A party .... by the school next Friday.

a) will hold b) will be held c) was held d) was holding

6. A new bridge .... over the river next year.

a) will be built b) was built c) builds d) is building

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The new school will be .... (opening) in our village next week.
2. The winning team will .... (give) medals at the end of the game.
3. A big party .... (organize) for the top students tomorrow.
4. Will all the questions .... (answered)?
5. .... (Is) the final game be played next Monday?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A robot teacher"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. The school will publish the results next Friday. (published)

....

2. The teacher will explain the lesson tomorrow. (The lesson)

....

3. They will clean the classroom after the exam. (be)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

STUDY

▶ LESSON 5 : Let's Talk
▶ LESSON 6 : Smart Robots

SB pages 50-51
pages 52

A VOCABULARY | LESSON ▶ 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

assist (ed) (v)	يساعد	instant (adj)	فورى
creativity (n)	ابتكار/ابداع	powerful (adj)	قوى
elderly (adj)	مسن/كبير السن	recognize (d) (v)	يتعرف على

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	منطقة	humans (n)	البشر
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد/قطعًا	involve (d) (v)	يشمل
develop (ed) (v)	يطور/ينمى	order (n)	أمر
exciting (adj)	مثير/شيّق	poetry (n)	شعر

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

chance for	فرصة لـ ...	grow closer with	تزداد علاقته قربًا بـ ...
controlled by	تحت سيطرة	in detail	بالتفصيل
create rules	ينشئ قواعد	in the world of tomorrow	فى عالم الغد
discover medicines	يكتشف أدوية	make a delivery	يوصل طلب
go further	يتقدم أكثر	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

recognize – develop – for – with

1 Scientists work hard to .... new medicines to help people feel better.

2 I didn't .... my friend because she had a new haircut.

3 This trip is a chance .... us to learn about new places.

Language Notes

1 **will be able to + inf.** المصدر — سوف يكون قادرًا على ...

- AI will be able to do many new things in the future.

2 **the + adj.** صفة — هذا التعبير يعطى الاسم الجمع من نفس الصفة.

- Smart robots teach students and care for the elderly.

Vocabulary Builder

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
assist (v)	يساعد	support	يساند
creativity (n)	ابتكار/ابداع	innovation	ابتكار
recognize (v)	يتعرف على	identify	يحدد
order (n)	أمر	command	أمر

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
power (n) قوة	-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	powerful (adj) قوى

B Reading & Listening Skills

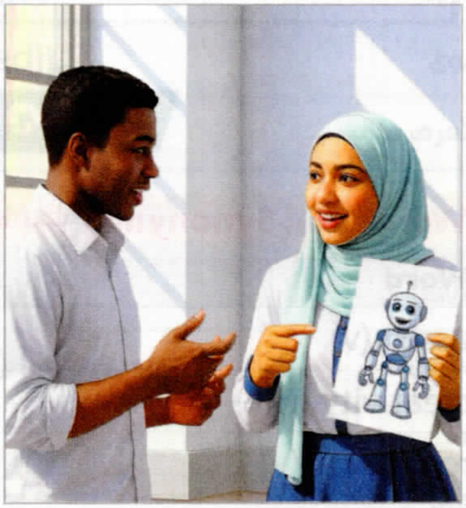
Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- How do you imagine AI will help people in the future?

Read the following conversation. What do Eman and Ali agree about? *SB page 50*

Talking About AI



Eman Hi Ali, have you heard about how AI is becoming really advanced these days?

Ali Yes! I think robots with AI will be able to do many new things in the future. They will be customized to help people in different ways.

Eman That's so exciting! But do you think AI will ever understand emotions like humans do?

Ali Hmm, I'm not sure. I heard that AI has limits, and understanding feelings is one of them. But maybe in the future, AI will be improved to recognize emotions better.

Eman Wow, the future sounds amazing. With all this innovation, I believe many jobs will be changed by AI.

Ali True. AI will be used in schools, hospitals, and even at home to make life easier.

Eman I hope people will always remember to use AI carefully and not forget its limits.

Ali Definitely! Even though AI is powerful, it will be controlled by humans to keep everyone safe.

Eman I can't wait to see what kind of robots will be created next!

Ali Me too! The future with AI will be interesting for sure.

Post-reading questions: SB

1. How will AI be used in the future, according to Ali and Eman? ....
2. How do they feel about AI being able to understand emotions? ....
3. What does "AI will be customized" mean? ....
4. Can you think of other places or jobs where AI will be used? Name them. ....

Work with a partner. Take turns reading the lines below.

Lesson 5

SB page 51

AI and the Future

Student A	Have you thought about how AI **will change** our lives in the future?
Student B	Yes! I think smart robots **will be customized** to help in homes and schools.
Student A	That's cool! AI **will be** more advanced soon and do many jobs.
Student B	Do you think AI **will learn** to understand feelings like people?
Student A	I don't know. AI still has some limits, but because of new ideas, it **will be improved** a lot.
Student B	Yes. Also, AI **will be controlled** by people to keep us safe and helpful.
Student A	I think people and technology **will grow** closer with AI.
Student B	Me too! AI **will create** many new chances for everyone.

Lesson 6

Pre-reading questions:

1 How do you think artificial intelligence (AI) can help people in the future?

2 What jobs or tasks do you think robots can do instead of humans?

Read and complete using the Passive Future form. *SB page 52*

To : Sandy **From :** Nader **Subject :** The Future use of AI

Hi Sandy,

How are you?

I'm pleased to write this email to you. I've discovered some interesting facts about the use of Artificial Intelligence (AI) in the future. In the future, many things will be done by AI: Cars will ***be driven*** by computers. Deliveries will be made by drones. New medicines will ***be discovered*** by AI, and information will ***be protected*** by special programs. Some people are worried. As they think mistakes will be made if humans are not involved. Rules will ***be created***, so AI is used safely.

I think AI will be used to help us, but it must be controlled by humans' creativity. What do you think?

Best wishes,

Yours,

Nader

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

Skills Bank Reading

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 134-135 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
strong	قوى	....	young	صغير السن	....
innovation	ابتكار	....	in short	باختصار	....
interesting	شيق	....	quit	يترك/يستسلم	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية فى القطعة يمكن تخمين معنى كلمة، ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالى:

To give a title to a passage, you should: لتضع عنوانًا لقطعة، يجب أن:

- **Read the passage carefully:** Understand what the passage is mainly about—what the main idea is.
  اقرأ القطعة بعناية وحاول أن تفهم الفكرة الرئيسية لها.
- **Pick out keywords:** Choose 2-3 important words from the passage that relate to the topic.
  استخرج الكلمات المهمة التى ترتبط بالموضوع.
- **Keep it short and clear:** A good title is usually 3-7 words. Make it catchy and meaningful.
  اجعل العنوان قصيرًا وواضحًا فعادة ما يكون من ٣ إلى ٧ كلمات جذابًا وله معنى.

FOR EXAMPLE:

In the future, artificial intelligence will help us in many areas. Smart robots **will be used** in houses, to teach students, and to care for the elderly. In schools, lessons will be explained by AI programs. Homework will be checked quickly, and students will be given instant feedback.

- Give a suitable title to the passage.

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة

- Robots with AI will be able to do many new things in the future.

- لا تتمكن الروبوتات المزودة بالذكاء الاصطناعى من فعل القليل من الأشياء الجديدة فى المستقبل. ☐
- ستتمكن الروبوتات المزودة بالذكاء الاصطناعى من فعل العديد من الأشياء الجديدة فى المستقبل. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة

- فى المستقبل، سوف يساعدنا الذكاء الاصطناعى فى العديد من المجالات.

☐ In the future, artificial intelligence will help us in many fields.

☐ In the past, artificial intelligence helped us in many fields.

Practice VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

be used – use – assist – instant – order – elderly

In the world of tomorrow, life will change in many ways. AI will (1)............ people at home by helping with cooking, cleaning, and even talking to the (2)............ who feel lonely. New smart devices will definitely make life easier. If anyone wants to research something, they will find (3)............ answers to their questions. In many homes, robots will (4)............ to care for those who need help. AI will help families grow closer with technology.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The scientist explained the experiment .... detail, so we could all understand.
   a) for b) by c) in d) of
2. The computer can .... faces using special AI software.
   a) ignore b) assist c) recognize d) order
3. Without ...., we wouldn't have many of the world's best ideas.
   a) poetry b) order c) creativity d) area
4. The doctor asked the nurse to .... him during the surgery.
   a) recognize b) assist c) develop d) order
5. I read a/an .... story about a space adventure; I enjoyed it very much.
   a) exciting b) elderly c) instant d) boring
6. They built a new center to care for the .... in our town.
   a) powerful b) elderly c) exciting d) instant
7. This app gives you a/an .... translation of any word you type.
   a) instant b) elderly c) exciting d) powerful
8. A/An .... engine is needed to move such a large machine.
   a) powerful b) elderly c) exciting d) small
9. With more training, she can .... further in her teaching career.
   a) pull b) find c) go d) play
10. The playground is a safe .... for children to play in.
   a) donation b) area c) app d) country

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Ask open questions to keep the conversation going

طرح أسئلة مفتوحة للحفاظ على استمرار المحادثة

online

Have you heard about robots that can talk and help people?
هل سمعت عن الروبوتات التى يمكنها التحدث ومساعدة الناس؟

That's so exciting! هذا مثير جدًا!!

How do you think AI will help us in the future?
كيف تعتقد أن الذكاء الاصطناعى سيساعدنا فى المستقبل؟

Maybe in the future, AI will help doctors find diseases faster.
ربما فى المستقبل، سوف يساعد الذكاء الاصطناعى الأطباء فى اكتشاف الأمراض أسرع.

I believe AI will make schools better by helping students learn in new ways.
أنا أؤمن أن الذكاء الاصطناعى سوف يجعل المدارس أفضل عن طريق مساعدة الطلاب على التعلم بطرق جديدة.

Have you thought about how AI can help at home, too?
هل فكرت فى كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى المساعدة فى المنزل أيضًا؟

I heard that some AI can even talk like humans.
سمعت أن بعض الذكاء الاصطناعى يمكنه التحدث مثل البشر.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Mahmoud hopes he will learn AI one day.**

Nada : I want to learn how AI works. Do you think we will learn more about it?
Mahmoud : (1).. . We could build a robot one day.
Nada : Do students learn AI in schools?
Mahmoud : Yes, they do. Some schools teach it.
Nada : (2)..!
Mahmoud : (3)..?
Nada : Yes, I'd love to learn it. I'd like to make a talking robot. (4)..............................?
Mahmoud : I want to make a robot, too.
Nada : Great! You can join me. When can we start?
Mahmoud : (5)..! Today is a good choice.

Skills Bank Writing

The benefits of AI in the future.

فوائد الذكاء الاصطناعى فى المستقبل.

1. What is AI and how can it help people? ما هو الذكاء الاصطناعى وكيف يمكنه مساعدة الناس؟

- In the future, AI will be very helpful because it will help make life easier

في المستقبل، سيكون الذكاء الاصطناعى مفيدًا جدًا لأنه سيجعل الحياة أسهل.

2. How can AI help at home? كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى المساعدة فى المنزل؟

- At home, AI robots can help with housework.

في البيت، يمكن لروبوتات الذكاء الاصطناعى المساعدة فى أعمال المنزل.

3. How can AI help in schools? كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى المساعدة فى المدارس؟

- In schools, lessons will be explained by AI programs.

في المدارس، سيتم شرح الدروس باستخدام برامج الذكاء.

4. How might AI help with cars, shops, or offices?
كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى المساعدة فى السيارات والمتاجر والمكاتب؟

- Many shops and offices will use AI to save time and effort.

كثير من المتاجر والمكاتب ستستخدم الذكاء الاصطناعى لتوفير الوقت والجهد.

5. How can AI help at hospital? كيف يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعى المساعدة فى المستشفيات؟

- At hospitals, AI will help doctors find illnesses quickly and suggest the best treatments.

في المستشفيات، سيساعد الأطباء في اكتشاف الأمراض بسرعة واقتراح أفضل علاج.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"The Benefits of AI in the Future"

In the future, Artificial Intelligence (AI) will help people in many ways. AI can make our lives easier and faster. For example, smart robots may help at home by cleaning, cooking, or doing simple tasks. In schools, AI can help children learn by giving them fun lessons and games that match their level. At hospitals, AI will help doctors find illnesses quickly and suggest the best treatments. It can also make cars drive safely without people. In shops and offices, AI can help workers finish jobs faster. Even at home, AI will answer questions and play music. In short, AI will be a smart helper that makes the future better for everyone.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Finish the following dialog:

Farida is talking to Omar about a robot.

Farida : I went to the hospital and saw a robot!

Omar : A robot in a hospital? (1) ....?

Farida : It helped the nurse carry things.

Omar : Really! (2) ....?

Farida : They can help in surgery.

Omar : That must be careful work. (3) ....?

Farida : Yes, AI makes fewer mistakes.

Omar : (4) ....

Farida : I agree that AI can save lives. What do you think of technology?

Omar : (5) ....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

for – at – assist – invent – invented – powerful

In the world of tomorrow, anything is possible. AI will develop to do tasks we never imagined. In homes, robots will (1) .... with cooking, reading, and even writing poetry. Many new tools will be (2) .... to help in schools, hospitals, and cities. Even though AI is (3) ...., creativity will remain special to humans. This future is a chance (4) .... us to grow closer with machines and use them to build a better life.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please don't just give a summary. Explain it .... detail.
   a) at b) in c) off d) about
2. I enjoy reading .... because it has beautiful words.
   a) creativity b) area c) order d) poetry
3. We must .... new skills to succeed in life.
   a) assist b) plant c) develop d) paint

4. She will .... help us if we ask her kindly.

a) definitely b) sadly c) unluckily d) powerful

5. Amany .... her grandparents next week.

a) will visit b) visit
c) will be visited d) going to visit

6. AI robots will .... widely at homes in the future.

a) use b) be used c) using d) uses

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She .... (explains) the rules before the test tomorrow.
2. The students .... (writing) the essay at home next week.
3. We .... (will be watched) a new movie soon.
4. We .... (start) the workshop next week.
5. The medicine .... (will take) after meals tomorrow.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"AI and the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Marwan will paint the house next month. (The house)

....

2. Radwa will write a novel one day. (A novel)

....

3. The government will build the bridge next year. (The bridge)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 3 Assessment

SB page 53

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word .... means the point where something stops or cannot go further.
   a) advanced   b) limits
   c) tasks   d) feelings
2. Robots can't truly understand ....
   a) emotions   b) orders
   c) technology   d) music
3. AI can .... music and write poetry.
   a) do   b) feel
   c) imagine   d) compose

B Language

2 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. Driverless cars will .... (use) everywhere.
2. Nader will .... (traveled) to London next week.
3. Robots will .... (being) developed to do important tasks.
4. How do you think new technology will be .... (improve) by the time?

C Writing

3 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words about:

"The benefits of AI"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Vocabulary

advanced (adj)	متقدم/متطور
assist (ed) (v)	يساعد
basic (adj)	أساسى
behavior (n)	سلوك
compose (d) (v)	يؤلف/يكتب
confused (adj)	مرتبك/مشتت
congratulate (d) (v)	يُهنئ
connection (n)	اتصال
creative (adj)	مُبدع/مبتكر
creativity (n)	ابتكار/ابداع
customize (d) (v)	يُخصص/يُعدّل
donation (n)	تبرع
emotions (n)	عواطف
error (n)	خطأ
humans (n)	البشر
improvement (n)	تحسُّن
innovation (n)	ابتكار/إبداع
instantly (adv)	فوراً/فى الحال
limits (n)	حدود
local (adj)	محلى
motivated (adj)	متحفز
powerful (adj)	قوى
quit (v)	ينسحب/يترك
recognize (d) (v)	يتعرف على
seed (n)	بذرة
soil (n)	تربة زراعية
surgery (n)	جراحة
vacuum cleaner (n)	مكنسة كهربائية

Language

1. The Future Simple Active

المستقبل البسيط فى المبنى للمعلوم

Subject فاعل + will + inf.

e.g. My Father will mend his car tomorrow.

2. The Future Simple Passive

المستقبل البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول

Object مفعول + will/won't be + P.P. + subject فاعل

e.g.
- In schools, lessons will be explained by AI programs.
- A lot of jobs won't be found in the future because of AI.

Question: السؤال:

Yes/No questions:

Will + object (المفعول) + be + P.P. ...?

e.g. Will lessons be explained by AI programs?

Wh- questions:

Q. word + will + object (المفعول) + be + P.P. ...?

e.g. Where will the new school be built?

Skills

1. Expressing expectations for the future use of AI in the future.

A: What jobs do you think AI can do in the future?
B: It can drive cars, teach students, and help in hospitals.
A: Do you think AI will be able to replace humans?
B: No, I don't think so.
A: Do you think AI and robots can make our life better? Why?
B: Yes, because they can do boring and dangerous jobs.
A: Do you think robots can do all human work?
B: No, because they don't have feelings or creativity.
A: Do you think robots can help doctors in surgery?
B: Yes, they can make surgeries safer.
A: Do you think AI will become smarter than humans one day?
B: Maybe, but humans will still control it.

2. Sharing opinions on AI's impact on jobs, education, and daily life

A: What do you know about Artificial Intelligence (AI)?
B: It's a type of technology that helps machines think.
A: What fields can you use AI in?
B: We can use AI in medicine, education, and transport.
A: How do you think AI helps in education?
B: It helps students learn faster and provides useful information.
A: Can AI replace teachers in the future?
B: No, because teachers understand students' feelings.
A: Would you like a robot to help you with homework?
B: Yes, it would make studying easier.
A: Will you ever use AI to help you write a story?
B: Yes, it can give me ideas and help with grammar.
A: Would you like to have a robot at home? Why?
B: Yes, to help me clean and cook.
A: How does AI help in daily life?
B: It helps us with shopping and using smart devices.

General Exercises on Unit 3

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Nader thinks AI will be much smarter and faster in the future.

Youssef : What do you think AI will be like in 10 years?

Nader : (1).. .

Youssef : (2)..?

Nader : Yes, it will help doctors.

Youssef : (3)..?

Nader : It will help them in surgeries.

Youssef : Can it become smarter than humans?

Nader : (4).. .

Humans have emotions and ideas.

Youssef : Do you think we'll use AI at school every day?

Nader : (5).. .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

donations – will be added – will add – determination – situation – out

In a small town, some students wanted to build a garden for their community. The first try didn't work (1).................................. . But they didn't quit. They wanted to bring a stronger watering system, so it (2).................................. next week. They asked for (3).................................. and worked hard. The team stayed motivated and cared about their goal. With (4).................................., they turned their disappointment into a great success.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

AI will play a big role in the future. It will be used in schools, hospitals, cars, and even space travel. In schools, AI may teach students or help them with their homework. In hospitals, it will help doctors treat patients faster. Driverless cars will use AI to move safely on roads. Even in space, robots with AI may help astronauts on long trips. But with all these changes, humans must stay in control. AI does not think the same way we do. It follows what it is told. If used the wrong way, AI could cause problems. That's why people are making rules for using AI safely. The future will be full of smart machines, but people must guide them. AI is a tool, not a leader. Used wisely, AI can help us solve many big problems around the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The passage mainly talks about how AI will be .... in many areas in the future.
   a) hurt b) helped
   c) used d) made
2. People must .... how AI is used.
   a) control b) change
   c) ignore d) cause

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where are some places AI will be used in the future?
   ....
4. Why is it important for people to control AI?
   ....
5. Summarize how AI will be used in the future in 2–3 sentences.
   ....
6. What new job do you think AI will help with in the future?
   ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Heavy clothes protect us .... cold weather.
   a) from b) by
   c) with d) off
2. Showing our .... can help others understand us better.
   a) brains b) emotions
   c) points d) surgeries
3. He won a prize for his .... in clean energy.
   a) innovation b) conversation
   c) replacement d) advertisement
4. I love how you can .... this robot to answer in Arabic.
   a) congratulate b) delay
   c) infer d) customize

5. The problem .... soon.

a) is solving
b) has solved
c) will be solved
d) will solve

6. Lunch .... by the hotel staff tomorrow.

a) is serving
b) serves
c) will serve
d) will be served

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The documents .... (will send) to the manager tomorrow.
2. A new mall .... (is built) next year.
3. The car .... (will fix) by the mechanic next Monday.
4. The test .... (prepare) by the teacher soon.
5. The invitation cards .... (will print) next week.

D The Story

6 **A) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why did they need money? ....
2. What do you think helped Zeina stay motivated when things were hard?........

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina was .... about how the donated money would be used.

a) angry
b) honest
c) secret
d) worried

4. Instead of quitting, Zeina showed great ....

a) fear
b) determination
c) laziness
d) sadness

E Writing

7 **Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Mazin to tell him about the future of AI and robots. Your name is Hamza.**

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Review 1

LESSON 1

1 Complete the following dialog:

Sarah and her cousin Ahmed are discussing a school project about artificial intelligence and personal development.

Sarah : Hi Ahmed, how's your science project going?

Ahmed : (1) ....

Sarah : That's great! What exactly are you working on?

Ahmed : (2) ....

Sarah : (3) ....?

Ahmed : I've been researching how AI can help students learn better.

Sarah : That sounds really good. Do you think people will understand AI easily?

Ahmed : (4) ....

Sarah : (5) ....?

Ahmed : I hope to present it at the national science fair next month.

2 Match the words with their correct meanings:

A	B
1. determination	a) made to suit a particular person's needs
2. misunderstood	b) strong decision to achieve something
3. customized	c) not correctly interpreted

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The teacher has already .... (notice) the improvement in your work.
2. If students .... (be) more respectful, classroom management would have been easier.
3. Many teenagers feel .... (stress) during exam periods.
4. The school has .... (initiative) several programs to support struggling students.
5. Students who show .... (honest) are usually trusted more by their teachers.

4 **Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

different – confidence – determination – confused – customized

Modern education requires students to develop strong personal (1) .... Many successful learners show great (2) .... when facing challenges. When teachers customize students' learning experience, they achieve better results. However, some students still feel (3) .... about new technologies. Each student has (4) .... talents that should be developed.

LESSON 2

1 **Listen to the following text, then answer the questions:**

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. What's special about Egypt's new capital?

a) Underground pyramids. **b)** Smart technology.
c) Oil fields. **d)** Old castles.

2. What energy is Egypt developing?

a) Only oil. **b)** Solar power.
c) Nuclear only. **d)** Oil and gas.

3. One of the challenges in the text is ....

a) no history **b)** overpopulation
c) empty cities **d)** young people

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why is Egypt investing in solar power?..

5. How are young Egyptians shaping the future?..

2 **Read the following text, then answer the questions:**

In today's rapidly changing world, innovation plays an important role in education. Schools around the world are using advanced technologies to improve learning experiences. Artificial intelligence has gained popularity in classrooms, helping teachers customize lessons for individual students. This technology can identify students' strengths and weaknesses, providing personalized support.

Many educators believe that AI tools can support students' confidence and reduce stress. When students receive immediate feedback, they feel more motivated to continue learning. However, some parents worry that technology might replace human connection in education.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   - a) Artificial intelligence will replace teachers completely.
   - b) Technology in education has both benefits and downsides.
   - c) Students should quit using traditional learning methods.
   - d) Parents are happy with all educational changes.
2. According to the passage, what can AI help teachers do?
   - a) Replace teachers.
   - b) Customize lessons for individual students.
   - c) Solve all educational problems.
   - d) Make students feel stressed.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How might parents feel about technology in education? Why?

   ....

4. Summarize how schools are helping students develop strength.

   ....

5. What do you think will happen to traditional classrooms in the next ten years?

   ....

3 Rewrite the sentences with the correct verb form.

1. If she had studied harder, she .... (pass) the exam.
2. The new library .... (build) next year.
3. Many books about artificial intelligence have .... (write).

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She has always been .... about new technology. She always wants to learn more.
   - a) frustrated
   - b) curious
   - c) disappointed
   - d) confusing
2. If he .... his limits, he wouldn't have got injured.
   - a) knew
   - b) had known
   - c) knows
   - d) has known
3. The message .... to everyone next week.
   - a) will send
   - b) will be sent
   - c) has sent
   - d) sent
4. His .... helped him overcome many difficulties.
   - a) distraction
   - b) strength
   - c) emotion
   - d) donation

5. The .... of this new app is that it can adapt to each user's needs.

a) background b) distraction c) strength d) curiosity

6. If I .... more time, I would have finished the project earlier.

a) have b) had had c) will have d) would have

7. She felt .... when she couldn't understand the advanced mathematics.

a) curious b) confused c) creative d) confident

8. The prefix "dis-" in "disappointed" means "..........................".

a) again b) not c) very d) together

9. The students showed great .... when they continued working despite difficulties.

a) honesty b) determination c) curiosity d) courage

The Story

5 A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to respect all opinions in a team?

....

2. How did Zeina try to get money for the project?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. Zeina felt .... when students laughed at her.

a) happy b) tired
c) hurt d) ignored

4. The team could build a better watering ....

a) system b) fence
c) garden d) tools

Unit 4
SCREEN TIME



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading
- Identify main ideas and details in texts about screen time.
- Recognize the benefits and drawbacks of screen time.

Listening
- Understand main ideas in conversations about managing screen time.
- Identify examples of healthy screen habits in spoken texts.

Speaking
- Express opinions about screen time and its impact on daily life.
- Share personal strategies for managing screen time effectively.

Writing
- Write a blog post about screen time habits and goals.
- Use target vocabulary related to screen time in context.

Language
- Identify and use modal verbs for obligation, permission, and prohibition.
- Apply connectors accurately in speaking and writing.
- Use present simple and future forms accurately when discussing screen time habits and goals.

STUDY

- **LESSON 1 :** Screen Time — SB pages 60-61
- **LESSON 2 :** Egypt's Smart Future — pages 62-63

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبـار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

balance (d) (v)	يوازن	useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع
entertainment (n)	ترفيه/تسلية	screen time (n)	الوقت أمام الشاشة
expert (n)	خبير	screen use (n)	استخدام الشاشة
limit (ed) (v)	يحد من/يقلّل	scroll (ed) (v)	يتصفح/يتجول (فى المواقع)
mentally (adv)	ذهنيًا / نفسيًا	teenager/teen (n)	مُراهِق
physical (adj)	بدنى/جسدى	total (adj)	كلى/إجمالى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

amount (n)	كمية/مقدار	recommend (ed) (v)	يُوصى بـ/يُرشّح
bedtime (n)	وقت النوم	rest (ed) (v/n)	يستريح/راحة
equal (adj)	متساوٍ	side effects (n)	آثار جانبية
face-to-face (adj)	وجهًا لوجه	skill (n)	مهارة
focus (ed) (v)	يركز	tired eye (n)	عين مرهقة/متعبة
headache (n)	صداع	trouble sleeping (n)	اضطرابات النوم

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

away from	بعيدًا عن	do activities	يمارس أنشطة
in the right amount	بكمية مناسبة	do schoolwork	يعمل الواجبات المدرسية
on screen	على الشاشة	take a short break	يأخذ استراحة قصيرة
related to	مرتبط بـ ...		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
spend	يقضى/ينفق	spent	spent

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

at – take – equal – to

1. We cut the cake into .... pieces, so everyone got the same amount.
2. We watched a video related .... our science lesson about the planets.
3. I always .... a short break after doing my homework to rest my eyes.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (n) = noun | (v) = verb | (adj) = adjective | (adv) = adverb | (prep) = preposition | (conj) = conjunction

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

modern (adj)	حديث	habit (n)	عادة
distracted (adj)	مشتت/غير مُركّز	policy (n)	سياسة
distraction (n)	تشتيت/إلهاء	privacy (n)	خصوصية
focused (adj)	مركّز	smart (n)	ذكى/متطور

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

lie (d) (v)	يكذب	the Green River (n)	النهر الأخضر
monorail (n)	قطار أحادى/مونوريل	the New Administrative Capital (n)	العاصمة الأدارية الجديدة
password (n)	كلمة السر	user (n)	مستخدم
stressed (adj)	متوتر/مضغوط	wise (adj)	حكيم

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

build roads	يبنى طرقًا	make noise	يُحدث ضوضاء
change settings	يغير الإعدادات	manage screen time	يدير وقت الشاشة
follow safety rules	يتبع قواعد السلامة	move forward	يتقدم
go outside	يخرج	post photos	ينشر صورًا
lose energy and focus	يفقد الطاقة والتركيز	take attention away	يُبعد التركيز عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
build	يبنى	built	built
mean	يعنى	meant	meant
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage	عيب

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

disadvantage – advantage – posted – follow

1. Mazin .... the photos of the trip on his Instagram account.
2. You must always .... safety rules when riding a bike.
3. One .... of living in a big city is the noise.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

balance يوازن	to keep things equal[1] or in the right amount[2]	
modern حديث	something new and advanced	
distraction تشتيت	something that takes attention[3] away	
entertainment تسلية	fun activities like games or watching TV	
expert خبير	a person who knows a lot about something	
focused مركز	not easily distracted	
physically جسديًا	related to the body	
useful مفيد	helpful for learning or work	
screen time وقت الشاشة	the time spent looking at a screen	
smart ذكي/متطور	uses technology	

(1) متساو
(2) كمية
(3) انتباه/اهتمام

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة		Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها	
limit (ed) (v)	يَحدّ من/يُقلّل	reduce	يقلل
rest (ed) (v/n)	يستريح/راحة	relax	يسترخي

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة		Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
entertain (v)	يُسلي	-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	entertainment (n)	ترفيه/تسلية
use (v)	يستخدم	-ful	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع
health (n)	صحة	-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	healthy (adj)	صحي

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة		Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
dis-	advantage (n)	ميزة	تعطي عكس المعنى	disadvantage (n)	عيب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

1 How many hours do you spend on screens every day?

2 Do you think it is good to spend much time on screens? Why/ or Why not?

Read the following text. How long should young people spend on screens?

SB page 60



(1) وقت الشاشة	(2) يتصفح/يتجول
(3) مفيد	(4) الخبراء
(5) التسلية	(6) يوازن
(7) جسدى	(8) عقلى

Screen time[1] means the total time a person spends looking at screens. These screens can include phones, computers, tablets, or TVs. Today, almost everyone uses screens for many activities. Students use laptops for homework, teenagers scroll[2] through social media, and families watch movies on the weekend.

But not all screen time is the same. Some of it is useful[3], like doing schoolwork or learning a new skill online. Other screen time, such as watching videos or playing games for hours, may not be helpful. Experts[4] say young people should not spend more than two hours a day on entertainment[5] screen time. It's important to balance[6] screen use with physical[7] activity, face-to-face time with friends, and rest. Spending too much time on screens can also affect your health physically and mentally[8]. It causes tired eyes, headaches and trouble sleeping.

Moreover, it can also make it harder to focus and may make you stressed. So, to avoid these side effects, you should take short breaks during meals, before bedtime, and while doing your homework. You should also do other activities away from screens.

Post-reading questions:

1 What is the main idea of the text?

....

2 Why is it important to limit screen time?

....

3 Can you imagine a day without screens? What would you do instead?

....

Pre-listening questions:

1 Are there smart cities in Egypt?

....

2 Is using technology for learning important?

....

Listen to the audio "Smart Habits for Egypt's Smart Future". *SB page 62*



Hey friends, welcome back! Today we're talking about smart cities and smart habits. Egypt is moving forward with amazing projects—like the New Administrative Capital[1], the Monorail, and the Green River[2]. These are built with modern technology and big ideas. But big projects need smart citizens – people who are focused, healthy, and use technology wisely.

If we spend too much time scrolling or gaming, we lose energy and focus. That's why managing screen time is so important. Young people like us are the future engineers, designers, and leaders of Egypt. By building strong habits now – like turning off distractions[3] and using technology for learning – we get ready to build a better country.

(1) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
(2) النهر الأخضر
(3) المُشتّتات

Post-listening questions: SB

Listen again to the audio and complete the sentences:

1 Egypt is working on smart .... like the monorail.

2 Too much .... time makes you lose energy and focus.

3 By building strong ...., we get ready to build a better country.

4 Young people are the .... of Egypt.

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 155-156 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
new	جديد	....	increase	يزيد	....
intelligent	ذكى	....	adult	بالغ	....
nervous	متوتر	....	lazy	كسول	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

But not all screen time is the same. Some of it is useful, like doing schoolwork or learning a new skill online. Other screen time, such as watching videos or playing games for hours, may not be helpful.

1. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? (فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير)

....

....

....

2. What are advantages and disadvantage of screen time? (استخراج معلومات من النص)

....

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Today, almost everyone uses screens for many activities.

- اليوم، يستخدم الجميع تقريبًا الشاشات للعديد من الأنشطة. ☐
- اليوم، يشاهد الجميع تقريبًا الشاشات لقليل من الأنشطة. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- تعمل مصر على تنفيذ مشاريع ذكية مثل مشروع المونوريل.

☐ Egypt is working on smart projects like the monorail project.

☐ Egypt is thinking of smart projects like the monorail project.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

take – headaches – Experts – devices – make – do

Many teenagers spend hours in front of screens for fun or learning. While screen use can be helpful, we must balance it with physical activities. (1) .... recommend limiting screen time to avoid tired eyes and (2) .... Moreover, using (3) .... at bedtime can cause trouble sleeping. You mustn't use screens right before bed. To stay healthy, it's important to (4) .... breaks and move around after spending time on screen.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Zain tries to always do his best and .... his schoolwork before watching TV.
   a) take b) do c) limit d) scroll
2. When I feel sleepy, I usually .... a short break and drink some water.
   a) take b) do c) limit d) give
3. The information on this website is related .... technology and health.
   a) in b) to c) on d) for
4. Kids often use mobile phones for ...., like games and videos.
   a) homework b) business c) working d) entertainment
5. .... know a lot about their subjects and can guide us well.
   a) Students b) Beginners c) Children d) Experts
6. Students should .... activities that help their minds and bodies.
   a) scroll b) recommend c) limit d) do
7. You should try to .... your time between study, rest, and play.
   a) waste b) focus c) scroll d) balance
8. Teenagers often .... through social media before going to bed.
   a) scroll b) limit c) take d) recommend
9. Watching too many movies can .... your focus on schoolwork.
   a) take b) rest c) limit d) do
10. Some people think that reading books keeps us .... active.
   a) mentally b) strangely c) lazily d) slowly

LESSON 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

user – on – at – modern – distracted – password

Egypt's future depends on smart habits that everyone must follow. Using (1)........................ technology will help build a modern, smart city. People should avoid getting (2)........................ by unnecessary things when working on important projects. A smart (3)........................ knows that following the policy and respecting privacy is the key to living in a smart city. We must focus (4)........................ learning and improving daily to keep Egypt strong and wise.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The scientist explained that the machine uses .... technology for better results.
   a) focused b) modern c) distracted d) old
2. Focus on your goal, don't be ....
   a) focused b) wise c) smart d) distracted
3. Having a smart phone has lots of ...., like long screen time.
   a) advantages b) experts c) balances d) disadvantages
4. No one will be able to share your posts on Facebook if you adjust the privacy ....
   a) policy b) sitting c) password d) distraction
5. That robot is so .... it can do things people never imagined.
   a) distracted b) smart c) library d) habit
6. My teacher gave me some .... advice that helped me solve my problem.
   a) wise b) modern c) distracted d) useless
7. If we spend too much time scrolling or gaming, we .... energy and focus.
   a) get b) make c) lose d) have
8. The .... is a smart, modern project that people use to travel quickly across the city without traffic problems.
   a) taxi b) monorail c) bike d) bus
9. We use a strong .... to protect our online accounts from hackers.
   a) crossword b) user c) password d) distraction
10. When I'm studying, I try to stay completely .... on my work.
    a) thinking b) focused c) distracted d) lying

C Language

1 Using Modals استخدام الأفعال الناقصة

A must/mustn't يجب أن/يجب ألا

e.g. • Students must **follow** the school rules.
• People mustn't **smoke** in hospitals.

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use "must/ mustn't" to talk about things that are necessary/prohibited to do.**

- نستخدم (must/mustn't) (يجب أن/ ألا) للتحدث عن الأشياء التى من الضرورى فعلها أو من الممنوع فعلها.

Form التكوين

A Necessity الضرورة

Subject فاعل + must + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. We must **listen** to our teachers carefully.

B Prohibition المنع/التحريم

Subject فاعل + mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You mustn't **park** your car here. It's not allowed.

لاحظ

We can use mustn't with: يمكن استخدام (mustn't) مع العبارات التالية:

it is forbidden غير مسموح / banned ممنوع / not allowed محظور / against the law ضد القانون

Question السؤال

A Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل)

Must + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. • A: Must we **be** quiet in the library? B: Yes, you must.

B Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word + must/mustn't + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. • A: What must you **do** at the museum? B: We must **follow** the rules.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We .... (must) touch the animals at the zoo. It's forbidden.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (mustn't) لوجود It's forbidden الدالة على المنع.

2 We must .... (respecting) our neighbors.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (respect) لوجود must التى يتبعها الفعل فى المصدر.

B should/ shouldn't: ينبغي أن/ينبغي ألا:

e.g. • We should **visit** our grandparents at the weekend.

• People shouldn't **tell** lies.

Usage الاستخدام

We use "should/shouldn't" for advice or to talk about things that are or are not a good idea to do.

- نستخدم (shouldn't/should) (ينبغى أن/ينبغى ألا) للنصيحة أو للتحدث عن الأشياء التى فعلها أو عدم فعلها يُعتبر فكرة جيدة.

Form التكوين

A Affirmative الإثبات

Subject فاعل	+	should	+	inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. We should **help** poor people.

B Negative النفى

Subject فاعل	+	shouldn't	+	inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You shouldn't **say** unkind things.

Question السؤال

A Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل)

Should	+	subject فاعل	+	inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: Should you **have** a rest? B: Yes, we should. B: No, we shouldn't.

B Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word	+	should/shouldn't	+	subject فاعل	+	inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: What should you **do** at the library? B: We should **be** quiet.

C can/can't يستطيع أن/ لا يستطيع أن

Usage الاستخدام

We use "can/can't" for permission.

نستخدم can/can't للاستئذان.

e.g. • You can **watch** TV when you finish your homework.

• You can't **use** that brush. It's your sister's.

Form التكوين

A Affirmative الإثبات

Subject فاعل	+	can	+	inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • You can **change** the settings. • Aya can **use** my tablet.

B Negative النفى

Subject فاعل	+	can't	+	inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • My brother and I cannot (can't) **play** before finishing our homework.

• Anas cannot (can't) **go** out now. It's raining.

C Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل)

لاحظ اختصار (cannot) إلى can't

Can	+	subject فاعل	+	inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. • Can I **go** out with my friends, mom?

• Can Maged **watch** videos on your phone?

D Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word	+	can/can't	+	subject فاعل	+	inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. What can we do after school?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My sister can't .... (playing) video games now.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (play) لأن can't يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

2 Where are my keys? I .... (can) find them.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (can't) لأن الجملة تعبر عن عدم القدرة على فعل شىء.

Practice

LANGUAGE EXERCISE (1)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You .... wear a seatbelt when you drive.
   a) can b) must c) shouldn't d) can't
2. Adam, you .... eat too much fast food. It's not healthy.
   a) can b) should c) must d) shouldn't
3. Boys, you .... take your umbrella. It's raining.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't
4. .... I use your phone, please?
   a) Must b) Should c) Can d) Mustn't
5. Tarek .... take photos in the museum. It's forbidden.
   a) must b) mustn't c) should d) can
6. Sorry, you .... park here. You aren't allowed to do that.
   a) can b) must c) shouldn't d) mustn't
7. We .... bring our books to class every day.
   a) can't b) must c) shouldn't d) can
8. You .... cross the road when the light is red. SB
   a) must b) can c) mustn't d) should

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (must) make noise in the library. SB
2. We .... (shouldn't) help elderly people. SB
3. Users .... (can't) read the privacy policy. SB
4. You .... (must) smoke in petrol stations. It's against the law.
5. A: .... (Must) I bring my own laptop to the class? B: Yes, you can.
6. Please, dad. When can I .... (using) my tablet?
7. You .... (shouldn't) wash your hands before eating.
8. Be careful. You .... (must) cross the road now. There are a lot of cars.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. You must to water the plants daily. (..............................)
2. You must forget to lock the garden gate. (..............................)
3. It's sunny, so we can't stops watering the plants. (..............................)
4. Students must been quiet in the class. (..............................)
5. You shouldn't listen to your teacher's advice. (..............................)

2 Connectors الروابط

What are connectors? ما هى الروابط؟

- Connectors are words used to join sentences.

الروابط هى كلمات تستخدم لربط الجمل.

A While/Although/Even though على الرغم من

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "While/Although/Even though" for contrast.

نستخدم While / Although / Even though للتعبير عن التناقض. (فى بداية أو وسط الجملة).

e.g.
- Although he is rich, he isn't happy.
- She passed the exam although she didn't study much.
- While I enjoy swimming, I don't like swimming in the sea.
- I wake up early while my whole family stay asleep for long.
- Even though he is strong, he can't lift the box.
- They kept playing football even though it was very hot.

B On one hand/ on the other hand من ناحية / من ناحية أخرى

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "On one hand / On the other hand" for balance.

نستخدم On one hand / On the other hand للتوازن.

هذان التعبيران يُستخدمان لعرض وجهتي نظر مختلفتين أو جانبين متقابلين من نفس الموضوع.

e.g.
- On one hand, (رأى أو فكرة أو جانب أول).
- On the other hand, (رأى مختلف أو معاكس للفكرة الأولى).

ملاحظات هامة

١- الجملتان يجب أن تكونا مترابطتين بنفس الموضوع.

٢- لا يُستخدم هذان الرابطان وحدهما، بل يأتى كل واحد فى بداية فكرة منفصلة.

٣- لا يشترط أن تأتى الجمل متتالية دائمًا، ولكن غالبًا ما يُفضل ذلك لعرض المقارنة بوضوح.

- On one hand, I want to play outside. On the other hand, I have homework to finish.
- On one hand, watching TV is relaxing. On the other hand, it can waste a lot of time.
- On one hand, social media helps students know a lot of things. On the other hand, social media can waste time.
- On one hand, studying online is easy. On the other hand, it can be hard to focus at home.

Practice

LANGUAGE EXERCISE (2)

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analyzing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... it was raining, we went outside. SB
   a) Although b) On one hand
   c) On the other hand d) So
2. ...., technology helps us. On the other hand, it causes distractions. SB
   a) While b) Although c) On one hand d) On the other hand
3. .... the internet is useful, it sometimes has lots of disadvantages. SB
   a) On one hand b) On the other hand
   c) While d) Because
4. On one hand, technology is useful. ...., it can reduce real communication.
   a) While b) Although c) Even though d) On the other hand
5. .... I'm tired, I'll help you.
   a) Even though b) Because c) On one hand d) So
6. .... they're not rich, they always help others.
   a) So b) Because c) Although d) On one hand
7. On one hand, I want to travel. ...., I'm afraid of flying.
   a) On another hand b) Even though
   c) On the other hand d) While
8. .... the food looked good, it didn't taste great.
   a) Even though b) Because
   c) On the other hand d) On one hand
9. .... he didn't sleep well, he went to school early.
   a) Because b) On the other hand
   c) While d) So
10. On one hand, the city is busy. ...., the countryside is calm.
    a) While b) On a hand c) On the other hand d) Because

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My brother likes pizza .... (because) I like pasta. SB
2. On one hand, he is kind. .... (Although), he never helps anyone.
3. The cake was delicious .... (because) it looked bad.
4. They invited him .... (so) he was rude.
5. We walked to school .... (because) it was snowing.
6. I listened to her .... (so that) I was busy.
7. They stayed quiet .... (because) they were angry.
8. We went on the trip .... (so that) it was cold.
9. .... (On the other hand), she was tired. On the other hand, she finished her homework.
10. On one hand, they played well. .... (Although), they lost the match.

D Skills — Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Expressing opinions about screen time and its impact on daily life

التعبير عن الآراء حول وقت الشاشة وتأثيره على الحياة اليومية

online

What is screen time? ما هو وقت الشاشة؟

It is the amount of time a person spends looking at digital screens.
إنه هو مقدار الوقت الذى يقضيه الشخص فى النظر إلى الشاشات الرقمية.

How many hours do you spend on screens every day?
كم ساعة تقضيها على الشاشات يوميًا؟

I spend about 2 to 3 hours on screens every day.
أقضى حوالى ساعتين إلى ثلاث ساعات على الشاشات يوميًا.

Do you think it is good to spend much time on screens?
هل تعتقد أنه من الجيد قضاء وقت طويل على الشاشات؟

No, it is not good because it can affect our health.
لا، ليست جيدة لأنها قد تؤثر على صحتنا.

Why is it important to limit screen time? لماذا من المهم تحديد وقت الشاشة؟

Limiting screen time helps protect our health and allows time for other healthy activities.
تحديد وقت الشاشة يساعد فى حماية صحتنا ويتيح الوقت لأنشطة صحية أخرى.

What are some healthy activities to balance screen use?
ما بعض الأنشطة الصحية التى تساعد على موازنة استخدام الشاشات؟

Healthy activities include playing sports, reading books, spending time with family and friends.
تشمل الأنشطة الصحية ممارسة الرياضة، وقراءة الكتب، وقضاء الوقت مع العائلة والأصدقاء، والخروج للاستمتاع بالطبيعة.

Can screen time be useful sometimes? How?
هل يمكن أن يكون وقت الشاشة مفيدًا أحيانًا؟ كيف؟

Yes, screen time can be useful for learning and communication.
نعم، يمكن أن يكون وقت الشاشة مفيدًا للتعلم والتواصل.

2. Talking about smart habits for Egypt's smart future

الحديث عن العادات الذكية لمستقبل مصر الذكى

online

Are there smart cities in Egypt? هل توجد مدن ذكية فى مصر؟

Yes, Egypt is building smart cities like the New Administrative Capital.
نعم، تبنى مصر مدنًا ذكية مثل العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة.

Is using technology for learning important?
هل استخدام التكنولوجيا فى التعلم مهم؟

Yes, using technology for learning is important because it helps students understand better.
نعم، استخدام التكنولوجيا فى التعلم مهم لأنه يساعد الطلاب على فهم الدروس بشكل أفضل.

What great projects are there in Egypt now?
ما المشاريع العظيمة الموجودة فى مصر حاليًا؟

There are many giant projects, such as the monorail and El Alamein.
يوجد العديد من المشاريع العملاقة مثل المونوريل والعلمين.

Why do you think building new modern roads is important?
لماذا تعتقد أن بناء طرق حديثة جديدة أمر مهم؟

Because it reduces traffic and saves time. لأنه يقلل الزحام، ويوفر الوقت.

What is a smart habit that can help Egypt's future?
ما العادة الذكية التى يمكن أن تساعد فى مستقبل مصر؟

It is using technology wisely and focusing on learning.
إنها استخدام التكنولوجيا بحكمة والتركيز على التعلم.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1. Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Sara spends too much time on her tablet.**

Sara : Do you think I spend too much time on my tablet?

Mona : Maybe a little. How many hours do you use it?

Sara : (1).. .

Mona : Five hours! (2)..?

Sara : I play games and watch videos on it.

Mona : Do your eyes get tired?

Sara : (3).. What should I do?

Mona : (4)..

Sara : Breaks are great. (5)..?

Mona : I read books and go for walks with my dad.

2. Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Ali is asking Youssef about smart cities in Egypt.**

Ali : Have you heard about a smart city in Egypt?

Youssef : (1).. .

Ali : (2)..?

Youssef : It is the New Administrative Capital.

Ali : What makes a city smart?

Youssef : (3).. .

Ali : Which technology? Can you give me an example?

Youssef : (4).. . Like smart traffic lights and clean energy.

Ali : (5)..?

Youssef : Yes, people can live and work more easily.

Skills Bank **Writing**

How to write about screen time كيفية الكتابة عن وقت الشاشة

1. What is screen time? ما وقت الشاشة؟

- Screen time means using phones, tablets, or computers.

وقت الشاشة يعنى وقت استخدام الهواتف وأجهزة التابلت أو الكمبيوتر.

2. What do children usually do when they are on screens?
ماذا يفعل الأطفال أثناء استخدام الشاشات؟

- Many kids play games or watch videos on screens.

كثير من الأطفال يلعب ألعاب أو يشاهد فيديوهات على الشاشات.

3. Can screen time be useful? How? هل يمكن لوقت الشاشة أن يكون مفيدًا؟ كيف؟

- Sometimes, we use screens to study or learn new things.

أحيانًا نستخدم الشاشات للمذاكرة أو لتعلم أشياء جديدة.

4. What are some bad effects of too much screen time?
ما بعض الآثار السيئة للاستخدام المفرط للشاشات؟

- Using screens too much can hurt our eyes and make us feel tired.

الاستخدام المفرط للشاشات يمكنه أن يؤذى عيننا ويجعلنا نشعر بالتعب.

5. How can children balance screen time with other activities?
كيف يمكن للأطفال أن يوازنوا بين وقت الشاشة والأنشطة الأخرى؟

- Children can read books or draw to have fun without screens.

يمكن للأطفال أن يقرأوا كتب أو يرسموا لكى يستمتعوا بدون الشاشات.

6. What is a smart way to use screens every day?
ما الطريقة المتطورة لاستخدام الشاشات كل يوم؟

- We should take breaks and play outside too. يجب أن نأخذ فترات راحة ونلعب بالخارج أيضًا.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"Screen Time"

Screen time means the time we spend looking at screens like phones, tablets, or computers. Many children use screens to watch videos, play games, or learn new things. Using screens can be fun and helpful, especially for school or learning apps. But too much screen time can hurt our eyes and make us tired. It can also take time away from playing outside or talking with family and friends. Children should take breaks and not use screens all day. It's smart to do other things like reading, drawing, or helping at home. In the end, screen time is good when we use it wisely and don't forget to enjoy the world around us.

TEST YOURSELF

1 Finish the following dialog:

Kareem is advising Eslam about playing for long on his phone.

Eslam : I spent the whole weekend playing on my phone.

Kareem : That's too much! (1)..?

Eslam : (2).. . I stayed inside.

Kareem : You can get sick if you sit too long.

Eslam : (3)..?

Kareem : You should go outside and get fresh air.

Eslam : What do you do after school?

Kareem : (4).. .

Eslam : I play football, too. What about playing football together tomorrow?

Kareem : (5)..! Let's play together tomorrow.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

scroll – balance – balanced – screen – focus – skills

Watching movies offers great entertainment, but too much (1)................................ time may harm your mental and physical health. Teenagers often (2)................................ through videos for hours without noticing. You should set a daily limit for screen use. Experts also say face-to-face communication builds better social (3)................................ . If you use screens in the right amount, they become useful, but you must (4)................................ between online fun and offline activities.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A .... is a person between the ages of 13 and 19.
   a) teacher   b) expert   c) screen   d) teenager
2. My dad is a/an .... in computer science and teaches people about AI.
   a) teenager   b) expert   c) exporter   d) child
3. Hani felt .... because his little brother kept talking during homework time.
   a) focused   b) modern   c) smart   d) distracted

4. Reading is a .... hobby. We should all read.
a) useful b) equal c) physical d) expensive

5. Hamza lost the race .... he trained hard.
a) although b) because
c) so d) on other hand

6. .... visit the museum; it's very interesting.
a) We should b) Should we c) We can't d) Can we

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They should .... (saying) sorry for being rude.
2. .... (Because) Aliaa is tired, she helpd her mom.
3. .... (Even thought), fast food is delicious; on the other hand, it's not healthy.
4. They .... (mustn't) be quiet during the movie. We can't enjoy it.
5. Sara can use the tablet, but I .... (can).

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your screen time"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's necessary for you to wear your school uniform. (must)
....
2. I advise you to study hard. (should)
....
3. You are allowed to go out after doing your homework. (can)
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

notifications (n)	إشعارات/تنبيهات	shocked (adj)	مصدوم
realize (d) (v)	يدرك		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

call (ed) (v)	يتصل بـ ...	relaxed (adj)	مرتاح/مسترخٍ
internet connection (n)	اتصال بالإنترنت	surprised (adj)	مندهش
nearby (adj/adv)	قريب/بالقرب	worried (adj)	قلق
nervous (adj)	عصبى/متوتر		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

check screen time report	يتحقق من تقرير وقت الشاشة	make a change	يُحدث تغييرًا
in control of	متحكم بـ/مُهيمن على	make a plan	يضع خطة
in person	بشخصى/شخصيًا	pick up	يلتقط/يحمل
keep away	يبقى بعيدًا/يبتعد	time for	وقت لـ ...
little by little	قليلًا/تدريجيًا	write in my journal	أدوّن فى يومياتى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
meet	يقابل	met	met

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
turn off	يغلق	turn on	يشغل

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

do – make – shocked – met

1 Sara felt .... by the exam result. She didn't pass.

2 I .... my friend at the club yesterday. We had coffee together.

3 We need to .... a plan for our school project.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blame (d) (v)	يلوم	global responsibility (n)	مسئولية عالمية
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	leader (n)	قائد/زعيم
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	method (n)	طريقة/أسلوب/منهج
fertilizers (n)	أسمدة	success (n)	نجاح

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

leadership (n)	القيادة	lettuce (n)	خس
fresh (adj)	طازج/منعش	material (n)	مادة خام
future generation (n)	الجيل القادم	natural (adj)	طبيعي
growing (adj)	متزايد		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

accept mistakes	يقبل الأخطاء	lead a group	يقود/يترأس مجموعة
answer to	إجابة/رد على	on the team	في الفريق
happy about	سعيد بـ ...	responsible for	مسؤول عن
harmful to	ضار بـ ...	surrounded by	مُحاط بـ ...

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
lead	يقود	led	led

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

natural – global – success – about

1. They were happy .... spending the weekend with their grandparents.
2. This juice has no sugar. It's made from .... fruits.
3. My brother's .... in business made his family very proud.

Language Notes

1 **plan to + inf.** المصدر — يخطط أن

- I also plan **to spend** more time outside and meet my friends in person.

2 فاعل **+ hope +** مضارع بسيط**/will + inf.** المصدر — يأمل أن

- I hope this plan **helps** me sleep better.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

eco-friendly صديق للبيئة	not harmful to nature	
global responsibility مسؤلية عالمية	caring for the Earth and future generations(1)	(1) أجيال
natural fertilizers أسمدة طبيعية	materials(2) used to help plants grow	(2) مواد
proud فخور	happy about something you or others achieved(3)	(3) ينجز
solutions حلول	answers to problems	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
nervous (adj) عصبى/متوتر	worried قلق
surprised (adj) مندهش	amazed مذهول

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
nerve (n) عصبى/متوتر	-ous	تحول الاسم/	nervous (adj) عصبى/متوتر
shock (v) يصدم	-ed	الفعل لصفة	shocked (adj) مصدوم

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
eco-	تعطى معنى: بيئى	friendly (adj) ودود	eco-friendly (adj) صديق للبيئة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading questions:

1 How many hours do you spend online every day?

2 What activities do you usually do on screen?

Read the text and guess the meaning of the words in bold: *SB page 63*

Last weekend, I checked my screen time report. I was shocked[1]-I used my phone for almost six hours each day! I didn't realize[2] how often I picked it up. I want to make a change.



This week, I made a new plan. I will only use my phone for one hour after school. I will turn off social media notifications[3] and keep my phone away when I study. Before bedtime, I will read a book or write in my journal. I also plan to spend more time outside and meet my friends in person.

I hope this plan helps me sleep better, feel less stressed[4], and have more time for fun activities. I know it won't be easy, but I want to feel more in control[5] of my time. Little by little, I believe I can improve.

(1) مصدوم (2) يدرك
(3) اشعارات (4) مضغوط
(5) متحكم بـ

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 Last weekend, the writer was surprised because he/she ....

a) lost their phone while they were at school
b) watched a movie for six hours
c) used their phone for six hours a day
d) had no internet connection

2 To focus better while studying, the writer decided to ....

a) listen to music before bedtime
b) keep their phone nearby
c) turn off social media notifications
d) text friends during breaks

3 In the evening, the writer plans to ....

a) play games online
b) read a book
c) call friends
d) watch TV

4 The underlined word "stressed" is the opposite of ".................... ".

a) worried
b) relaxed
c) angry
d) nervous

5 Why does the writer want to change their phone habits? ....

6 If you were the writer, what habits would you hope to improve? ....

The School Garden Project

Lesson 4

Pre-reading questions:

1 What does success mean to you?

....

2 How can we learn from our mistakes?

....

Read the following text. Why did they use eco-friendly methods?

SB page 65

CHAPTER FOUR:

Growing Success

After three months of hard work, the garden finally looked amazing. Students started eating lunch outside, surrounded by[1] fresh tomatoes, lettuce, and colorful flowers. The cafeteria began using some of the garden vegetables, which made everyone feel proud.

Zeina learned something new about being a leader[2].

It didn't mean she always had the answers. It meant being responsible for both the successes and the mistakes. When some plants didn't grow well, Zeina didn't blame[3] anyone. Instead, she worked with the team to find solutions.

The students also learned about global responsibility.

They used eco-friendly[4] methods: no harmful chemicals[5], only natural fertilizers[6].

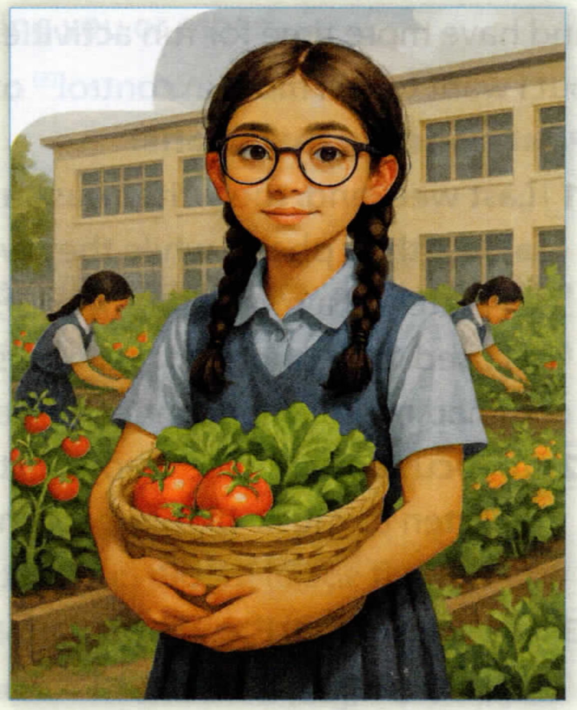
This also helped the soil and reduced trash.

Students from other classes started visiting the garden. Some asked how they could help. Others just wanted to enjoy the beautiful garden.

The garden had changed the school and it had changed the students.

They were no longer just classmates.

They were a team with a shared purpose.



(1) مُحاط بـ (2) قائد

....

(3) يلوم (4) صديق للبيئة

....

(5) مواد كيميائية (6) أسمدة طبيعية

Practice

CHAPTER (4) EXERCISES

1 Match the words from column (A) with their suitable meanings from column (B):

A	B
1. leader	a) to say that someone is responsible for a mistake
2. eco-friendly	b) a person who guides or is in charge of a group
3. global responsibility	c) not harmful to nature
4. blame	d) caring for the Earth and future generations
5. natural fertilizers	e) materials used to help plants grow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The students used .... methods, only natural fertilizers.
   a) chemical b) eco-friendly c) harmful d) hard
2. The students were no longer just classmates, they were ....
   a) teachers b) a team c) a game d) a tourist
3. Zeina learned something new about being a ....
   a) gardener b) visitor c) leader d) student
4. Leadership means being .... for both successes and mistakes.
   a) runner b) responsible c) athlete d) sports person

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What positive changes happened in the garden after three months? ....
2. What did Zeina learn about being a leader? ....
3. How did the students help the environment? ....
4. How did the garden affect students who weren't on the team? ....
5. Why did they use eco-friendly methods? ....

4 Critical thinking:

1. Can a small project like a garden really help the world? How?

....

2. Why is it important to accept mistakes when you're leading group?

....

3. Why do you think Zeina didn't blame anyone when the plants didn't grow well?

....

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 175-176 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
switch off	يطفئ	....	artificial	صناعى	....
develop	يطور	....	ordinary	عادى	....
decrease	يقلل	....	useful	مفيد	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

This week, I made a new plan. I will only use my phone for one hour after school. I will turn off social media notifications and keep my phone away when I study. Before bedtime, I will read a book or write in my journal. I also plan to spend more time outside and meet my friends in person.

1. Summerize the text in one sentence. (مهارة تلخيص النص)

....

....

2. What will the writer do before bedtime? (استخلاص معلومات)

....

....

3. What do you think of the writer's plan? (مهارة التفكير النقدى)

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- **I want to feel more in control of my time.**

- أريد أن أشعر أننى لا أتحكم فى وقتى الكثير. ☐
- أريد أن أشعر بمزيد من السيطرة على وقتى. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- **بدأت الكافتيريا باستخدام بعض خضراوات الحديقة.**

☐ The cafeteria started using some vegetables from the garden.

☐ The cafeteria started using vegetables from the market.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

relaxed – realize – notification – shouldn't – should – stressed

Yasmin was very tired. So, she felt (1) .... because she had too much homework to finish. A loud (2) .... from her phone made her distracted. She (3) .... turn it off so she could focus better. Then she began to (4) .... that taking short breaks might help her feel focused.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We must .... a change if we want to live healthier lives.
   a) write b) pick c) make d) ignore
2. I .... my screen time report every Sunday to see how long I used my tablet.
   a) check b) fix c) plan d) keep
3. Omar felt very .... when he knew he had a serious disease.
   a) shocked b) relieved c) tiring d) stressful
4. I always .... in my journal before I go to sleep.
   a) speak b) chat c) write d) send
5. They didn't .... it was already dark outside until they saw the stars.
   a) call b) relax c) organize d) realize
6. We need to be .... control of our own choices.
   a) on b) at c) in d) with
7. Please .... away from the broken glass—it's not safe.
   a) jump b) stay c) run d) come
8. Hamza looked .... when he finished doing his homework.
   a) surprised b) shocked c) honest d) relaxed
9. I want to meet my online teacher .... person next week.
   a) in b) with c) at d) by
10. Rami turned off his phone's .... so he could focus on his homework.
    a) icons b) screens c) languages d) notifications

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

interested – eco-friendly – waiting – wait – proud – solution

The students worked hard on their school project. They were (1)............ of their idea. They wanted to create an (2)............ garden using recycled materials. It was a fun way to help the environment and learn new things. They can't (3)............ to show their project to the class because they know they did something useful. The team believed their garden could be a great (4)............ to teach others about going green.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After winning the competition, I felt very .... of my hard work.
   a) bored b) upset c) proud d) shy
2. Using natural .... helps plants grow better without harming the soil.
   a) chemicals b) materials c) fertilizers d) methods
3. The team chose Mariam as their .... because she has great ideas and listens to everyone.
   a) parent b) leader c) student d) method
4. The company makes .... products that don't damage the planet.
   a) eco-friendly b) harmful c) proud d) expensive
5. Reducing pollution is part of our global .... to the Earth.
   a) responsibility b) opportunity c) necessity d) ability
6. We can't .... Adel because he doesn't know the rules.
   a) test b) blame c) create d) fix
7. These .... are made from the best cotton and last a long time.
   a) fertilizers b) materials c) methods d) screens
8. Eating .... food is good for your health.
   a) chemical b) natural c) harmful d) delicious
9. We tried a new .... to grow lettuce faster this season.
   a) method b) material c) factory d) tool
10. It's important to care about the needs of every future .... on Earth.
    a) materials b) fertilizers c) methods d) generations

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

blamed – On – in – chemicals – screens – success

Laila chose to plant lettuce using eco-friendly methods. She avoided harmful (1)........................ and used natural fertilizers instead. Although some students (2)........................ her for the slow start, she believed in her way. She became a leader in her class. (3)........................ the one hand, chemical methods were faster, but on the other hand, her natural way was safer. She was happy about her (4)........................, knowing she helped protect the Earth for future generations.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Hana had to do a school project about "Healthy Habits." She wanted to talk about screen time. She read many articles and checked her own screen time report. She was shocked to see how many hours she spent on her tablet. She made a plan to play outside, read books, and help her mom in the kitchen. While screens were fun, she realized they were taking up too much of her day. Hana worked on her project little by little and added pictures to show good habits. Although it was hard to start, she finished on time. Her teacher praised her for the great work. Hana said she learned a lot, not just for the project, but for her life too. Now, she knows how to keep screen time balanced.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is Hana ....
   - a) forgot to do her homework
   - b) created a project
   - c) lost her tablet
   - d) made a cooking video
2. Hana's .... surprised her.
   - a) grade
   - b) screen time report
   - c) teacher's gift
   - d) friends

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What helped Hana plan her project?

   ....

4. Why did she feel shocked?

   ....

5. Summarize how Hana did her project.

   ....

6. What might Hana do after finishing her project?

   ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please don't .... me after 10 p.m. I'll be sleeping.
   a) write b) call c) shock d) realize
2. I feel so .... after a long bath and a good night's sleep.
   a) relaxed b) shocked c) proud d) surprised
3. It's unfair to .... others for mistakes they didn't make.
   a) grow b) blame c) fertilize d) succeed
4. I like to eat .... fruit every morning before school.
   a) friendly b) amazing c) growing d) fresh
5. .... it was raining heavily, the children played outside and enjoyed the game.
   a) On one hand b) Although c) So d) Because
6. You .... run across the road without looking; it's very dangerous!
   a) must b) can c) mustn't d) should

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Even) he studied, he failed.
2. I prefer drinking tea .... (when) my sister prefers coffee.
3. Why should you .... (sleeping) early on school nights?
4. The little boy .... (must) walk in this street at night. It's not safe.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Balancing your screen Time"

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's forbidden to smoke here. (mustn't)

....

2. You should eat healthy food. (shouldn't)

....

3. Omar is strong, he can't carry this box. (Although)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

STUDY

▶ **LESSON 5 :** Let's Talk
▶ **LESSON 6 :** Small Change

SB pages 67-68
pages 69-70

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 5

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

distract (ed) (v)	يُشتت/يُلهى	polite (adj)	مؤدب
manage (d) (v)	يُدير/يُدبر/يتمكن	useful (adj)	مفيد
outdoor (adj)	خارجى	smooth (adj)	سلِس/ناعم

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

annoying (adj)	مُزعِج/مُضايِق	study time (n)	وقت الدراسة
game time (n)	وقت اللعب		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	have fun	يمرح
find a balance	يحقق توازنًا	set a timer for	يضبط المؤقّت لـ ...
get good sleep	ينام جيدًا	set specific times for	يُحدد أوقاتًا معينة لـ ...
get more done	يتمّ أعمالًا أكثر	stay focused	يبقى مركزًا
get your work done	قُم بإنهاء عملك		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
set	يُعد	set	set
get	يحصل على	got	got

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

set – annoying – sit – distracted

1 The loud music from next door is really ....
2 I .... a timer for 20 minutes to take a short nap.
3 He got .... by the noise outside while doing his homework.

LESSON 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

briefly (adv)	باختصار	eraser (n)	مِمحاة/أستيكة
technological (adj)	تكنولوجى		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

country (n)	بلد/دولة	mood (n)	مزاج/حالة
culture (n)	ثقافة	past (n/adj)	الماضى/ماضٍ/سابق
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	rarely (adv)	نادرًا
the Grand Egyptian Museum (n)	المتحف المصرى الكبير	recently (adv)	حديثًا
history (n)	تاريخ		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

connected to	متصل بـ ...	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
focus on	يركز على	achieve goals	يُحقق أهدافًا

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – at – eraser – explored

1 There is a pencil, a ruler, and an .... in my pencil case.
2 It's important to do your homework .... time.
3 The scientists .... the deep ocean to discover new sea creatures.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
manage (d) (v)	يُدير/يُدبِّر/يتمكن	control	يتحكم فى/يسيطر على
annoying (adj)	مُزعِج/مُضايِق	upsetting	مُزعِج

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
annoy (v) يزعِج/يضايِق	-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	annoying (adj) مُزعِج/مُضايِق
technology (n) تكنولوجيا	-cal	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	technological (adj) تكنولوجى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
im-	polite (adj) مؤدب	تعطى عكس المعنى	impolite (adj) غير مؤدب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think screen time affects your daily activities?

SB page 67

Talking About Screen Time



Mother I think you should try to find a good balance[1] between screen time for entertainment[2] and other activities.

Son But mom, screens help me stay focused when I study.

Mother That's true, but experts say screens can also be a big distraction if you're not careful.

Son So, how can I make my screen time more useful[3]?

Mother You could set specific[4] times for studying and breaks. Also, you must avoid using screens during meals or before bedtime.

Son I understand. I should also turn off notifications[5] because they might distract me.

Mother Exactly! And remember, you need to balance your screen time with outdoor activities and reading.

Son I see. If I follow this, I will feel better and get more done.

Mother Yes, and you will also enjoy your entertainment time more without feeling tired or distracted.

(1) يوازن
(2) التسلية
(3) مفيد
(4) محدد
(5) إشعارات

Post-reading questions: SB

1 How does the son feel about using screens for studying?

....

2 What problems can screens cause, according to the mother?

....

3 What are some ways to make screen time more useful?

....

Lesson 5

Take turns being Nader and Gamal. Try to include modal verbs and connectors to make the conversation smooth and polite. *SB page 68*



Nader Hey Gamal, you should try to find a good balance with your screen time. Do you know that too much screen can be a big distraction?

Gamal But Nader, my games help me stay focused when I'm learning!

Nader That's true, but sometimes screens might not be very useful if you don't manage them well.

Gamal So, what could I do to use my screen time better?

Nader You could set a timer for game time and study time. Also, you must avoid screens before bedtime to get good sleep.

Gamal Okay! I guess I should turn off those annoying notifications because they may distract me.

Nader Exactly! If you find the right balance, you'll have more fun and still get your work done.

Lesson 6

Read and complete the following paragraph: *SB page 69*

I recently learned about the Grand **Egyptian** Museum, and it made me think about how important our history is. I spend a lot of time **online,** but I rarely use it to learn about Egypt's culture. I want to change that. My new **goal** is to reduce my screen time and use some of it to explore Egyptian history and museums like this one. Learning about our past can help me feel more **connected** to your country. If young people know their history, they can help protect it. This habit can prepare me to be a better **citizen** of Egypt. Make history part of your life - read, visit, and share it.

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

Skills Bank Reading

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 185-186 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
outside	بالخارج	....	focus	يركز	....
aim	هدف	....	rough	خشن/قاسٍ	....
To sum up	اختصارًا	....	general	عام	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

My new goal is to reduce my screen time and use some of it to explore Egyptian history and museums like this one. Learning about our past can help me feel more connected to my country. If young people know their history, they can help protect it. This habit can prepare me to be a better citizen of Egypt.

1. What does the underlined word "it" refer to? (فهم ما يشير إليه ضمير)

....

....

2. How can learning about our past help us? (استخلاص معلومة)

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Experts say screens can be a big distraction if you're not careful.

- يقول الخبراء إن الشاشات قد تكون مصدر تركيز كبيرًا إذا لم تكن حذرًا. ☐
- يقول الخبراء إن الشاشات قد تكون مصدر إلهاء كبيرًا إذا لم تكن حذرًا. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- هدفي الجديد هو تقليل وقتي أمام الشاشة.

☐ My new goal is to increase my screen time.

☐ My new goal is to reduce my screen time.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analyzing · Evaluating · Creating

LESSON 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

set – must – mustn't – smooth – stay – annoying

I used to argue about screen time. My parents said I (1)................ not use my tablet at the dinner table. It was (2)................ at first, but I understood. Now, I (3)................ a timer for game time and focus during study time. I even found a balance between screen and outdoor fun. It feels (4)................ when my day has a plan, and I still have time to play and rest.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The loud noise from the construction work really .... me while I was reading.
   a) managed b) distracted c) pleased d) created
2. It's good to play .... games because fresh air helps your body and mind.
   a) smooth b) outdoor c) indoor d) annoying
3. I like this road because the ride feels very .... and quiet.
   a) narrow b) dangerous c) smooth d) annoying
4. My sister .... to finish her homework before the guests arrived.
   a) jumped b) made c) managed d) distracted
5. We must teach our children to be ....
   a) polite b) impolite c) stressed d) annoying
6. My little brother is always making noises which is very .... when I study.
   a) annoying b) polite c) smooth d) surprising
7. You can't .... good sleep if you use your phone all night.
   a) stay b) get c) leave d) find
8. Please .... a timer for 30 minutes while you do your reading.
   a) feel b) get c) set d) stay
9. To .... focused, I turn off my notifications and keep my phone away.
   a) stay b) set c) have d) do
10. It's important to .... a balance between study time and play time.
    a) lose b) find c) think d) stay

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rarely – should – recently – shouldn't – eraser – mood

Improving screen habits helped me become more active. I created a weekly plan with times for reading, drawing, and screen use. You (1) .... follow a plan to control your screen time. I (2) .... read a story about the history of Pyramids. It was so exciting! I even made a model using clay. My (3) .... changed in a good way, and I started feeling more focused. I (4) .... feel bored anymore.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Tourists love to .... the Pyramids and take pictures when they visit Giza.
   a) stay b) explore c) surround d) focus
2. The teacher asked us to speak .... when giving short answers.
   a) definitely b) recently c) rarely d) briefly
3. I read a book about the .... of Egypt during the pharaohs' time.
   a) screen b) museum c) history d) mood
4. When Waleed is tired or hungry, his .... changes quickly.
   a) mood b) culture c) experience d) heart
5. My uncle moved to another .... for work, but he visits us often.
   a) planet b) country c) mood d) generation
6. I saw a photo of my grandfather when he was young, in the ....
   a) culture b) present c) future d) past
7. You must act .... when making choices that affect others.
   a) wisely b) briefly c) rarely d) recently
8. We went on a school trip to the Grand Egyptian .... last week.
   a) Culture b) History c) Museum d) Country
9. Our teacher says that every .... is special and should be respected.
   a) mood b) future c) balance d) culture
10. Smart boards and tablets are examples of .... devices used in school.
    a) connected b) technological c) historical d) brief

C Skills

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Giving advice about screen time أعطاء نصيحة عن وقت الشاشة

online

How can I make my screen time more useful?
كيف يمكنني أن أجعل وقت الشاشة أكثر إفادة؟

You could set specific times for studying and breaks.
يمكنك أن تحدد أوقاتًا معينة للمذاكرة والاستراحة.

I should also turn off notifications because they might distract me.
يجب أن أغلق الإشعارات أيضًا لأنها قد تشتتنى.

You need to balance your screen time with outdoor play.
تحتاج إلى موازنة وقت الشاشة مع اللعب فى الخارج.

Do you know that too much screen time can be a big distraction?
هل تعلم أن الإفراط فى استخدام الشاشة قد يكون مصدر تشتيت كبيرًا؟

What could I do to use my screen time better?
ماذا يمكننى أن أفعل لأستخدم وقت الشاشة الخاص بى بشكل أفضل؟

You could set a timer for game time and study time.
يمكنك ضبط مؤقت لوقت اللعب ووقت الدراسة.

You must avoid screens before bedtime to get good sleep.
يجب أن تتجنب الشاشات قبل النوم لتحصل على نوم جيد.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ **Samir advises Ali to have some screen-free time every day.**

Ali : Do I use my tablet too much?
Samir : (1).. .
Ali : (2)..?
Samir : You can draw, play outside, or read a book.
Ali : Is it bad for my eyes?
Samir : (3)..................................... . Too much screen time can hurt your eyes.
Ali : (4)..?
Samir : You should take breaks every 20 minutes.
Ali : Should I stop playing games?
Samir : (5)... . Just play for shorter times.

Skills Bank Writing

How to improve your screen time habits

كيف يمكنك تحسين عاداتك لاستخدام وقت الشاشة

1. How can you improve your screen time habits?
كيف يمكنك تحسين عادات وقت الشاشة الخاصة بك؟

- I can improve my screen time by setting a schedule for using my tablet or computer.

عن طريق إعداد جدول مواعيد لاستخدام التابلت أو الكمبيوتر.

2. What can you do to limit screen time?
ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل لتقليل وقت الشاشة لديك؟

- I need to take breaks and play outside to stay healthy.

أحتاج أن أحصل على فترات راحة وأن ألعب بالخارج لأبقى صحيًا.

3. When should you stop using screens? متى يجب أن نتوقف عن استخدام الشاشات؟

- I should use screens only for a short time when I study or learn something.

يجب أن نستخدمها لوقت قصير فقط عندما ندرس أو نتعلم شيئًا.

4. What can help you stay focused when using screens?
ما الذى يساعدك على البقاء مركزًا عند استخدام الشاشات؟

- Using a timer for games and studying helps me focus.

استخدام مؤقت لأوقات اللعب والمذاكرة يساعدنى على التركيز.

5. Why should you avoid being on a screen at night? لماذا يجب أن تتجنب الشاشات ليلاً؟

- I should avoid screens before bedtime so I can sleep well.

يجب أن أتجنب الشاشات قبل وقت النوم لكى أنام جيدًا.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"How to Improve Your Screen Time Habits"

Many children use screens every day, but it's important to use them in a smart way. To improve your screen time habits, you should make a plan. Start by setting a plan for when to study, play, and rest. You could set a timer to know when it's time to stop. It's a good idea to turn off notifications because they may distract you. Don't forget to take breaks and go outside to play. You should also avoid screens before bedtime, so you can sleep well. If you use screens wisely, you'll feel happier and learn more. In the end, using screens the right way won't harm your body and your brain.

TEST YOURSELF

1 Finish the following dialog:

Randa and Sagda are speaking screen time.

Randa : Hi Sagda! How much time do you spend on your phone every day?

Sagda : Hi Randa! (1) ....

Randa : Four or five hours! That's too much. (2) ....?

Sagda : I use it for school work and watching videos.

Randa : Do you think too much screen time is bad?

Sagda : (3) ....

Randa : (4) ....?

Sagda : I stop one hour before bedtime.

Randa : Does that help you sleep better?

Sagda : (5) ....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

get – stay – resting – rest – feel – specific

Screens are fun, but can make you forget to move. I must (1)........................ after 30 minutes of screen time. I set (2)........................ times for drawing, watching, and playing. That way, I get more done and still (3)........................ better. Being polite means not using your screen when talking to someone. My dad helped me manage my time, and now I (4)........................ good sleep every night.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's hard to .... focused when my phone keeps ringing.
   a) have b) find
   c) say d) stay
2. It's important to .... a balance between fun and responsibility.
   a) feel b) lose
   c) find d) stay
3. If you start early, you can .... more done before lunch.
   a) get b) think
   c) find d) stay

4. If you find a balance in your life, you'll feel more ....

a) relaxed b) stressed c) surrounded d) shocked

5. ...., mobile phones help us communicate quickly. On the other hand, they can cause us to waste a lot of time on games.

a) While b) Although

c) On one hand d) Even though

6. My little brother .... go to bed early because he has school tomorrow.

a) need b) can't c) must d) shouldn't

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Amal .... (can't) solve the puzzle by herself. She's very smart.
2. .... (The one hand) she was scared, she spoke well in front of the class.
3. Students .... (not) shout during the lesson.
4. Ali always smiles .... (because) he has a lot of work.
5. I like screens .... (so) they can harm my eyes.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Managing your screen time"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mazin got up early but he missed the bus. (Although)

....

2. It's important for you to revise for your lessons. (should)

....

3. Omar is able to speak three languages. (can)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 4 Assessment

SB page 65

A Vocabulary

1 Match the words from column (A) with the correct endings in column (B):

A	B
1. balance	a) something that takes attention away
2. modern	b) advanced
3. distraction	c) helpful
4. smart	d) using or doing wisely
5. useful	e) to keep things in the right amount

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct word:

focused – screen – future – healthy

1. Too much .... time can affect sleep and mood.
2. Staying .... during class helps us learn more.
3. Good habits make our minds and bodies ....
4. Young people are the .... of Egypt.

B Language

3 Read and circle the correct word of the words between brackets:

1. A: Excuse me. I want to use your eraser.
   B: Of course, you .... (can – can't) use it.
2. Students .... (must – mustn't) come to school on time.
3. You shouldn't .... (make – making) noise.

C Writing

4 Write a paragraph of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words about:

"Screen Time Habits"

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 Review

Vocabulary

balance (d) (v)	يوازن
blame (d) (v)	يلوم
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية
distract (ed) (v)	يُشتت/يُلهى
distracted (adj)	مشتت/غير مركّز
entertainment (n)	ترفيه/تسلية
expert (n)	خبير
fertilizers (n)	أسمدة
focused (adj)	مركّز
leader (n)	قائد/زعيم
limit (ed) (v)	يحد من/يقلّل
manage (d) (v)	يُدير/يُدبر/يتمكن
mental (adj)	ذهنى/عقلى/نفسى
method (n)	طريقة/أسلوب
outdoor (adj)	خارجى
physical (adj)	بدنى/جسدى
policy (n)	سياسة
privacy (n)	خصوصية
screen time (n)	الوقت أمام الشاشة
screen use (n)	استخدام الشاشة
scroll (ed) (v)	يتصفح/يتجول
shocked (adj)	مصدوم
success (n)	نجاح
technological (adj)	تكنولوجى
teenager/teen (n)	مُراهِق

Language

1. Using Modals استخدام الأفعال الناقصة

A: must/mustn't

يجب/لا يجب (للضرورة/المنع والتحريم)

e.g. • Students must follow the school rules.

• People mustn't smoke in hospitals.

B: should/shouldn't

ينبغى أن/لا ينبغى أن (للنصيحة)

e.g. • We should visit our grandparents at the weekend.

• People shouldn't tell lies.

C: can/can't

يستطيع/لا يستطيع (للاستئذان)

e.g. • My brother and I cannot (can't) play before finishing our homework.

• You cannot (can't) go out now. It's raining.

2. Connectors الروابط

A: While/Although/Even though

على الرغم من (للتناقض)

e.g. • Although he is rich, he isn't happy.

• While the movie was long, it was very interesting.

• Even though he is strong, he can't lift the box.

B: On one hand/ on the other hand

من ناحية/من ناحية أخرى (لعرض وجهتي نظر مختلفتين)

e.g. • On one hand, I want to play outside. On the other hand, I have homework to finish.

Skills

1. Expressing opinions about screen time and its impact on daily life

A: What is screen time?

B: It is the amount of time a person spends looking at digital screens.

A: How many hours do you spend on screens every day?

B: I spend about 2 to 3 hours on screens every day.

A: Do you think it is good to spend much time on screens?

B: No, it is not good because it can affect our health.

A: Why is it important to limit screen time?

B: Limiting screen time helps protect our health and allows time for other healthy activities.

A: What are some healthy activities to balance screen use?

B: Healthy activities include playing sports, reading books, spending time with family and friends.

A: Can screen time be useful sometimes? How?

B: Yes, screen time can be useful for learning and communication.

2. Talking about smart habits for Egypt's smart future

A: Are there smart cities in Egypt?

B: Yes, Egypt is building smart cities like the New Administrative Capital.

A: Is using technology for learning important?

B: Yes, using technology for learning is important because it helps students understand better.

A: What giant projects are there in Egypt now?

B: There are many giant projects such as the monorail and El Alamein.

A: Why do you think building new modern roads is important?

B: Because it reduces traffic and saves time.

A: What is a smart habit that can help Egypt's future?

B: It is using technology wisely and focusing on learning.

General Exercises on Unit 4

A Language Functions

1 **Finish the following dialog:**

Zaki and Fadi are speaking about keeping the environment clean.

Zaki : Hi Fadi! Did you see all the trash in the park today?

Fadi : (1).. . People should stop throwing trash.

Zaki : You're right. Who do you think should share in keeping the environment clean?

Fadi : (2).. .

Zaki : (3)..?

Fadi : I think natural fertilizers are safer for the soil and plants.

Zaki : What else do you think we can do to keep the environment clean?

Fadi : I think we should (4).. .

Zaki : (5)..?

Fadi : Sure! We can start this group, as it will motivate others to share.

B Reading Comprehension

2 **Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

take – to – for – shouldn't – should – explore

To improve your screen time, try spending more time outdoors. You can (1).......................... your neighborhood or visit a museum like the Grand Egyptian Museum. Don't forget to (2).......................... breaks. You (3).......................... focus on other activities like drawing or reading. I recently followed these rules and made changes in my life. Remember, technology is helpful, but too much isn't good. You can stay connected (4).......................... friends in person, not just online.

3 **Read the following text, then answer the questions:**

In a quiet village, a boy named Sami planted a small tree near his house. Every day, he watered it and made sure it got enough sunlight. The tree didn't grow fast, but Sami didn't stop caring for it. One day, heavy rain came, and the wind broke some of the branches. Sami felt sad, but he cleaned the area and tied the tree to a wooden stick to help it stand. Months passed, and the tree grew strong again. Soon, it had green leaves and even small flowers. Sami smiled every time he walked past it. He learned that success needs time, care, and strength to fix problems.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main message of this passage is ....
   - a) rain can destroy plants
   - b) Sami likes flowers
   - c) success grows with care
   - d) trees grow very quickly
2. When the tree was damaged, Sami ....
   - a) cut it down
   - b) tied it and helped it recover
   - c) moved it to another place
   - d) forgot about it

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What helped the tree grow again after the storm?

....

4. Why do you think Sami kept caring for the tree?

....

5. Write a summary of how the tree changed over time.

....

6. What might the tree look like in a few more months?

....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Everyone should use their mobiles in a/an .... way.
   - a) negative
   - b) useful
   - c) distracted
   - d) excited
2. When we face problems, we should ask .... for help.
   - a) strangers
   - b) enemies
   - c) experts
   - d) kids
3. Never .... your group for not achieving success. It's a common responsibility.
   - a) blame
   - b) succeed
   - c) pass
   - d) think
4. Our teacher encouraged us to play .... sports to stay active and healthy.
   - a) polite
   - b) screen
   - c) smooth
   - d) outdoor

5. .... I enjoy video games, I don't play them every day.

a) Even
b) On the other hand
c) On one hand
d) Although

6. A: .... I turn off the lights when I leave the room? B: Yes, it's necessary.

a) Did
b) Must
c) Can't
d) Will

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Tamer .... (not/should) forget to brush his teeth every morning.
2. On one hand, sweets are tasty. On the .... (another) hand, we shouldn't eat too many.
3. Students .... (should/stay) up too late on school nights.
4. Although Nader is tired, he must .... (finishing) his school project.
5. .... (Because) she was hungry, Basma finished all her homework before dinner.

D The Story

6 **A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What did the garden look like after three months of hard work? ....
2. Why is using eco-friendly methods important for the garden and the environment? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina learned that being a leader meant being .... for both successes and mistakes.

a) responsible
b) excited
c) worried
d) famous

4. Students used eco-friendly methods like natural ....

a) fertilizers
b) paints
c) chairs
d) lights

E Writing

7 **Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Adam to tell him about your screen time habits. Your name is Samy.**

....

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 5
DESIGN THINKING

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading
- Identify main ideas and details in texts about the innovation process.
- Understand and explain the steps of design thinking in a reading passage.

Learning
- Understand the main ideas and details in a design sprint blog.
- Identify examples of problem-solving steps in spoken texts.

Speaking
- Express ideas clearly when presenting a design solution.
- Use design thinking vocabulary when discussing solutions and prototypes.

Writing
- Write a review explaining the steps in a design process.
- Use target vocabulary related to design thinking in context.

Language
- Use sequence adverbs (first, then, next, finally) to show order in speaking and writing.
- Use imperatives accurately to give instructions during design tasks.

STUDY

▶ LESSON 1 : Think Like a Designer — SB pages 73-74
▶ LESSON 2 : Dream It, Build It — SB pages 75-76

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

design thinking (n)	التفكير التصميمى	prototype (n)	نموذج أولى/مبدئى
designer (n)	مصمم	schedule (n)	جدول/خطة زمنية
need (n)	حاجة	stylish (adj)	أنيق/راقٍ/عصرى
organize (d) (v)	ينظم	test (ed) (v)	يختبر
point of view (n)	وجهة نظر	well-designed (adj)	مصمم جيدًا
problem-solver (n)	حلال مشاكل		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

attractive (adj)	جذاب	object (n)	شىء
backpack (n)	حقيبة ظهر	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض
comfort (n)	راحة	outfit (n)	زى/طقم ملابس
design (ed) (v/n)	يصمم/تصميم	planned (adj)	مجدول/مخطط
fashionable (adj)	على الموضة	safety (n)	أمان/سلامة
function (n)	وظيفة	space (n)	مساحة/ منطقة فارغة
mainly (adv)	بشكل أساسى	style (n)	أسلوب
model (n)	نموذج	weight (n)	وزن/ثقل

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

besides	بالإضافة إلى	interact with	يتفاعل مع
for life	مدى الحياة	explore ideas	يستكشف أفكار
important for	هام لـ ...	make ideas	يبتكر أفكارًا

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
safety	أمان/سلامة	danger	الخطر

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list: do – make – stylish – for

1 I wore my .... shoes to the party and everyone loved them.

2 Eating vegetables is important .... staying strong and healthy.

3 Let's .... ideas for a story about an adventure in the forest.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition | (v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية.

brainstorm (ed) (v)	يعصف ذهنيًا بالأفكار	practical (adj)	عملى
complex (adj)	معقد	sprint (n)	تطوير سريع
crazy (adj)	مجنون	successful (adj)	ناجح
design sprint (n)	ورشة التصميم السريعة	suitable (adj)	مناسب
effective (adj)	فعال	ideation (n)	توليد الأفكار

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

afraid (adj)	خائف	interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	involve (d) (v)	يُضمن
define (d) (v)	يعرف	judge (d) (v)	يحكم
fancy (adj)	فاخر/أنيق	open-ended (adj)	غير محدد
food express line (n)	خط الطعام السريع	prepare (d) (v)	يعد/يجهز
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	process (n)	عملية
identify ~~(y)~~ (ied) (v)	يحدد/يتعرف على	steps (n)	خطوات
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	sketch (ed) (v)	يرسم
individually (adv)	فردى	tips (n)	نصائح/تلميحات
ingredients (n)	مقادير/مكونات	unusual (adj)	غير عادى/معتاد

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

on the sheet	على الورق	work on a project	يعمل فى مشروع
work in a team	يعمل فى فريق		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
make	يصنع	made	made
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
successful	ناجح	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – in – ingredients – tips

1. My sandwich has tasty ....; cheese, tomatoes, and lettuce.
2. When we work .... a team, everyone gets to help and have fun.
3. Draw your favorite animal .... the sheet, and don't forget to color it.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Definitions التعريفات

ideation	توليد الأفكار	brainstorming(1) or coming up with ideas	(1) العصف الذهني
stylish	أنيق/راقٍ/عصرى	attractive in a fashionable(2) way	(2) على الموضة
creativity	الإبداع	ability to make new ideas	(3) فعال
point of view	وجهة نظر	a way of looking at something	(4) معقد
prototype	تجريبى/مبدئى	a simple model of a design	
schedule	جدول/خطة زمنية	a list of planned activities	
design thinking	التفكير التصميمى	a way to solve a problem	
practical	عملى	effective(3) or suitable	
sprint	متسارع (وصف الطريقة)	a process of solving complex(4) problems	
crazy	مجنون	very unusual	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
comfort (n)	راحة	rest	راحة
function (n)	وظيفة	job	وظيفة
suitable (adj)	مناسب	proper	مناسب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
design (v)	يصمم	-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	designer (n)	مصمم
style (n)	أسلوب	-ish	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	stylish (adj)	أنيق/راقٍ/عصرى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

1 What do you think a "designer" mainly does?

2 Can you name some everyday objects that are well-designed?

Read this text and underline the designer skills mentioned in the passage.

SB page 73

"Think Like a Designer"

Designers are everyday problem-solvers.

They create things that are useful, easy to understand, and fun to use. Whether it's a building, a phone app, or a daily schedule[1], a designer asks important questions like:

"Who will use it?" "What do they need?"

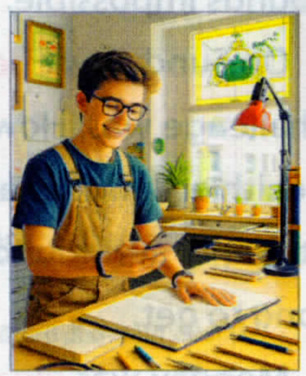
"How can I make it better?"

Great designers don't just draw pictures or make stylish[2] objects, they explore ideas from different points of view[3] and test simple models called prototypes[4]. Creativity[5], listening, and curiosity are important skills in design.

Designers think about the function of things and how people interact with them.

For example, designing a school backpack is not just about style. It's about comfort, weight, space, and safety. In the same way, a designer for life might help people organize their time or solve their problems.

Design thinking means caring about people and imagining better solutions[6]. Anyone can be a designer - all you need is a creative mind and a need to improve the world around you.



(1) جدول/مخطط زمنى

(2) عصرى

(3) وجهات نظر

(4) نموذج أولى

(5) الإبداع

(6) حلول

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What can designers create? ....

2 What is a "prototype"? ....

3 Name one skill that is important for designers. ....

4 Besides style, what is important when designing a backpack? ....

5 What does it mean to "think like a designer"? ....

Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

1 What do you think a "design sprint" is?

2 How long do you think it takes to solve a design problem?

Listen to Sara's blog. *SB page 71*

"Hi, everyone! I'm Sara, and I just finished an amazing design sprint. A design sprint is when a team solves a big problem in just five days. It sounds impossible, right? But it works!



(1) يعرف	(2) توليد الأفكار
(3) عملى	(4) خط الطعام السريع
(5) تصميم	(6) فاخر/أنيق

On Sunday, we defined[1] our problem, and our challenge was: How might we help students eat healthier lunches at school? We interviewed 20 students and found that healthy food takes too long to get.

Monday was ideation[2] day. We brainstormed over 50 ideas! Some were crazy, like a robot chef, but others were practical[3], like a healthy food express line[4].

On Tuesday and Wednesday, we built prototypes. We created a simple app design and a new cafeteria layout[5]. Nothing fancy[6] —just enough to test our ideas.

Finally, on Thursday, we tested with real students. They loved the express line idea but weren't interested in the app. Now we know what to build next!

The best part about design thinking was when we solved a real problem in just five days by putting students first."

Post-listening questions:

SB

1 What was the main problem?

....

2 Which solution did students prefer?

....

3 What was the crazy idea mentioned in the text?

....

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 203-204 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
tidy يرتب/ينظم	....	danger خطر	....
answers إجابات/حلول	....	useless عديم الفائدة	....
develop يطور	....	simple بسيط	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

Designing a school backpack is not just about style. It's about comfort, weight, space, and safety. In the same way, a designer for life might help people **organize** their time or solve their problems.

1. What is the passage about? (إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية للنص)

....

....

....

....

2. The underlined word "**organize**" means to .... (تخمين معنى كلمة)

a) design **b)** tidy

c) arrange **d)** both b & c

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Design thinking means caring about people and imagining better solutions.

- يعني التفكير التصميمي إهمال الناس وتذكر حلول أفضل. ☐

- يعني التفكير التصميمي الاهتمام بالناس وتخيل حلول أفضل. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- يقوم المصممون بإنشاء أشياء مفيدة وسهلة الفهم وممتعة في الاستخدام.

☐ Designers create things that are useful, easy to understand, and fun to use.

☐ Designers create objects that are useless, easy to understand, and funny to use.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analyzing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

LESSON 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

test – tasty – closely – stylish – do – make

To think like a designer, you need to explore ideas from every point of view. First, you look (1).................... at people's needs in their everyday life. Then, you begin to (2).................... ideas and organize them into a clear list. After that, you can build a prototype and (3).................... its function for safety and comfort. Designers don't just want things to be useful—they also want them to look (4).................... and well-designed.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I like my backpack because it is light and gives me lots of ....
   a) comfort   b) styles   c) weight   d) objects
2. She wants to be a ...., so she can make cool clothes and toys.
   a) writer   b) designer   c) singer   d) player
3. My dad bought a .... train for my little brother.
   a) schedule   b) prototype   c) outfit   d) model
4. There is a large .... near the school where we play and have fun.
   a) space   b) style   c) weight   d) offer
5. I wrote the meeting time in my .... so I wouldn't forget.
   a) puzzle   b) quiz   c) envelope   d) schedule
6. In art class, we use .... to think of better ways to solve problems.
   a) style   b) design thinking   c) function   d) prototype
7. Her dress looked so bright and pretty—it was really ....
   a) stylish   b) planned   c) successful   d) object
8. When we play together, we .... with new friends and share our toys.
   a) make   b) organize   c) design   d) interact
9. I could reach a .... to the problem alone.
   a) protection   b) solution   c) value   d) price
10. The group worked together to .... the toys into boxes by size and color.
   a) explore   b) offer   c) organize   d) make

LESSON 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sprint – improving – brainstorming – success – spirit – waiting

When you have an idea, share it. Designers often start by (1)........................ crazy solutions that seem impossible at first. They prepare their thoughts and identify the most important ingredients for (2)........................ . A design (3)........................ involves steps like planning, testing, and (4)........................ a prototype. Always define the problem clearly before building.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The chef showed us the recipe and listed all the .... we would need.
   a) tips b) ingredients c) steps d) interviews
2. The team worked hard to .... the parts before building the final model.
   a) brainstorm b) guess c) prepare d) fail
3. I can't find a solution to that problem. It's ....
   a) easy b) complex c) simple d) tasty
4. You must work hard to achieve your dreams and be ....
   a) loser b) success c) failure d) successful
5. Before we start, we should .... the goal of this design sprint clearly.
   a) define b) ignore c) fail d) forget
6. The designer said it was important to follow these .... one by one to succeed.
   a) interviews b) stations c) ingredients d) steps
7. .... is an important step in solving problems.
   a) Information b) Ideation c) Station d) Definition
8. Mr Waleed explained the lesson ...., so we all understood it.
   a) badly b) sadly c) rapidly d) clearly
9. After testing the prototype, the team realized it was more .... than they expected.
   a) planned b) impossible c) effective d) afraid
10. During the activity, each student worked .... and created their own design idea.
    a) individually b) impossibly c) hardly d) uselessly

C Language

1 Sequence Adverbs ظروف الترتيب الزمنى

Sequence Adverbs help us organize the steps in a process.

تساعدنا ظروف الترتيب الزمنى فى تنظيم الخطوات فى العملية.

1 First / Firstly (أولًا) → To begin with

- تُستخدم لبدء الكلام أو ذكر الخطوة الأولى

e.g. • First, wash your hands. • Firstly, let's clean the room.

2 Next (التالى)/ Then (ثم)/ After that (وبعد ذلك)/ Subsequently (فيما بعد) → Following this

- تُستخدم للخطوة التالية أو للانتقال من فكرة لأخرى.

e.g. • He finished his homework. Then he watched TV.

• We went to the park. After that, we had ice cream.

• We made a plan. Subsequently, we started the project.

3 Finally / Lastly / In conclusion → To end

- تُستخدم عند إنهاء الكلام أو ذكر آخر خطوة.

e.g. • Finally, serve the food.

• We played games, had snacks, and lastly, took a group photo.

• In conclusion, exercise is important for good health.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 .... (Lastly) enter your password. Then, the tablet will open.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (First/Firstly) لأن الخطوة الأولى لاستخدام التابلت هى إدخال كلمة المرور.

2 Do your homework, watch TV, and .... (firstly) turn off the lights before going to sleep.

الإجابة الصحيحة هى (lastly) لأن الخطوة الأخيرة قبل النوم هى إطفاء الأنوار.

2 Imperatives صيغة الأمر

Look at the pictures and choose the correct verbs to complete the teacher's orders in the classroom:

Raise – Open – Write – Be



.... quiet.



.... your book.



your hand.



on your notebook.

من خلال الأمثلة السابقة نستنتج أننا عندما نعطى تعليمات نبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر، هيا نتعرف على صيغة الأمر فى الإثبات والنفى.

Form التكوين

A Affirmative الإثبات

- عند إعطاء أمر مثبت نبدأ الجملة بـ:

inf. الفعل فى المصدر

Always + inf. الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. • Wash your hands before lunch. • Always go to bed early.

B Negative النفى

- وعند إعطاء نهى نبدأ الجملة بـ:

Don't + inf. الفعل فى المصدر

Never + inf. الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. • Don't forget to water the plants.
• Never leave your account open for everyone.

لاحــظ

١- إذا كان هناك صفة نستخدم:

Be + adj. الصفة	Don't be + adj. الصفة
e.g. • Be quiet. The baby is sleeping. • Be careful when you go online.	e.g. • Don't be rude to your friends. • Don't be lazy. Do your homework now.

٢- يمكن أن يُذكر المخاطب فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة ويضع معه (,):

e.g. • Mona, clean the room quickly.

e.g. • Remember to buy some bread, Mohamed.

Practice

LANGUAGE EXERCISES

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analyzing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We played some games. ...., we had dinner.
   a) First b) While c) Because d) Then
2. ...., press the green button to start the machine.
   a) Finally b) Then c) First d) Although
3. .... your hands before you eat.
   a) Washing b) Washed c) Wash d) Don't wash
4. ...., we need to organize work.
   a) On hand b) After c) Last d) Firstly
5. She cleaned her room. ...., she went to sleep.
   a) Next b) If c) First d) While
6. We crossed the river. ...., we rested under a tree.
   a) Because b) After that c) Firstly d) First
7. Please, ... me with this bag.
   a) help b) helps c) helping d) don't help
8. Gamal, ... too much sugar or fat to keep fit.
   a) not to eat b) don't eat c) eats d) eat

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I made a cup of tea. .... (firstly), I sat down to relax.
2. .... (Don't forget) to lock the door before you leave.
3. Get your bag ready. .... (Next) that, you can go to school.
4. .... (Not arrive) at school late again.
5. .... (Final), I passed the interview and got the job.
6. Never .... (been) rude to others. Respect them.
7. Ahmed! .... (Sitting) down, your classmates can't see the board.
8. Please, ... (not/spend) too much money on video games.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Don't forgets to check the soil. (............................)
2. Next, we dig the soil, we plant the flowers. (............................)
3. Being careful when you carry the heavy tools. (............................)
4. Not leave the tools outside overnight. (............................)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D **Skills**

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Expressing ideas clearly when presenting a design solution

التعبير عن الأفكار بوضوح عند تقديم حل تصميمي

online

What do you think a "designer" mainly does?
فى رأيك، ماذا يفعل «المصمم» بشكل أساسى؟

A designer imagines and creates things that solve problems.
المصمم يتخيل وينشئ أشياء تحل المشكلات.

Can you name some everyday objects that are well-designed?
هل يمكنك ذكر بعض الأشياء المستخدمة يوميًا والمصممة جيدًا؟

Sure! These objects include a backpack, a smartphone and a lunchbox.
بالتأكيد! هذه الأشياء تشمل حقيبة ظهر، هاتفًا ذكيًا، صندوق طعام.

What does it mean to think like a designer?
ماذا يعنى أن تفكر كمصمم؟

It means caring about people's needs and exploring ideas.
إنه يعنى الاهتمام باحتياجات الناس، واستكشاف الأفكار.

How can thinking like a designer help people?
كيف يمكن للتفكير كمصمم أن يساعد الناس؟

It helps people solve problems better and express their ideas clearly.
إنه يساعد الناس على حل المشكلات بشكل أفضل، والتعبير عن أفكارهم بوضوح.

Why is expressing ideas clearly so important when presenting a design?
لماذا يُعد التعبير عن الأفكار بوضوح أمرًا مهمًا عند تقديم التصميم؟

Clear communication helps others understand the function of a design.
يساعد التواصل الواضح الآخرين على فهم وظيفة التصميم.

2. Asking and answering about "Design Sprint"

طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عنها حول «ورشة التصميم السريعة»

online

What do you think a Design Sprint is?

فى رأيك، ما «ورشة التصميم السريعة»؟

It is a short, focused process where a team works together to solve a problem.

هى عملية قصيرة ومركزة يعمل فيها الفريق معًا لحل مشكلة ما.

How long do you think it takes to solve a design problem?

فى رأيك، ما المدة التى يستغرقها حل مشكلة تصميم؟

A design sprint usually takes about five days.

ورشة التصميم السريعة تستغرق عادة حوالى خمسة أيام.

Have you ever worked on a project where you had to solve a problem quickly?

هل سبق أن عملت فى مشروع كان عليك فيه حل مشكلة بسرعة؟

Yes! I once worked on a school project where we had only two days to design a poster.

نعم! عملت مرة على مشروع مدرسى وكان لدينا يومان فقط لتصميم ملصق.

Do you prefer working in a team or individually when solving problems?

هل تفضل العمل ضمن فريق أم بشكل فردى عند حل المشكلات؟

I prefer working in a team because we can share ideas and help each other.

أفضل العمل فى فريق لأننا نستطيع مشاركة الأفكار ومساعدة بعضنا البعض.

What do you think is the hardest part of a Design Sprint?

فى رأيك، ما أصعب جزء فى ورشة التصميم السريعة؟

The hardest part is choosing the best idea quickly.

أصعب جزء هو اختيار أفضل فكرة بسرعة.

Why is testing important in a Design Sprint?

لماذا يُعد الاختبار مهمًا فى ورشة التصميم السريعة؟

Testing helps the team see if the solution works well.

الاختبار يساعد الفريق على معرفة ما إذا كان الحل يعمل جيدًا.

Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialog:

Mr. Taher is telling Kamal about what designers do.

Mr. Taher : Do you know what designers do every day?

Kamal : (1).. .

Mr. Taher : It's great they solve problems. Can you give an example of what a designer might create?

Kamal : Sure! They might design a building, a phone app, or even a daily schedule.

Mr. Taher : (2)..?

Kamal : They ask questions like "Who will use it?", "What do they need?", and "How can I make it better?"

Mr. Taher : (3)..?

Kamal : Yes, great designers explore ideas, test prototypes, and focus on how things work.

Mr. Taher : What skills are important for a good designer?

Kamal : (4).. .

Mr. Taher : Can anyone become a designer?

Kamal : (5).. .

2 Finish the following dialog:

Salma is asking Youssef about a design sprint.

Salma : Have you ever heard of a design sprint?

Youssef : (1).. .

Salma : Tell me. (2)..?

Youssef : It's when a group works fast to solve a problem.

Salma : (3)..?

Youssef : A design sprint usually takes five days.

Salma : Do people draw their ideas in a design sprint?

Youssef : (4)... . Drawing helps everyone understand.

Salma : Thanks for this information.

Youssef : (5).. .

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about a design sprint

كيفية الكتابة عن ورشة التصميم السريعة

1. What is a design sprint? **ما المقصود بورشة التصميم السريعة؟**

- A design sprint is a fast way to solve a problem in a few days.

هى طريقة سريعة لحل مشكلة فى أيام قليلة.

2. How long does a design sprint take? **كم المدة التى تستغرقها ورشة التصميم السريعة؟**

- It usually lasts for about five days.

عادة ما تستغرق خمسة أيام.

3. What steps are in a design sprint? **ما خطوات ورشة التصميم السريعة؟**

- First, the team discusses the challenge and shares ideas. Then, they sketch different designs and choose the best one to build.

أولًا، يقوم الفريق بمناقشة التحدى ويتشاركون الأفكار، ثم يرسمون مختلف التصميمات ويختارون النموذج الأفضل لتنفيذه.

4. What is a prototype, and why do we test it? **ما النموذج التجريبى، ولماذا نختبره؟**

- A prototype is made so people can test how the idea works.

النموذج التجريبى يتم صنعه لكى يستطيع الأفراد اختبار كيفية أداء الفكرة.

5. What happens in the end? **ماذا يحدث فى النهاية؟**

- In the end, a design sprint helps people create useful things quickly.

فى النهاية، تقوم ورشة التصميم السريعة بمساعدة الأفراد فى ابتكار أشياء مفيدة بسرعة.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"A design sprint"

A design sprint is a fun and fast way for people to solve problems together. It usually lasts for about five days and helps a group go from a big idea to a small working model. On the first day, people talk about the challenge and share ideas. Then, they sketch and plan different solutions. After that, they choose the best idea and build something called a prototype. A prototype is a simple version of the real thing. Finally, the group tests it to see how well it works. Everyone works in a team, and it's important to listen and talk clearly. In the end, a design sprint helps people create smart and useful solutions in a short time.

TEST YOURSELF

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hani and Leila are discussing a design sprint.

Hani : What's the first step in a design sprint, Leila?

Leila : (1)..

Hani : Do they all give ideas together?

Leila : (2).. . They brainstorm ideas as a team.

Hani : That sounds fun! (3)..?

Leila : After that, they draw their best ideas and share them.

Hani : Is there a leader in the sprint?

Leila : (4).. . Usually, someone helps guide the team.

Hani : (5)..?

Leila : They test their ideas at the end.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

organize – Next – Finally – comfort – outfits – sprint

If you want to think like a designer, you need creativity, planning, and care. Start by using design thinking to explore ideas and make a list of needs. (1)...................., test your prototype to see if the function works well and feels safe. After that, (2).................... your steps and plan a well-designed solution that offers (3).................... and fits into everyday life. Designers often use stylish (4).................... . Besides solving problems, they also enjoy helping people.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. That medicine is really .... I got better in a short time.
   a) effective b) useless c) complex d) usual
2. Soha walked into the room wearing a very .... outfit.
   a) stylish b) careful c) tired d) loud
3. The engineers tested several .... before building the final product.
   a) words b) languages c) prototypes d) sentences
4. They decided to .... different ideas before choosing one final prototype.
   a) dream b) brainstorm c) think d) repair

5. We went to the museum. ...., we looked at the wonderful objects there.

a) After that **b)** After **c)** Beside **d)** Before

6. .... your password with others to stay safe online.

a) Not to share **b)** Don't share **c)** Share **d)** Not share

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Then) open your book. Next, read the passage.
2. .... (Touch) the objects inside the museum; it's forbidden.
3. .... (Keeping) quiet in the class.
4. Never .... (eating) too much food.
5. First I studied the lesson. .... (Than), I did the exercise.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A design sprint"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Can you open that window, Amr? (Open)

....

2. Never come to school late again, Sara. (be)

....

3. Do your homework and help your mom after that. (First)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

break-time corner (n)	ركن الاستراحة	newcomer (n)	وافد/قادم جديد
buddy (n)	صديق / رفيق (غير رسمية)	quit (v)	يستسلم/يستقيل
closely (adv)	عن قرب	welcomed (adj)	مرحب به
curious (adj)	فضولى		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

brainstorm ideas	يطرح أفكارًا بطريقة العصف الذهنى	see through their eyes	يرى من وجهة نظرهم
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسف/يشفق	write down	يدون
hard for	صعب بالنسبة لـ ...		

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture (n)	زراعة	inspired (adj)	مُلهم
dedicated (adj)	مُخلص/مُتفانٍ	pretend (ed) (v)	يتظاهر
drawings (n)	لوحات/رسومات	self-awareness (n)	وعى ذاتى
gardener (n)	بستانى/جناينى	sign (n)	لافتة
growth (n)	نمو/زيادة	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل
impact (n)	تأثير		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

honesty (n)	أمانة	learner (n)	متعلم
industry (n)	صناعة	trade (n)	تجارة
leadership (n)	قيادة	water (ed) (v)	يروى/يسقى

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

add art	يضيف فنًا	careful with	حذر مع
ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة	full of	ممتلئ بـ ...

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

pretend – felt – with – trade – at

1. I .... sorry for the new student because no one sat with him at lunch.
2. Egypt has a long history of .... with other countries.
3. Don't .... you didn't hear me.
4. You should be careful .... your words when talking to others.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
drawings (n)	لوحات/رسومات	paintings	لوحات
impact (n)	تأثير	effect	تأثير

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
aware (adj)	واعٍ	-ness	تحول الصفة الى اسم	awareness (n)	وعى
learn (v)	يتعلم	-er	تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل	learner (n)	متعلم

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

1 Have you ever tried to understand how someone else feels?

2 What can help a new student feel welcomed?

2. Read the following text. What's the main idea of the text? *SB Page 77*

See through Their Eyes



Omar loved designing things. One day, his teacher gave the class a challenge: "How can we make life easier for new students at school?" Omar had a few ideas, but his teacher stopped him. "First, see through their eyes," she said. "You need to understand how they feel." So Omar spent a day with a new student named Karim. He watched Karim closely. Karim didn't talk much. He looked confused and nervous. He didn't know where to sit or what to do during the break. Omar felt sorry. He remembered how hard it was when he was new. Later, Omar and his group wrote down everything they noticed. Then they brainstormed ideas. They created a "Welcome Buddy[1]" plan, a school map for new students, and a break-time corner for newcomers[2]. When they tested the idea, the new students smiled and felt more relaxed. Omar learned something important: **Good design starts with real people-and real feelings.**

(1) صديق/رفيق

(2) الطلاب الجدد

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What was Omar's challenge?

a) To make the break time longer. **b)** To help new students feel welcome.
c) To draw a school map. **d)** To ask new students questions.

2 What did Omar do first?

a) He started designing solutions. **b)** He spent time with a new student.
c) He asked the teacher. **d)** He started talking to his friends.

3 How did Karim feel?

a) Excited. **b)** Confident.
c) Nervous and confused. **d)** Angry and curious.

4 What did Omar learn at the end?

a) Design is hard for some people. **b)** People don't want help.
c) Good design starts with real people. **d)** We can't design solutions.

Read again and answer the following questions:

1 What did Omar do to understand Karim better? ....

2 What could you do to help a new student during the break? ....

The School Garden Project

Pre-reading questions:

1 What kind of growth do you think this chapter talks about-plants, people, or both?

....

2 What kind of impact can a school garden project have on a school or a person?

....

2. Read the following text. How was the garden project at the end?

SB Page 78

CHAPTER FIVE:

The Impact of Growth

At the end of the school year, Zeina looked around the garden and smiled. It started with just an idea. Now, it was a real space-full of green plants, colors, and life. But the biggest change wasn't in the garden. It was in the students. Students were now more careful with the school. They threw less trash on the ground and showed more respect for the environment. Nancy discovered a love for growing food and wanted to study agriculture[1]. Noha's signs and drawings made the garden beautiful and inspired others to add art around the school. Amal, who had almost quit[2], became one of the most dedicated[3] gardeners. She even came early to water the plants.



Zeina realized something important: being honest with others and with yourself helps people trust[4] you. She had always talked about her limits and didn't pretend to be perfect. That made her a better leader. The garden project had changed the way people treated their school and each other. It had helped students grow—not just as learners, but as people.

(1) الزراعة (2) يستسلم
(3) متفان (4) يثق

Practice **CHAPTER (5) EXERCISES**

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. Farmers work in the field of .... to grow food.
   a) agriculture   b) industry   c) trade   d) design
2. After the long day's work, he decided to .... the job and find another one.
   a) join   b) quit   c) enjoy   d) build
3. She is .... to her studies and does her homework on time.
   a) lazy   b) late   c) angry   d) dedicated
4. I .... my friends. I always ask them for advice.
   a) teach   b) trust   c) feel   d) blame

2 Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Zeina smiled because the garden was full of green plants and colors. (   )
2. The biggest change happened only in the garden. (   )
3. Students became more respectful to the environment. (   )
4. Amal wasn't interested in the garden project. (   )
5. The garden project helped students grow not just as learners, but as people. (   )

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What changes happened at the school because of the garden?

....

2. How did the project affect Nancy and Amal?

....

3. What did Zeina realize about honesty and leadership?

....

4. How did Zeina's limits help her become a better leader?

....

4 Critical thinking:

1. Why was this chapter called "The Impact of Growth"?

....

2. Why do you think people respect the honest?

....

3. Mention two things you think teamwork can teach students.

....

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSONS 3&4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

impact – agriculture – industry – of – finally – sign

At the end of the school year, Zeina smiled at the garden. It had started as just an idea, but now it was full (1) .... plants, colors, and life. The biggest (2) .... was on the students. They became more careful with the school and showed respect for the environment. Nancy wanted to study (3) ...., and Noha inspired others to add art. Amal, once ready to quit, became a dedicated gardener. (4) ...., the project helped everyone grow.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My uncle is an expert in modern .... techniques to help farmers plant enough healthy crops.
   a) geography b) culture c) history d) agriculture
2. During lunchtime, Laila always goes to the .... to eat her sandwich quietly.
   a) break-time corner b) library c) map d) read-time corner
3. I .... my best friend because she always tells the truth.
   a) hate b) trust c) think d) know
4. Hassan was .... at his friend's house because the family treated him like their son.
   a) welcomed b) curious c) close d) organized
5. All the students were excited to meet the .... who just moved to their school.
   a) newcomer b) idea c) step d) tip
6. Malak showed great .... when she helped her team win the game.
   a) trade b) disadvantage c) leadership d) industry
7. Zain learned that .... helps people trust and respect each other more.
   a) stress b) honesty c) growth d) impact
8. My father works in the car .... where they make car parts.
   a) agriculture b) industry c) leadership d) growth
9. Maya made beautiful .... of flowers and put them on the classroom wall.
   a) drawings b) agriculture c) honesty d) growth
10. Our teacher is .... to helping his students succeed.
   a) dedicated b) afraid c) lazy d) focused

TEST YOURSELF

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

with – full – dedicated – inspired – honesty – of

Zeina looked at the garden and smiled. It had started as an idea, but now it was (1)................. of green plants and life. The real impact, however, was on the students. They became more careful (2)................. the school and respected the environment. Nancy wanted to study agriculture, and Noha (3)................. others to add art. Amal, who nearly quit, became a (4)................. gardener. Zeina learned that being honest builds trust. The project helped students grow as responsible citizens.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Youssef didn't think his small idea would matter. But when his teacher asked the class how to make new students feel welcome, he raised his hand. "What if we made welcome kits with helpful things?" The teacher liked the idea, and the class added more: a map, a note, and a list of friendly students. Youssef helped design the bag. On the first day, a new student named Nour smiled when she got hers. Later, Nour told the class she felt happy and safe. Youssef saw that even small actions can change someone's day. He learned that when you try to see through others' eyes, you create kindness and care.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the passage mostly about?
   - **a)** A game Youssef played.
   - **b)** How a small idea helped a new student feel welcome.
   - **c)** How to write a list.
   - **d)** Nour's favorite color.
2. What was inside the welcome kits?
   - **a)** Snacks and toys.
   - **b)** A map, note, and list of friendly students.
   - **c)** Sports items.
   - **d)** Pencils and glue.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What idea did Youssef share?.................................
4. How do you think Nour felt when she got the kit? Why?.................................
5. What did Youssef learn from this experience?.................................
6. What other ideas could help new students feel safe and happy?.................................

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We need a/an .... team to finish this project on time.
   a) bored   b) dedicated   c) absent   d) weak
2. Yasmin is always careful .... her new phone when she plays games.
   a) at   b) with   c) for   d) on
3. My sister .... the plants and then played with her cat.
   a) washed   b) painted   c) watered   d) cleaned
4. Modern .... uses machines to build things very fast.
   a) leadership   b) industry   c) learner   d) trade
5. .... late, it's bad for your health.
   a) Sleep   b) Sleeping   c) Don't sleep   d) Sleeps
6. Hala, wash the rice, and .... boil it for 10 minutes.
   a) after   b) that   c) then   d) when

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Please, ... (not) park your car in front of my house.
2. .... (Getting) ready, Hana. We're leaving now.
3. .... (Then) do your homework. Next, watch TV.
4. Adel, ... (is) honest and always tell the truth.
5. .... (Firstly) I've finished my homework. Let's play computer games.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of designers"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (not) noisy Marwan. Your father is asleep.
2. Pick up that key and .... (to open) the door.
3. Amany, never .... (plays) in the street.

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY LESSONS 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

chart (n)	مخطط/رسم بيانى	hesitate (d) (v)	يتردد
effort (n)	مجهود	reminder chart (n)	جدول للتذكير

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

aged (adj)	يبلغ من العمر	process (n)	عملية
perfect = ideal (adj)	مثالى	logically (adv)	بشكل منطقى

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

build a prototype	يصنع نموذجًا أوليًا	make a model	يصنع نموذجًا
come up with	يبتكر (فكرة/خطة/حلًا)	make sense	يبدو منطقيًا
get better	يتحسن	series of steps	سلسلة من الخطوات
make a chart	يرسم مخططًا	worry about	يقلق على

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

about – at – hesitate – ideal

1 Sara didn't .... to help her friend when he was in trouble.

2 The synonym of "perfect" is ".....................".

3 I always worry .... my brother when he is late.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Definitions التعريفات

come up with	يتوصل إلى فكرة	to invent(1) or think of an idea or plan	(1) يخترع
make sense	يبدو منطقيًا	logically(2) correct; easy to understand	(2) بشكل منطقى
perfect	مثالى	as good as possible(3); ideal	
process	عملية	a series of steps or actions taken to achieve something	(3) بقدر الإمكان

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever solved a problem by trying different ideas and making changes? How did you do it?

SB page 80

Learning About Design Thinking



Amir Hi Magdy, do you know what design thinking is?

Magdy Not really. What is it?

Amir It's a way to solve problems by doing some steps. First, you must understand the users and what they need. This part might take some time, but it's important.

Magdy Okay, what comes next?

Amir Next, think of many ideas. Be creative and don't worry about being perfect.

Magdy Got it. Then?

Amir Then, you should make a simple model or drawing called a prototype.

Magdy Is it okay if it's not perfect?

Amir Yes! Design thinking is a process where you improve your prototype many times.

Magdy That makes sense. What happens after making the prototype?

Amir Finally, test it and ask people what they think. Then, fix it and make it better. Keep it practical and useful.

Magdy Thanks! So, first understand, then brainstorm, next make a prototype, and keep improving it.

Amir Exactly! If you do this, you might make something really great.

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What is the first step in the design thinking process?

....

2 Summarize the main steps of design thinking in the conversation.

....

3 Why do you think being practical is important when designing something?

....

Lesson 5

SB page 81

Work with a partner. Read the short conversation below, then switch roles.



Layla Do you know what design thinking is?

Omar A little bit. It's about solving problems, right?

Layla Yes! First, you need to understand the people who will use your idea.

Omar Okay, and then?

Layla Then you brainstorm, which means coming up with many creative ideas.

Omar Sounds fun!

Layla After that, build a simple prototype and test it.

Omar And if it doesn't work?

Layla That's okay. The process can be improved, so you try again till it gets better.

Omar Got it! Keep it **practical** and useful.

Lesson 6

SB page 82

Read and complete with sequence Adverbs.

Helping Students Remember Homework

Firstly, our group wants to solve the problem of students forgetting their homework. Our idea is to make a colorful homework reminder chart that students can keep in their desks. **Next,** we will test it by giving the chart to a group of students and asking them to use it for one week. **Then,** we will ask for feedback from the students and teachers. If students like it, we will print more charts. **Lastly,** if they don't, we can change the design or add space for parents' notes.

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What is the main idea of the text?

....

2 What tool does the group plan to use to help students remember their homework?

....

3 How will the group know if the chart is useful?

....

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analyzing · Evaluating · Creating

LESSONS 5&6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

take – prototype – First – then – of – do

Design thinking is a smart way to solve problems. (1)................., you try to understand what people need. This can (2)................. time, but it helps you make better things. Then, you think (3)................. many ideas and choose the best ones. After that, you make a simple model called a (4)................. . It doesn't have to be perfect. You test it, get opinions, and improve it. Step by step, you can make something really useful and great.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lara spent her weekend learning how to .... a prototype for her invention idea.
   a) destroy **b)** write **c)** build **d)** do
2. My grandfather .... seventy-five can still climb the stairs to his bedroom every night.
   a) hesitated **b)** aged **c)** arrived **d)** reminded
3. Fares showed real .... when he practiced piano for two hours every day.
   a) desk **b)** chart **c)** effort **d)** prototype
4. The doctor showed Rayan a/an .... with pictures of different healthy foods to eat.
   a) ticket **b)** desk **c)** effort **d)** chart
5. Dalia needs to come up .... a good idea for her science fair project tomorrow.
   a) on **b)** to **c)** for **d)** with
6. The information Nader gave us makes .... It's logically correct and easy to understand.
   a) science **b)** lens **c)** sense **d)** since
7. Amira always worries .... her little brother when he plays near the busy street.
   a) for **b)** about **c)** on **d)** with
8. Lara made a special .... to help her remember to water plants every day.
   a) book **b)** desk **c)** ticket **d)** reminder chart
9. Nelly did not .... to help her friend carry the heavy box of books.
   a) brainstorm **b)** hesitate **c)** feel **d)** state

Skills Bank Writing

How to write a review of a problem كيفية كتابة تقييم لمشكلة

1. What is a problem that some students face at school?
ما المشكلة التى يواجهها بعض الطلاب فى المدرسة؟

- Some students often forget to do their homework.

بعض الطلاب ينسون عمل الواجب المدرسى.

2. Why does this problem happen? **لماذا تحدث تلك المشكلة؟**

- This happens because they don't write down the homework tasks.

هذا يحدث لأنهم لا يدونون مهام الواجب المدرسى.

3. How can we solve this problem? **كيف يمكننا حل تلك المشكلة؟**

- A good solution is to use a homework reminder chart.

الحل الجيد هو استخدام لوحة/لافتة تذكير بالواجبات المنزلية.

4. What are the benefits of the solution? **ما الفوائد من وراء هذا الحل؟**

- Students can write what they need to do every day.

يمكن للطلاب أن يكتبوا ما يحتاجون عمله بشكل يومى.

5. How can teachers or parents help? **كيف يمكن للمعلمون وأولياء الأمور المساعدة؟**

- Teachers and parents can check the chart to help the student.

يمكن للمعلمون وأولياء الأمور أن يفحصوا الجدول لمساعدة الطلاب.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"A review of a problem"

We have a problem at school. Sometimes students forget to do their homework because they don't write it down or remember the teacher's instructions. This can be a big problem, especially when they have many subjects. One good way to solve this problem is by using a colorful homework reminder chart. Each student can keep this chart in their desk and write their homework tasks every day. The chart helps them remember what they need to do at home. Teachers and parents can also look at the chart to see if the student is organized. If the chart is helpful, more can be printed and used in the whole school. This simple tool can make homework easier for everyone.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Finish the following dialog:

Sama and Sara are talking about design thinking.

Sama : Hi Magdy, do you know what design thinking is?

Sara : (1).. . What is it?

Sama : It's a way to solve problems by doing some steps. First, you must understand the users and what they need.

Sara : (2)..?

Sama : Next, think of many ideas. Be creative and don't worry about being perfect.

Sara : Got it. Should I make a simple model or drawing?

Sama : (3).. .

Sara : Is it okay if it's not perfect?

Sama : (4)..! It's a process where you improve your prototype many times.

Sara : That makes sense. (5)..?

Sama : Finally, test it and ask people what they think. Then, fix it and make it better. Keep it practical and useful.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Then – First – reminder – remember – design – desks

Some students forget to do their homework. To help them, our group wants to make a colorful (1) .... chart. Students can keep it in their (2) .... and use it every day. We will test it for one week with a small group of students. (3) ...., we will ask students and teachers what they think. If they like it, we will make more charts. If not, we will try to improve the (4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Don't .... to call me if you have a problem. We can solve it together.
   a) hesitate b) dare c) trust d) think
2. Ritaj and her brother wanted to .... a model of their dream house together.
   a) cry b) sleep c) run d) make
3. The creative students at school decided to .... a prototype of their dream playground.
   a) sleep b) think c) build d) run

4. Menna always worries .... her grandmother's health when she doesn't answer her calls.

a) for b) with c) about d) on

5. We had lunch. .... we went for a walk.

a) On one hand b) Next c) The first d) Late

6. .... your phone in class.

a) Use b) Don't use c) Using d) Used

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Never .... (are) rude to others. Try to be polite.
2. I wrote my essay. .... (After), I took a break.
3. .... (Didn't) play in the street. It's dangerous.
4. He finished his work. .... (Than) he went home.
5. .... (Not arrive) at school late again.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of a problem"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Are) active and get up early.
2. .... (Do) make mistakes or you'll get low grades.
3. Samir, ... (showed) me what you have done.

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 5 Assessment

SB page 83

A Vocabulary

1 Read and complete using words from the box:

define – practical – view

1. In my point of .... Egypt is the best.
2. Ali's solutions were .... He could solve the problem.
3. To .... means to clearly state the problem you want to solve.

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... hesitate. Trust your abilities.
   a) Aren't b) Doesn't
   c) Isn't d) Don't
2. .... your time and effort.
   a) Saving b) To save
   c) Saves d) Save
3. My grandpa .... aged 82.
   a) die b) dies
   c) dying d) died

C Writing

3 Write a short paragraph of about (110) words about the process of making a cup of tea using sequence adverbs.

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 Review

Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	زراعة
brainstorm (ed) (v)	يعصف ذهنيًا بالأفكار
chart (n)	مخطط/رسم بيانى
closely (adv)	عن قرب
complex (adj)	معقد
curious (adj)	فضولى
dedicated (adj)	مُخلص/مُتفان
design sprint (n)	ورشة التصميم السريعة
design thinking (n)	التفكير التصميمى
designer (n)	مصمم
drawings (n)	لوحات/رسومات
effective (adj)	فعال
effort (n)	مجهود
gardener (n)	بستانى/جانينى
growth (n)	نمو/زيادة
hesitate (d) (v)	يتردد
inspired (adj)	مُلهم
need (n)	حاجة
newcomer (n)	وافد/قادم جديد
point of view (n)	وجهة نظر
practical (adj)	عملى
pretend (ed) (v)	يتظاهر
problem-solver (n)	حلال مشاكل
prototype (n)	نموذج أولى/مبدئى
reminder chart (n)	جدول للتذكير
schedule (n)	جدول/خطة زمنية
self-awareness (n)	وعى ذاتى
stylish (adj)	أنيق/راقٍ/عصرى
suitable (adj)	مناسب
welcomed (adj)	مرحب به

Language

1. Sequence Adverbs

ظروف الترتيب الزمنى

1. **First / Firstly → To begin with**

   e.g. First, wash your hands.

2. **Next / Then / After that**

   e.g. Then, cut the vegetables.

3. **Finally / Lastly / In conclusion → To end**

   e.g. Finally, serve the food.

2. Imperatives

صيغ الأمر

1. **Positive Imperatives:**

   e.g. Open your book.

2. **Negative Imperatives:**

   e.g. Don't talk during the lesson.

Skills

1. Expressing ideas clearly when presenting a design solution

A: What do you think a "designer" mainly does?

B: A designer imagines and creates things that solve problems.

A: Can you name some everyday objects that are well-designed?

B: Sure! These objects include a backpack, a smartphone, and a lunchbox.

A: What does it mean to think like a designer?

B: It means caring about people's needs and exploring ideas.

A: How can thinking like a designer help people?

B: It helps people solve problems better and express their ideas clearly.

A: Why is expressing ideas clearly so important when presenting a design?

B: Clear communication helps others understand the function of a design.

2. Asking and answering about "Design Sprint"

A: What do you think a "design sprint" is?

B: It is a short, focused process where a team works together to solve a problem.

A: How long do you think it takes to solve a design problem?

B: A design sprint usually takes about five days.

A: Have you ever worked on a project where you had to solve a problem quickly?

B: Yes! I once worked on a school project where we had only two days to design a poster.

A: Do you prefer working in a team or individually when solving problems?

B: I prefer working in a team because we can share ideas and help each other.

A: What do you think is the hardest part of a Design Sprint?

B: The hardest part is choosing the best idea quickly.

General Exercises on Unit 5

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Mahmoud is building a robot hand that can hold small things.

Sara : Mahmoud, what's your plan for the science fair?
Mahmoud : (1) ....
Sara : That's fantastic! How did you think of that idea?
Mahmoud : I saw someone drop things a lot, so I wanted to help.
Sara : (2) .... ?
Mahmoud : I'll explain what each part does and why it's helpful.
Sara : Did you test it first?
Mahmoud : (3) ...., and I'll show how it picks things up during my talk.
Sara : (4) .... ?
Mahmoud : Yes, I added labels to help people follow.
Sara : (5) .... !

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

test – Then – for – comfort – First – get

Being a designer means solving problems and imagining new ways to help others. In the beginning, you must understand the people you're designing for. (1) ...., using design thinking, you organize your schedule and start planning your model. Later on, you (2) .... your ideas and offer a stylish solution that matches their needs. Designers care about (3) ...., weight, and how every object works. Besides that, they need to interact with others and learn from different styles. Thinking this way helps you build important things (4) .... everyone—not just today, but for life.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Sarah was a talented young girl who loved to draw and paint. She often spent her afternoons in a small garden near her home. It was filled with colorful flowers, butterflies and birds singing in the trees. Sarah was amazed by the beauty of the place and decided to visit it every day. She used to go there, sit under a tree and draw beautiful pictures about nature.

One day, her school organized an art competition, and Sarah decided to participate. She chose to paint a landscape of the River Nile with tall palm trees on its side. Sarah worked hard on her painting, making sure every detail was perfect.

On the day of the competition her artwork was announced the winner, and she won first place. She was overjoyed and felt proud of her achievement. Her friends and family congratulated her. Sarah realized that hard work always leads to success. She decided to continue and dreamed of becoming a famous artist one day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The passage is telling us about ....
   - a) a competition
   - b) a beautiful garden
   - c) nature
   - d) a talented girl
2. Sarah felt .... of herself.
   - a) creative
   - b) proud
   - c) amazed
   - d) famous

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Sarah usually spend her afternoons?

   ....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "its" refer to?

   ....

5. Do you expect Sarah will be a famous artist in the future?

   ....

6. Summarize the third paragraph in TWO lines.

   ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yassin will .... a special birthday invitation for his party.
   - a) design
   - b) test
   - c) organize
   - d) offer
2. The .... showed us how to draw beautiful cartoon characters.
   - a) designer
   - b) building
   - c) model
   - d) problem-solver
3. We all have different .... on what makes a good leader.
   - a) colors
   - b) points of view
   - c) languages
   - d) luggage

4. Yasmin was .... in helping her grandmother bake delicious apple pies.
a) complex b) impossible c) effective d) stylish
5. First, ... the app to open it.
a) taps b) tap c) to tap d) tapped
6. .... forget to connect your headphones.
a) No b) Didn't c) Don't d) Not

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Then), prepare the ingredients. Next, wash your hands. SB
2. Please, ... (to write) your answer on the sheet. SB
3. .... (Didn't) go outside before doing your homework. SB
4. .... (Start), I made a sandwich for breakfast.
5. Wael, ... (does) the homework now.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who wanted to study agriculture? ....
2. Do you think people respect the honest? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina learned that honesty helps people .... you.
a) fear b) trust c) ignore d) fight
4. Noha's signs and drawings inspired others to add more .... to the school.
a) art b) books c) windows d) lights

E Writing

7 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Ahmed to tell him about a design project you did. Your name is Amr.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 6

WHY DO WE LIKE STORIES?



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify main ideas and details in informational and fictional texts about stories.
- Understand the elements of a story (setting, conflict, climax, resolution).
- Recognize the purpose of stories in shaping thinking and values.

Listening

- Understand main ideas and details in conversations about stories.
- Identify how stories can help in real life situations through listening tasks.

Speaking

- Retell stories using sequence words clearly.
- Share opinions on the value of stories and what students have learned from them.
- Present a personal story clearly and confidently.

Writing

- Write a short narrative story using correct sequence words and tenses.
- Use target vocabulary related to stories in writing.
- Plan and structure stories with a clear beginning, middle, and end.

Language

- Use reported speech to retell what others have said.
- Apply the present simple and past simple accurately in storytelling.
- Use sequence words to structure oral and written narratives.

STUDY

▶ LESSON 1 : The Power of Stories — SB pages 86-87

▶ LESSON 2 : The Story That Helped Me — SB pages 88-89

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

aware (adj)	واعٍ/ مدرك	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
conflict (n)	صراع	lifestyle (n)	أسلوب الحياة
critically (adv)	بشكل نقدى	moral (adj/n)	أخلاقى/مغزى
emotional (adj)	عاطفى	power (n)	قوة/طاقة/سُلطة
emotionally (adv)	عاطفيًا	social (adj)	اجتماعى
empathy (n)	تعاطُف/مواساة	spark (ed) (v)	يُشعل/يُثير/يُطلِق
imagination (n)	خيال	various (adj)	متنوع/مختلف

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

awareness (n)	وعى/إدراك	mentally (adv)	ذهنى/عقلى/نفسى
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	mind (n)	عقل
enter (ed) (v)	يدخل	rule (n)	قاعدة
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلى	thoughtful (adj)	مُتفكِّر/عطوف
story (n)	قصة	type/kind (n)	نوع
fact (n)	حقيقة	valuable (adj)	قيم
memorize (d) (v)	يَحفَظ		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

for fun	للمتعة	go through	يمر بـ/يَتفحّص
respond to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ	expose to	يُعرض لـ
spark our imagination	تُثير خيالنا	point of view	وجهة نظر
think about	يفكر فى		

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
increase	يزيد	reduce	يقلل

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

increase – conflict – for – by

1 Sara helped solve the .... between her friends by listening to both sides.
2 We played online games .... fun after finishing our homework.
3 We need to .... our efforts if we want to finish the project on time.

LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

debate (n)	مناظرة/نقاش	recommendation (n)	توصية/ترشيح
honestly (adv)	بِصِدق/بأمانة	stuck (adj)	عالِق/محبوس
influence (d) (v)	يؤثر على	unfair (adj)	غير عادل/ظالم

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

argue (d) (v)	يجادل	narrative story (n)	قصة سردية
argument (n)	جدال	shout (ed) (v)	يصرخ
deep breath (n)	نفس عميق	strongly (adv)	بقوة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

agree/disagree with	يتفق/لا يتفق مع	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
from the beginning	من البداية	practice the speech	يتدرب على الخطاب
get angry	يغضب	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
go on a journey	يذهب فى رحلة	win arguments	يفوز فى الجدال

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

out – stay – on – argument

1 Hamza had an .... with his brother about which movie to watch.
2 Next summer, we will go .... a journey to explore Ancient Egyptian temples.
3 It's important to .... calm when you face a difficult problem.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

aware	واعٍ	knowing or noticing[1] something
critically	بشكل نقدى	in a careful and thoughtful[2] way; not just accepting things as they are
spark	يُشعل/يُثير/يُطلِق	to start or cause[3] something to happen
moral	أخلاقى/مغزى	is related to[4] what is right or wrong in behavior
empathy	تعاطف	the ability[5] to understand and share someone else's feelings
various	متنوع	different kinds or types; many and not the same

(1) يلاحظ
(2) مُتفكِّر
(3) يسبب
(4) متعلق بـ
(5) القدرة

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها
introduce (v)	يقدم	present	يقدم
various (adj)	مُتَنَوِّع/مُخْتَلِف	different/several	مختلف/عديد
respond to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ	reply to	يرد على

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
imagine (v)	يتخيل	-ation	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	imagination (n)	خيال
emotion (n)	عاطفة	-al	تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى صفة	emotional (adj)	عاطفى
vary (v)	يتنوع	-ous		various (adj)	مُتَنَوِّع/مُخْتَلِف
enjoy (v)	يستمتع بـ ...	-able		enjoyable (adj)	ممتع
thought (n)	فكر	-ful		thoughtful (adj)	مُتفكِّر/عطوف

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	fair (adj)	عادل/منصف	تعطى عكس المعنى	unfair (adj)	غير عادل/ظالم

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

1 Is reading stories just for fun? Why or Why not?

2 Describe a time when a story helped you see a problem in a new way.

Read the following text. What do stories help us develop? SB page 86

Stories Shape our Thinking



Reading stories can greatly improve the way we think and understand the world around us. Through stories, we enter the minds of different characters, face their challenges, and see how they respond to difficult situations. This allows us to explore various(1) types of problems—emotional, social, or even moral—without having to go through them ourselves.

Stories also introduce us to different points of view(2), cultures, and lifestyles. As we read, we begin to develop empathy(3) and learn that problems can have more than one solution.

Seeing how characters solve conflicts(4) or make decisions helps us think about our own lives and think critically(5) about our choices.

Moreover, stories spark(6) our imagination and make learning more enjoyable. We often remember lessons better when they are part of a story. That's why many of us love reading stories—they entertain us, teach us important life skills, and help us grow mentally and emotionally. In the end, reading stories is not just fun; it's also a powerful way to become wiser and more aware(7) of the world.

(1) متنوع
(2) وجهات نظر
(3) تعاطف
(4) صراعات
(5) بشكل نقدي
(6) يشعل/يثير/يطلق
(7) على دراية

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What is the benefit of reading stories? ……………………………………

2 How do stories increase our awareness? ……………………………………

3 Why do many people enjoy reading stories? ……………………………………

4 In your opinion, what is the most valuable lesson a person can learn from reading stories? ……………………………………

5 How does reading stories help people become more understanding of others? ……………………………………

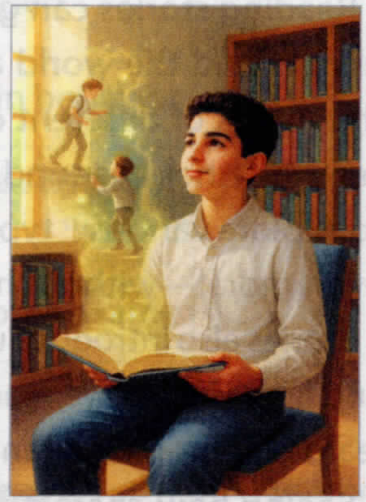
Pre-listening questions:

1 Do you remember a story you have read? What was it about? ....

2 What moral have you learned from it?

....

Listen to a conversation between Ali and Omar. *SB page 88*



Omar Hey Ali, you looked really calm during the class debate[1] today. I thought you'd be nervous about speaking up.

Ali Honestly, I was nervous at first. But I remembered a story I read last month that helped me.

Omar Really? What was it?

Ali It was a narrative story where the main character stayed calm and respectful[2] even when people were being unfair. That stuck with me.

Omar So how did that help you today?

Ali Well, during the debate, someone strongly disagreed with me. Normally, I might get upset. But I took a deep breath and responded calmly.

Omar That's smart. So, reading that story actually helped you in real life.

Ali Exactly. It taught me that staying respectful and calm can make your argument stronger. Stories can really teach you more than you expect.

Omar I guess I need to read more! Do you have any recommendations[3]?

(1) مناظرة

(2) محترم

(3) توصيات

Post-listening questions:

SB

1 What helped Ali stay calm during the debate?

a) His teacher's advice. b) A story he read.

c) His friend's support. d) He practiced the speech at home.

2 What lesson did Ali learn from the story?

a) To ignore others. b) To avoid speaking.

c) To stay calm and respectful. d) To shout louder in arguments.

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 240-241 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
go into	يدخل	....	fair	عادل	....
improve	يطور	....	similar	متشابه	....
strong	قوى	....	unkind	غير عطوف	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

Reading stories can greatly improve the way we think and understand the world around us. Through stories, we enter the minds of different characters, face their challenges, and see how they respond to difficult situations.

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. (مهارة إعطاء عنوان مناسب للقطعة)

....

....

2. What does the underlined word "their" refer to? (فهم ما تشير إليه كلمة)

....

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Stories introduce us to different points of view, cultures, and lifestyles.

- تعرفنا القصص على وجهات نظر، وثقافات، وأنماط حياة مختلفة. ☐
- تتقدم القصص أمام وجهات نظر، وثقافات، وأنماط حياة مشابهة. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- أخبر أيمن ردينة أنها تستطيع الذهاب للتسوق.

☐ Ayman told Radina if she had finished shopping.

☐ Ayman told Radina that she could go shopping.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSON 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fun – shop – aware – shape – spark – enter

Stories have the power to take us to new places. They help us become more (1).................... of how others live and feel. When I read about someone who helped their village, I wanted to do something good too. My teacher said that stories could introduce important lessons in (2).................... ways. A good story can (3).................... ideas in our imagination and change how we see the world. They (4).................... how we think and feel about life.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nour tried .... sports activities before deciding that swimming was her favorite.
   a) valuable b) various c) thoughtful d) fair
2. The smart girl thinks .... about each math problem before writing her final answer.
   a) kindly b) emotionally c) critically d) physically
3. A good story often has a clear .... that teaches a lesson about right and wrong.
   a) opinion b) ending c) help d) moral
4. Good citizens should be .... the challenges that face community
   a) different from b) aware of c) weaker than d) filled with
5. The teacher encouraged students to use their .... when writing their creative stories.
   a) imagination b) debate c) lifestyle d) question
6. Rami's success will .... motivation in his friends to work harder in school.
   a) memorize b) spark c) enter d) entertain
7. To feel .... for a friend, you might imagine how they feel after losing their hope.
   a) ability b) cleverness c) empathy d) pride
8. The doctor says sunlight can expose skin .... harmful burning damage.
   a) at b) with c) to d) for
9. Basel learns magic tricks .... fun to surprise his family.
   a) for b) by c) on d) in
10. A disagreement between two people or groups is called a/an ....
    a) discussion b) idea c) solution d) conflict

LESSON 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unfair – truth – strongly – fair – honesty – true

I read an amazing story last week. It was about (1)............................ . The main character, Cheng, always tells the (2)............................, so the king trusted him (3)...................... . One day, the king wanted Cheng to blame a farmer for destroying his garden, but Cheng knew that the farmer didn't do it. He told the king that it was (4)......................... to blame someone for something he didn't do. The king smiled and said, "You are honest, Cheng. I trust you even more now."

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The students had a long .... about which movie to watch during their free time.
   a) fact b) debate c) match d) influence
2. Rawan told her mother .... that she had broken the chair.
   a) mentally b) strongly c) honestly d) critically
3. After the ...., both children felt sorry and decided to say sorry to each other.
   a) recommendation b) agreement c) argument d) race
4. Stories about heroes can .... children to be brave and help other people.
   a) influence b) share c) shout d) memorize
5. Waleed followed his brother's .... and started learning how to play the guitar.
   a) address b) debate c) argument d) recommendation
6. I was late because I was .... in a very crowded street; I couldn't move for a while.
   a) unfair b) aware c) stuck d) moral
7. Youssef felt it was .... when he got blamed for something he didn't do.
   a) moral b) various c) unfair d) fair
8. Habiba decided to repeat her exciting adventure story .... the beginning to her little sister.
   a) of b) from c) at d) on
9. Malak told her brother that they would .... on a journey together.
   a) make b) take c) go d) have
10. Why are you stressed? You need to .... calm to find a solution for the problem.
    a) make b) do c) stay d) go

C Language

Reportedspeech الكلام غير المباشر (المنقول)

- الكلام المباشر "Direct speech" هو الكلام الذى يقوله الشخص بنفسه، ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين " علامتى التنصيص ":

e.g. • The governor said, "The park **is** the biggest in Egypt."
• "The building is on fire!" said a witness.

- الكلام غير المباشر "Indirect/Reported speech" هو الكلام المنقول على لسان شخص آخر، ولا يوضع بين علامتى التنصيص.

e.g. • The governor said **(that)** the park was the biggest in Egypt.
• A witness said **(that)** the building was on fire.

How to change from direct to indirect: كيفية تحويل الجملة من المباشر إلى غير المباشر

Statements: الجمل الخبرية

ولتحويل الجملة الخبرية من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر، هناك عدة قواعد يجب اتباعها:

1. نحول فعل القول كالآتى:

say/says	> say/says	say to/says to + مفعول	> tell/tells + مفعول
said	> said	said to + مفعول	> told + مفعول

2. نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ (that)، ويمكن الاستغناء عنها كالآتى:

المتحدث + said + (that) + فاعل + فعل ماضٍ ....

e.g. • Kamal said that he would travel to Aswan the following week.

المتحدث + told + مفعول (مخاطب) + (that) + فاعل + فعل ماضٍ ....

e.g. • Manar **told** me that she was going to watch a film that night.

3. نغير الضمائر حسب المتحدث والمخاطب كالآتى:

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
I	he/she	me	him/her	my	his/her
You	I/we	you	me/us	your	my/our
We	they	us	them	our	their

❹ يتم تغيير الروابط الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
tomorrow	the following day	last (week)	the (week) before
yesterday	the day before	ago	before
tonight	that night	this	that
now	then	these	those
today	that day	here	there

❺ نغير الأزمنة إلى الماضى الأبعد كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect
Present simple: مضارع بسيط e.g. • He said, "I like fish."	**Past simple:** ماضٍ بسيط • He said that he liked fish.
Present continuous: مضارع مستمر e.g. • Marwa said, "I'm talking to Sara."	**Past continuous:** ماضٍ مستمر • Marwa said that she was talking to Sara.
Present perfect: مضارع تام e.g. • "I've ironed the skirt," said Sara.	**Past perfect:** ماضٍ تام • Sara said that she had ironed the skirt.
Past simple: ماضٍ بسيط e.g. • Ali said, "I arrived late."	**Past perfect:** ماضٍ تام • Ali said that he had arrived late. **Past simple:** ماضٍ بسيط • Ali said that he arrived late.
can - will - may - shall - must e.g. • "I'll see you later," he said.	**could - would - might - should - had to** • He said that he would see me later.
(am/ is/ are) going to: e.g. • "I'm going to learn French," she said.	**(was/were) going to:** • She said that she was going to learn French.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Basmala said that she .... (is) going to visit her grandmother.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لأن فى غير المباشر نستخدم فعلًا ماضيًا.

2 My father .... (said) me that I had to work hard.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (told) لأنه يوجد مفعول (مخاطب).

لاحظ

- إذا كان المخاطب داخل الأقواس نجعله بعد فعل القول عند التحويل إلى غير المباشر.
- إذا كان فعل القول بعد الجملة الخبرية نجعله قبلها عند التحويل إلى غير المباشر.

e.g. • "I'm going to travel to London next month, Adel," said Amani.
• Amani told Adel that she was going to travel to London the following month.

- لا يتم تغيير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة ثابتة.

e.g. • "The Earth goes around the sun," said the teacher to the students.
• The teacher told the students that the Earth goes around the sun.

- لايتم تغيير الأزمنة والروابط الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا أو قيل منذ فترة قصيرة.
say/tell/says/tells/has/said/told/have said/told

e.g. • Adel says, "I'll see you tomorrow".
• Adel says **that** he will see me tomorrow.

لاحظ

عند التحويل من غير المباشر إلى المباشر نقوم بعكس الخطوات السابقة كما فى الأمثلة التالية:

1. The newsreader **said** that a new sports center was opening **that** weekend.
   - The newsreader said, "A new sports center is opening this weekend."

تم:
- وضع الجملة بين علامات التنصيص. • ترك فعل القول كما هو.
- تحويل (was opening) ← (is opening). • تحويل (that) ← (this).

2. Hassan's mum **told** me that there would be a lot of rain **that day**.
   - Hassan's mum said to me, "There will be a lot of rain today."

تم:
- وضع الجملة بين علامات التنصيص. • تحويل فعل القول (told) ← (said to).
- تحويل (would) ← (will). • تحويل (that day) ← (today).

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Heba .... (said) me that it had been a busy day.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (told) لأنه يوجد مفعول (مخاطب).

2 Nadia said that she .... (thinks) the film was exciting.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (thought) لأنه فى غير المباشر نستخدم فعلًا ماضيًا.

3 Tamer said, "I .... (was) flying to London next Monday."
- الإجابة الصحيحة (am) لأن الجملة فى المباشر لوجود علامات التنصيص.

Practice

LANGUAGE EXERCISE

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hamza said he .... visit us again soon.
   a) would b) had c) will d) was
2. Ramy .... his father was happy to hear about his success.
   a) told b) will say c) saying d) said
3. I .... him I had never eaten sushi before.
   a) say b) told c) said d) explained
4. I told my son that I .... him a car the next day.
   a) would buy b) is buying c) will buy d) bought
5. Mona said that she .... her clothes then.
   a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) has cleaned d) would clean
6. My boss told me that I .... to Paris on business the following week.
   a) am going b) would go c) will go d) had gone
7. Hany said that he .... his wallet the day before.
   a) was b) losing lost c) had lost d) is losing
8. Adel said, "I .... to London a month ago."
   a) had traveled b) traveled c) would travel d) will travel
9. I told Yara that I .... my driving test.
   a) passes b) passing c) had passed d) was passed
10. They said they .... for the guests at that moment.
    a) waited b) had waited c) were waiting d) are waiting
11. Adel told me that mango juice .... his favorite drink.
    a) doesn't b) has been c) was d) be
12. He said he .... to do his homework.
    a) wanting b) wanted c) want d) wants
13. Yousra .... me that she would travel the next day.
    a) said b) told c) invited d) was saying
14. She told me that they had bought a new flat ....
    a) tomorrow b) the next day c) then d) the previous week
15. My son told me just now that he .... with his friends the next day.
    a) will travel b) would travel c) had traveled d) travels

PRACTICE MORE

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Adel .... (told) that he was busy.
2. The man .... (said) us that the football tournament would start.
3. Sama told Mona that she didn't feel better .... (now).
4. Heba said that they .... (don't) go to the museum on Tuesday.
5. The teacher said that those books .... (are) very interesting.
6. Mariam .... (told) that she wanted to go to the new water park.
7. The governor said that the park .... (be) the biggest in Egypt.
8. Maher told us that he .... (buy) a new car the week before.
9. Manal .... (said) me, "I have seen this film."
10. They told us that they were going to the beach .... (tomorrow).
11. Mona said she .... (be) tired that day.
12. Mariam said that she .... (is) ill the day before.
13. Huda told me that she was studying .... (now).
14. Ali said that .... (these) books had been very interesting.
15. He .... (tells) me that his best friend at school was Ahmed.
16. Amr told me that he .... (travel) abroad the next week.
17. They said that their team .... (win) the match the day before.
18. He told me that it .... (will be) a holiday the next day.
19. Sagda said that she .... (has) met the new manager.

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

SB

1. Ayman said Rodayna she could go shopping. (...................)
2. Dr. Salwa said I lived in Sohag two years before. (...................)
3. The students said they will go on a journey to Dahab in Sinai. (...................)
4. Hana said that she is studying science then. (...................)
5. Sagda said that she has met the new manager. (...................)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D **Skills**

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Talking about the importance of reading stories

الحديث عن أهمية قراءة القصص

online

Why is reading stories important?
لماذا تُعَدُّ قراءة القصص مهمة؟

Because it helps us grow emotionally and mentally.
لأنها تساعدنا على النمو العاطفي والعقلي.

What is the most valuable lesson a person can learn from reading stories?
ما أهم درس يمكن أن يتعلّمه الشخص من قراءة القصص؟

One of the most valuable lessons is learning to be kind and fair to others.
من أهم الدروس هو تعلُّم أن نكون طيبين وعادلين مع الآخرين.

What do you enjoy most about stories?
ما أكثر شيء تستمتع به في القصص؟

I enjoy learning from characters' mistakes and discovering new ideas.
أستمتع بتعلم الدروس من أخطاء الشخصيات واكتشاف أفكار جديدة.

Can stories change the way we think? How?
هل يمكن للقصص أن تغير طريقتنا في التفكير؟ كيف؟

Yes, stories can open our minds to new ideas.
نعم، يمكن للقصص أن تفتح عقولنا على أفكار جديدة.

What kind of stories do you like the most? Why?
ما نوع القصص الذي تُفضّله أكثر؟ ولماذا؟

I like stories about brave characters who solve problems and help others.
أحب القصص التي تتحدث عن شخصيات شجاعة تحل المشكلات وتساعد الآخرين.

Do stories help you improve your language? How?
هل تساعدك القصص في تحسين لغتك؟ كيف؟

Yes, stories help me to express ideas clearly.
نعم، القصص تساعدني في التعبير عن الأفكار بوضوح.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Ali and Sara are talking about the importance of stories.**

Ali : Do you like reading stories, Sara?

Sara : (1).. . I love it so much.

Ali : (2)..?

Sara : Because they help me imagine new worlds.

Ali : (3)..?

Sara : I like adventure stories.

Ali : Do they make you feel excited?

Sara : (4).. . I feel like I'm inside the story.

Ali : Can stories change the way we think?

Sara : (5)... . Stories can open our minds to new ideas.

2 Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Lina and Omar are talking about their favorite stories.**

Lina : Hi Omar! What's your favorite story?

Omar : Hi Lina! (1).. . It's a nice story.

Lina : Oh, I like Cinderella, too. (2)..?

Omar : Yes, I like happy endings. She becomes a princess.

Lina : Do you like the movie or the book more?

Omar : (3).. . What about you?

Lina : I like both. I read the book many times.

Omar : That's great! (4)..?

Lina : Yes, I like "The Lion King," too. Did you read it?

Omar : (5)... . It's a fun and sad story at the same time.

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about the importance of Reading Stories.

كيفية الكتابة عن أهمية قراءة القصص.

1. Why is reading stories important? لماذا قراءة القصص مهمة؟

- Reading stories is important because it helps us learn in a fun way.

قراءة القصص مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على التعلم بطريقة ممتعة.

2. What do you learn when you read stories? ماذا تتعلم عندما تقرأ قصة؟

- Some stories teach us to be brave, honest, and kind.

بعض القصص تعلمنا أن نكون شجعان، صادقين، عطوفين.

3. How can reading stories help your imagination?
كيف يمكن لقراءة القصص أن تساعد خيالك؟

- Reading makes our imagination grow stronger. القراءة تجعل خيالنا أقوى.

4. What lessons can stories teach us? ما الدروس التى يمكن أن نتعلمها من القصص؟

- Stories also teach us facts and ideas about the world.

تعلمنا القصص حقائق وأفكارًا عن العالم.

5. What do you enjoy most about reading stories?
ما أكثر شىء تستمتع به فى قراءة القصص؟

- Reading stories is fun and helps me become a better, smarter person.

فى الختام، قراءة القصص ممتعة وتساعدنى على أن أصبح شخصًا أفضل وأكثر ذكاءً.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"The Importance of Reading Stories"

Reading stories is very important for children and adults. When we read stories, we learn many new things in fun and exciting ways. Stories help us learn new words and understand how to use them. They also teach us about different people, places, and cultures. Some stories show us how to be kind, brave, and honest. Others help us learn from the mistakes of the characters. When we read, we use our imagination to picture what is happening. This makes our minds grow stronger. Reading also helps us become better at writing and thinking. In conclusion, reading stories is not just fun—it helps us become smarter, kinder, and more creative people.

1 Finish the following dialog:

Youssef and Mona are talking about the importance of stories.

Youssef : Why are stories important, Mona?

Mona : (1) ....

Youssef : (2) .... ?

Mona : I mean some stories teach us history or science in a fun way.

Youssef : Can stories help with school subjects?

Mona : (3) .... They make learning fun and easy.

Youssef : Do you remember a story that taught you something?

Mona : (4) .... I learned about space from a story last week.

Youssef : (5) .... ?

Mona : Of course, I recommend you the story of *The Lion and the Mouse*.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

could – introduce – aware – sparked – entered – introduced

One story that helped me was *The Lion and the Mouse*. It made me more (1) .... of how even small acts of kindness can be powerful. My teacher said the story (2) .... an important lesson about helping others. It showed that even a little mouse (3) .... help a strong lion. I thought deeply and tried to think about how I treat others. The story (4) .... my empathy and helped me think more critically about my actions.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Salma's .... helped her create wonderful stories.
   a) laziness b) future c) imagination d) climate
2. To be good at English, you need to .... a lot of vocabulary.
   a) enter b) entertain c) spark d) memorize
3. Lara thought it was .... that her brother got more candy than she did.
   a) moral b) unfair c) aware d) various
4. I .... believed that all children should have the chance to go to school.
   a) critically b) strongly c) quickly d) shortly

5. Omar .... that he would come late that day.

a) asked b) said to c) said d) told

6. Manal .... me, "I have seen this film".

a) said b) says c) tell d) said to

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mona said that she .... (be) tired that day.
2. The taxi driver told us that we .... (will) arrive at the mall in thirty minutes.
3. Sama told Mona that she didn't feel better .... (now).
4. Heba said that they .... (don't) go to the museum on Tuesday.
5. He .... (tells) me that his best friend at school was Ahmed.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A story changed your thinking"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. "Omar went to Luxor yesterday," Mazin said to Alaa. (told)

....

2. Aliaa told Maha that she was doing her homework then. (said to)

....

3. "I'll arrive late this evening," Hady said. (that)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

STUDY

- **LESSON 3 :** Elements of a Story — SB pages 90-91
- **LESSON 4 :** Story Time — SB pages 92-93

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

beak (n)	منقار	fox (n)	ثعلب
catch (v)	يمسك	looks (n)	مَظْهر/شكل
clever (adj)	ذكى/ماهر/ماكر	sweet (adj)	عذب/لَطيف/حلو
crow (n)	غُراب	well-known (adj)	معروف/مشهور
element (n)	عنصر		
Types of stories أنواع القصص			
adventure	مغامرة	folk	شعبية
comic	كوميدى	historical	تاريخية
fables	خرافات	non-fiction	واقعية
fiction	خيال		
Story elements عناصر القصة			
characters	الشخصيات	solution	الحل/نهاية الصراع
conflict	الصراع	setting	الإطار الزمنى والمكانى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

as soon as (conj)	بمجرد أنْ	humor (n)	فكاهة/دعابة
beanstalk (n)	ساق الفاصولياء	imaginary (adj)	خيالى
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	smile (d) (v)	يبتسم
details (n)	تفاصيل	story map (n)	خريطة القصة
event (n)	حدث	tale (n)	حكاية
forest (n)	غابة	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Prepositions & Language Expressions حروف الجر والتعبيرات اللغوية

based on	قائم/مبنى على	run away	يهرب
fall down	يقع/يسقط لأسفل	take turns	يتناوب/يأخذ دوره
look down	ينظر لأسفل	once upon a time	كان يا ما كان
make up	يؤلف		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
fall	يقع	fell	fallen
retell	يروى (القصة) مرة أخرى	retold	retold
catch	يمسك	caught	caught

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
true/real	حقيقى	untrue/unreal	غير حقيقى

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – for – take – fiction

1 I'm sure .... helps me imagine new worlds and exciting adventures.

2 The movie was based .... a true story about a brave girl.

3 My brother and I .... turns tidying the room every day.

LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

ambition (n)	طُموح	president (n)	رئيس
bravery (n)	شجاعة	strength (n)	قوة
courage (n)	شجاعة	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
determination (n)	إصرار/تصميم	symbol (n)	رمز

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

especially (adv)	خصوصًا	swing (n)	أرجوحة
scary (adj)	مخيف/مرعب		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن بـ ...	toward	نحو/باتجاه
lead to	يؤدى إلى	go wrong	تسوء الأمور
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	take on a role	يؤدى دورًا
spaces for	مساحات/أماكن لـ ...		

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

scary – for – seeing – courage

1 The library has special spaces .... quiet reading and study.

2 The movie was too .... for me, so I didn't finish it.

3 I look forward to .... you.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions التعريفات

adventure stories	قصص مغامرات	exciting journeys and brave characters
ambition	طموح	a strong desire to achieve something big
characters	الشخصيات	people or animals in a story
comic stories	قصص مضحكة	funny stories full of humor[1]
conflict	صراع	the problem in the story
courage	الشجاعة	bravery to do something new or scary
fables	خرافات	short tales that teach a moral often with talking animals
fiction	خيال	stories made up with imaginary[2] characters
folk stories	قصص شعبية	traditional stories with lessons
historical stories	قصص تاريخية	based on real events from the past
non-fiction	واقعية	true stories based on real events[3] and characters
setting	الإطار الزمنى والمكانى	where and when the story happens.
solution	الحل/نهاية الصراع	how the problem ends
symbol	رمز	a sign of something
special	خاص / مميز	valuable[4] in a different way

(1) فكاهة
(2) خيالى
(3) أحداث
(4) مميز

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها
looks (n)	مظهر/شكل	appearance	مظهر
well-known (adj)	معروف/مشهور	famous	مشهور
bravery (n)	شجاعة	courage (n)	شجاعة

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
history	تاريخ	-cal	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	historical (adj)	تاريخى
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al		traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
non-	fiction (n)	خيال	تعطى عكس المعنى	non-fiction (n)	واقعية
re-	tell (v)	يروى (قصة)	تعطى معنى الإعادة	retell (v)	يعيد رواية

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading questions:

1 Which kind of story do you like?

2 Which kind of story talks about challenges?

Read this story: How was the crow after he started to sing? Why? SB page 90

The Clever Fox





Once upon a time in a far away forest, there was a clever fox who lived in the forest. One day, he saw a crow with a piece of cheese in her beak. The fox wanted the cheese very much.

He smiled and said, "Good morning, beautiful bird!" The crow looked down and listened.

"Your voice must be as sweet as your looks," the fox continued, "Can you sing a song to help me feel happy?" The crow was happy and sang a song. As soon as she opened her beak, the cheese fell down. The fox quickly caught it and ran away.

Post-reading questions: SB

Read the story again. Then, in pairs write the sentence from the story that shows each of the following.

1 setting : ....

....

2 characters : ....

....

3 conflict : ....

....

4 solution : ....

....

The School Garden Project

Pre-reading questions:

1 What makes someone a good leader in school?

2 Do you think students can make big changes in their communities? Why or why not?

3 What change would you like to see in your school next year?

Read the following text. When can small ideas lead to big changes?

SB page 92

CHAPTER SIX:

Looking Forward

The next year, Zeina was chosen president of the student council. She learned a lot from the garden project, especially about being a real leader. It didn't mean doing everything alone. It meant helping others and being honest when things were hard.

Now, her ambition[1] was bigger than just a garden. She wanted to help students believe they could change their school — and maybe the world.

"Everyone has something special[2] to offer," she told new students. "When we work together with respect and determination[3], we can solve any problem."



The garden continued to grow. Students added more plants, painted benches, and created quiet spaces for reading. It became a symbol of what students could do together.

Zeina had learned that growth doesn't happen only in plants. It also happens in people—especially when they show courage[4] to try something new and strength[5] when things go wrong.

She knew she still had more to learn. But she also knew something very important:

Small ideas can lead to big changes—when people believe in them.

(1) طموح (2) خاص (3) إصرار

(4) شجاعة (5) القوة

Practice CHAPTER (6) EXERCISES

1 Match the words in column (A) with their meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. ambition	a) a strong desire to achieve something big
2. special	b) bravery to do something new or scary
3. symbol	c) valuable in a different way
4. courage	d) a sign of something

2 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Zeina wanted to help students believe they could change their school. ( )
2. The students added swings and toys to the garden. ( )
3. Zeina learned that growth happens only in plants not in people. ( )
4. Zeina was chosen student council president the next year. ( )

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What new role did Zeina take on at school?
....
2. How did Zeina describe "real" leadership?
....
3. What was Zeina's new goal for the school?
....
4. How did the garden continue to grow?
....
5. What happens when a leader helps others feel strong and valuable?
....

4 Critical thinking.

1. Why do you think Zein's leadership helped other students?
....
2. What does the garden symbolize in the story, and how can that idea apply to real life?
....
3. Do you think small ideas really can lead to big changes?
....

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

Skills Bank Reading

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 258-259 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
imagination	خيال	....	near	قريب	....
go on	يستمر	....	stupid	غبى	....
goal	هدف	....	noisy	صاخب	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

Extract information: استخراج المعلومات:

عليك قراءة السؤال جيدًا والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيدًا ثم العودة للنص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Once upon a time, there was a clever fox who lived in the forest. One day, he saw a crow with a piece of cheese in her beak. The fox wanted the cheese very much.

1. Where did the fox live? (استخراج معلومة)

....

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**her**" refer to? (فهم ما تشير إليه كلمة)

....

....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Your voice must be as sweet as your looks.

☐ - لا بد أن يكون صوتك جميلًا مثل مظهرك.

☐ - لا بد أن تكون طريقتك فى الكلام قوية مثل عينيك.

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- كل شخص لديه شىء خاص ليقدمه.

☐ Everyone has something special to offer.

☐ Everyone has something difficult to introduce.

LESSON 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

beak – told – crow – for – away – said

Once upon a time, a clever fox was walking in the forest. He saw a (1)........................ sitting on a tree branch with a piece of cheese in her (2)........................ . The fox smiled and looked up. The bird's beautiful looks gave him an idea. He said, "Your voice must be as sweet as your looks." Later, the fox (3)........................ his friend that the crow had sung proudly before the cheese fell down. He quickly caught it and ran (4)........................ .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The pelican uses its .... to catch fish from the river.
   a) eye b) tongue c) beak d) hair
2. .... is where and when the story happens.
   a) Setting b) Conflict c) Resolution d) Climax
3. Mariam's story is based .... a real adventure she had last summer.
   a) in b) on c) at d) with
4. .... are short tales that teach a moral, often with talking animals.
   a) Historical stories b) Comic stories c) Fables d) Adventure stories
5. Mostafa prefers .... books because he wants to learn facts about science and nature.
   a) non-fiction b) historical c) folk d) fiction
6. The .... story taught Farida about how people lived in ancient Egypt long ago.
   a) historical b) fiction c) adventure d) comic
7. Ahmed read a book about the .... scientist who discovered many important things.
   a) comic b) wrong c) careless d) well-known
8. The .... of a story include setting, characters, conflict, and solution.
   a) beaks b) readers c) elements d) adventures
9. The .... student finished all her math homework before anyone else in the class.
   a) careless b) clever c) lazy d) scary
10. During the game, everyone must .... turns throwing the ball.
   a) take b) run c) look d) fall

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

determination – president – said – told – forward – for

Lina loved the playground, especially the swings. One day, the swings broke, and many children were sad. Lina showed strength and asked the school to fix them. She said she looked (1) .... to seeing everyone smile again. Her (2) .... surprised her teacher, and the swings were repaired. The teacher (3) .... that Lina had special courage. She now dreams of being a class (4) .... to help more kids.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My friend has great ....; he acts bravely in difficult situations.
   a) courage b) fears c) idea d) weakness
2. Each person has a .... talent that makes them different.
   a) common b) bad c) special d) ordinary
3. The students will choose a new class .... next Monday morning.
   a) wall b) present c) president d) floor
4. My favorite animal is the lion. It's a .... of courage and strength.
   a) symbol b) president c) strength d) ambition
5. Eating unhealthy food can lead .... health problems.
   a) on b) at c) to d) in
6. Hard work and .... are two important keys to success.
   a) silence b) determination c) laziness d) population
7. Malak does not believe .... luck. She likes hard work and determination.
   a) at b) in c) on d) with
8. Her .... to become a doctor drove her to study for many years.
   a) situation b) fear c) laziness d) ambition
9. During the camping trip, Esraa decided to .... on a role as the group leader.
   a) do b) make c) take d) have

C **Skills**

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Retelling a story

We can use sequence words like: عند إعادة سرد قصة يمكننا استخدام كلمات ترتيب الأحداث:

- First,... - Next,... - Then,... - After that,... - Finally

online

What story did you choose? ما القصة التى اخترتها؟

I chose "*Jack and the Beanstalk.*" اخترت قصة «جاك وساق الفاصولياء.»

Who are the main characters? من الشخصيات الرئيسية؟

The main characters are Jack, his mother, and the giant.
الشخصيات الرئيسية هى جاك، وأمه، والعملاق.

Where did the story happen? أين وقعت أحداث القصة؟

The story happened at Jack's home, the market, and the giant's castle.
وقعت أحداث القصة فى منزل جاك، والسوق، وقلعة العملاق.

What happened in the beginning? ماذا حدث فى البداية؟

First, Jack sold the cow for magic beans. أولًا، باع جاك البقرة مقابل حبوب سحرية.

What happened in the middle of the story? ماذا حدث فى منتصف القصة؟

Then, a giant beanstalk grew, and Jack climbed. He found a giant's castle.
ثم نمت ساق فاصولياء ضخمة، وصعد جاك. ووجد قلعة العملاق.

What happened next? ماذا حدث بعد ذلك؟

After that, Jack took gold, and a hen from the giant.
بعد ذلك، أخذ جاك ذهبًا، ودجاجة، من العملاق.

How did the story end? كيف انتهت القصة؟

Finally, Jack cut the beanstalk, the giant fell down, and Jack lived happily with his mother.
أخيرًا، قطع جاك ساق الفاصولياء، وسقط العملاق، وعاش جاك مع أمه بسعادة.

What was your favorite part? ما الجزء المفضل لديك؟

I liked when Jack became rich. أعجبنى عندما أصبح جاك غنيًا.

What is the message of the story? ما رسالة القصة؟

The story tells us to be brave and smart to solve problems.
تخبرنا القصة أن نكون شجعانًا وأذكياء لحل المشكلات.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialog:

▶ **Mira is asking Tamer about the story of Cinderella.**

Mira : Do you like the story of Cinderella?

Tamer : Yes, I do. It's (1).. .

Mira : Was she treated well?

Tamer : (2).. . Her stepsisters were unfair.

Mira : Did she go to the party?

Tamer : (3).. . The fairy godmother helped her.

Mira : (4).. ?

Tamer : Yes, he found her with the glass shoe.

Mira : (5).. ?

Tamer : Yes, they lived happily.

Skills Bank | Writing

How to write about a well-known story

كيفية الكتابة عن قصة معروفة

What is the name of the story? ما اسم القصة؟

- One of the most famous stories with a moral is *The Tortoise and the Hare*.

واحدة من أشهر القصص التى لها مغزى هى قصة الأرنب البرى والسلحفاة.

Who are the main characters? من الشخصيات الرئيسية؟

- The characters: tortoise and hare.

الشخصيات هى: السلحفاة والأرنب البرى.

What happens in the story? ماذا يحدث فى القصة؟

- The hare was very fast and proud, but the tortoise was slow and steady. They decided to have a race to see who was faster.

كان الأرنب سريعـًا جدًا ومغرورًا، أما السلحفاة فكانت بطيئة وثابتة. قررا أن يتسابـقا ليروا من الأسرع.

What lesson or moral does the story teach? ما الدرس المستفاد من القصة؟

- If you think you're better than others and don't try your best, you lose.

إذا كنت تعتقد أنك أفضل من الآخرين ولم تبذل أفضل ما لديك، فسوف تخسر.

Why is the story important to remember? لماذا من المهم أن نتذكر تلك القصة؟

- Because it teaches us not to give up and not to be too proud.

لأنها تعلّمنا ألا نستسلم وألا نكون مغرورين.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

The Story of the Tortoise and the Hare

One of the most well-known stories with a moral is *The Tortoise and the Hare*. This story teaches us that being fast is not always the best. In the story, the hare was very proud because he could run quickly. He made fun of the slow tortoise and agreed to race him. At the start, the hare ran very fast and left the tortoise far behind. But then, he stopped to rest and even took a nap. The tortoise kept moving slowly without stopping. In the end, the tortoise won the race because he didn't give up. This story shows that working steadily and never giving up can help us win. That is the moral of the story.

TEST YOURSELF

1 **Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

told – said – stuck – smiled – shouted – fable

In a big forest, a lion caught a tiny mouse. The mouse asked for kindness and promised to help the lion one day. The lion laughed, but let it go. Days later, the lion was (1)........................ in a net. The mouse came and cut the ropes. The lion (2)........................ and said, "You are truly clever!" Later, the mouse (3)........................ the other animals that even the small can help the large. It's a beautiful (4)........................ with a sweet message.

2 **Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

Ali's father is a poor, clever fisherman who lives with his family in a simple home by the sea. Ali always goes fishing with his father. Once he took the small boat, and he decided to go fishing by himself as his father was ill. Ali spent all the day at sea, but he couldn't catch any fish. He began to feel sad and disappointed. However, he finally took off his clothes to have a swim and returned home. Unfortunately, his small wallet fell into water with all his money in it. Ali jumped into the water to look for his wallet, but he couldn't find it, and instead, he caught a huge fish. He carried it on his boat and went home. His father was happy with him, but Ali was still sad. Ali's mother wanted to make food, and she happily found the wallet inside the fish. She called her son and told him that she found his wallet.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali's father isn't a .... fisherman.
   a) poor b) clever c) good d) rich
2. Before returning home, Ali lost his ....
   a) boat b) wallet c) clothes d) shoes

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Ali go fishing alone? ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? ....
5. When did Ali begin to feel sad and disappointed? ....
6. Do you think the story ended happily? Why/ Why not? ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mahmoud enjoys ………………… books because they tell him about real events from the past.
   a) folk b) historical c) fables d) non-fiction
2. The teacher asked Layla to ………………… the story using her own simple words.
   a) catch b) retell c) believe d) lead
3. My mother prepared a ………………… dish just for the new guests, which they liked most.
   a) terrible b) special c) clever d) bored
4. Gaber's ………………… allowed him to recover quickly from a serious disease and get back to work.
   a) cleverness b) strength c) carelessness d) laziness
5. Mariam ………………… that she wanted to go to the new water park.
   a) told b) said to c) said d) told to
6. Nahla and Manar told us that they ………………… to Alexandria the day before.
   a) were traveled b) will travel c) travel d) traveled

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Samir ………………… (said) me that he would travel to London.
2. The teacher said that those books ………………… (are) very interesting.
3. Amal told Mahmoud that he ………………… (can) play tennis on Saturday.
4. They told us that they were waiting for the guests ………………… (now).
5. Leila told us that ………………… (I) was happy on her birthday party.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A story with a moral"

…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Hatim said, "I will call you later." (that)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………
2. Omar told me that he was going to the cinema then. (Omar said)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………
3. "I've already done my homework, Mom," said Tarek. (told)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

STUDY

▶ LESSON 5 : Let's Talk — SB pages 94-95
▶ LESSON 6 : My Own Story — SB pages 96-97

A VOCABULARY | LESSONS ▶ 5&6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bark (ed) (v)	ينبح (صوت الكلب)	greedy (adj)	طماع
bone (n)	عَظْمَة	life lesson (n)	درس فى الحياة
deep message (n)	مغزى عميق	shadow (n)	ظل/خيال
fictional (adj)	خيالى	sparkling (adj)	متلألئ/لامع
frighten (ed) (v)	يُخيف/يُرعب/يُفزع	stream (n)	جدول مائى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

carry (y) (ied) (v)	يحمل	orally (adv)	شفهيًا
castle (n)	قلعة	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو
dragon (n)	تنين	tail (n)	ذيل
hill (n)	تل/هضبة	tasty (adj)	لذيذ
knight (n)	فارس	villagers (n)	سكان قرية/قرويون
lucky (adj)	محظوظ	wag (ged) (v)	يهز
bridge (n)	كوبرى/جسر	wooden (adj)	خشبى

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

fall into	يقع فى داخل	walk across	يمشى عبر
fly over	يطير فوق	pass the turn	يمرر الدور
look down into	ينظر لأسفل داخل	take a turn	يأخذ دورًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
fly	يطير	flew	flown
fall	يقع	fell	fallen

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

into – frighten – take – lucky

1 Scary stories can .... some kids, but others enjoy them.

2 Be careful not to fall .... the hole while we are playing outside.

3 We were .... it didn't rain during our picnic.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	**الكلمة**	**Synonym (Meaning)**	**مرادفها**
fictional (adj)	خيالى	imaginary	خيالى
tasty (adj)	لذيذ	delicious	لذيذ
sparkling (adj)	متلألئ/لامع	bright	لامع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	**الكلمة**	**Suffix** اللاحقة	**Function** الوظيفة	**The new word**	**الكلمة الجديدة**
fright (n)	فزع	-en	تحول الاسم إلى فعل	frighten (v)	يُخيف/يُرعب/يُفزع
wood (n)	خشب	-en	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	wooden (adj)	خشبى
greed (n)	طمع	-y		greedy (adj)	طماع

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

1 What makes a story interesting to you—characters, setting, message, or something else?

2 Can stories teach us something important? Give an example.

SB Page 94

The Power of Stories



Sarah I have asked my teacher why we enjoy stories so much.

Amal What did she say?

Sarah She says that stories help us see the world from various points of view.

Amal That's true. I read that stories often teach a moral[1] or a life lesson.

Sarah Yes! My older brother has told me that every good story has conflicts[2] and a clear solution.

Amal My friend says that reading stories helps people think more critically[3] about choices and actions.

Sarah I agree. One of our classmates has mentioned that stories let us understand someone else's point of view[4], even if we've never lived like they have.

Amal Exactly. Our teacher reminds us that even fun or fictional stories can carry deep messages.

Sarah She also explains that stories are powerful because they stay with us and help us grow.

(1) المغزى (2) صراعات
(3) بشكل نقدي (4) وجهة نظر

Post-reading questions: SB

1 What did Sarah's teacher say about why we enjoy stories?

....

2 In your opinion, how can stories help us understand different points of view?

....

3 Do you think that conflicts and solutions are important in a story? Why or why not?

....

Pre-reading questions:

1 Have you ever seen your reflection in water? What did it look like?

2 What do you think of the dog?

SB page 93

The Dog and His Shadow



One sunny afternoon, a hungry dog was lucky to find a tasty **bone**. He proudly carried it in his **mouth**, tail wagging as he was walking across a wooden **bridge** over a sparkling **stream**. As he was walking, he looked down into the water and saw another dog in the water carrying a bone in its mouth. The bone seemed bigger. Being **greedy**, he wanted the other bone. He **barked** to frighten the other dog. The bone fell into the stream. The dog was sad when he discovered that it was himself not another dog or bone.

Post-reading questions: SB

1 Where did the dog find the bone?

....

....

2 Why did the dog drop the bone into the stream?

....

....

3 What is the main idea or message of the story?

....

....

4 Do you think the dog will act differently next time? Why?

....

....

5 What do you learn from this story about being greedy?

....

....

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدى لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة صـ 271-272 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym			Opposite/Antonym		
moral	مغزى	....	nasty	كريه	....
sound	يبدو	....	shallow	ضحل	....
terrify	يفزع	....	factual	واقعى	....

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية فى القطعة يمكن تخمين معنى كلمة، ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالى:

The bone seemed bigger. Being greedy, he wanted the other bone. He barked to frighten the other dog. The bone fell into the stream. The dog was sad when he discovered that it was himself not another dog or bone.

What did the dog do to frighten the other dog? (استخراج معلومة من النص)

....

....

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. (اعطاء عنوان للقطعة)

....

....

2. The underlined word "discovered" means .... (تخمين معنى كلمة)

a) invented b) lost c) found out d) took out

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- I read that stories often teach a moral or a life lesson.

- قرأت أن القصص تعلمنا غالبًا كيف نكتب قصة قصيرة. ☐

- قرأت أن القصص كثيرًا ما تعلم درسًا أخلاقيًا أو درسًا فى الحياة. ☐

B) Choose the correct English translation: اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- كان الكلب الجائع محظوظًا لأنه وجد عظمة لذيذة.

☐ The hungry dog was lucky because he found a tasty bone.

☐ The hungry dog was angry because he lost his bone.

Practice

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

LESSONS 5 & 6

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

barked – parked – said – told – greedy – bridge

Stories can teach us life lessons in a fun way. One day, a (1) .... dog found a tasty bone and happily carried it in his mouth. While walking across a wooden (2) ...., he looked down into the sparkling stream and saw his shadow. It seemed like another dog with a bigger bone. He (3) .... to frighten the other dog and dropped his bone. Later, the farmer (4) .... the dog had learned not to be greedy. This tale has a deep message about being thankful.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sami thinks he is .... to have such kind friends who always help him.
   a) unlucky b) unfair c) lucky d) fictional
2. The workers spent three months building a new .... across the wide river.
   a) bridge b) hill c) tail d) mountain
3. The teacher asked Rawan to .... the turn to the next student in line.
   a) bring b) carry c) pass d) pull
4. The spider .... Nour when it was on her bedroom wall.
   a) carried b) seemed c) frightened d) wagged
5. Lara watched her paper airplane fall .... the river.
   a) into b) close c) next d) around
6. Zain decided not to be .... and shared his lunch with his friend.
   a) wooden b) greedy c) sparkling d) fictional
7. The movie showed a .... city where robots and humans lived together peacefully.
   a) historical b) real c) greedy d) fictional
8. The doctor showed Karim the broken .... in his arm using x-ray.
   a) screen b) mind c) bone d) tooth
9. The dog .... loudly to frighten the wolf.
   a) wagged b) barked c) carried d) slept
10. The brave firefighter had to walk .... the burning building roof to save the child.
    a) around b) across c) beside d) under

Skills Bank | Writing

How to write about a story you made it up.

كيفية الكتابة عن قصة قمت بتأليفها.

1. What is the story about? عمَّ تكون القصة (فكرتها)؟

- Last week, I made up a story about … . (الفكرة)

2. Who is the main character in the story? من الشخصية الرئيسية فى القصة؟

- My main character is … . (الشخصية الرئيسية)

3. Where does the story take place? أين تحدث القصة؟

- The story takes place in (الوقت) in (المكان) … .

4. What problem does the main character face? ما المشكلة التى تواجهها الشخصية؟

- The problem is … . (المشكلة)

5. What does the main character do to solve the problem? ماذا تفعل الشخصية الرئيسية لحل المشكلة؟

- The character decides to … . (ما فعلته الشخصية الرئيسية)

6. What lesson or message does your story teach? ما الدرس أو الرسالة التى تعلمنا القصة إياها؟

- The story teaches us to be … . (الدرس المستفاد)

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"A brave cat"

Last week, I made up a story about a brave cat named Luna who lived in a quiet village. One day, Luna saw a dragon تنين flying over the hills. All the villagers were scared and hid in their homes. But Luna wasn't afraid. She walked across the old wooden bridge to find the dragon's home. When she got there, she saw the dragon crying. He wasn't scary—he was just lonely. Luna became his friend and brought the villagers to meet him. Everyone learned not to judge others too quickly. I made up this story to show that kindness can change everything. I enjoyed making it up and sharing it with my friends.

TEST YOURSELF

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hadi read a story called *The Boy Who Cried Wolf.*

Mona : What story did you read today?

Hadi : (1).. .

Mona : (2)..?

Hadi : He was watching the sheep.

Mona : Did he tell the truth?

Hadi : (3).. . He lied about a wolf.

Mona : (4)..?

Hadi : No one helped him when the wolf really came.

Mona : Why didn't they help him?

Hadi : (5).. .

Mona : So, we should always tell the truth.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

fictional – fiction – said – told – villagers – lesson

Long ago, a knight climbed a hill to reach a big castle. The (1)........................ told stories about a dragon that flew over it. The knight said he had heard that the dragon was only a (2)........................ character. Suddenly, a loud sound came from the castle. The knight was brave and went into the castle. A wise man (3)........................ the villagers that the knight killed it. This story gave children a strong life (4)........................ about facing fears.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .... boy took all the candy without sharing any with his friends.
   a) kind b) greedy c) fair d) fictional
2. The story had a happy .... when the lost knight finally found his family.
   a) deep message b) ending c) setting d) shadow
3. Omar caught some small fish in the clear .... behind his grandfather's house.
   a) stream b) shadow c) bridge d) roof

4. The .... student got the easy math test while others got the hard one.

a) real b) light c) fictional d) lucky

5. Kareem told me that he was .... then.

a) come b) came c) coming d) will come

6. Mona .... Huda was ill.

a) told b) said to c) asked d) said

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mariam .... (tell) that she wanted to go to the new water park.
2. Laila said that she .... (watch) a film about animals.
3. Rania said that she had never .... (was) to that place before.
4. Ahmed said that he .... (has) done his homework before dinner.
5. Youssef told .... (I) that he traveled to Luxor the pervious summer.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A story you made it up"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mona said, "I am reading a new book." (that)

....

2. He said, "We will travel to Alexandria next week." (they)

....

3. "I can't find my keys," said Karim. (couldn't)

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 6 Assessment

SB page 98

A Vocabulary

1 Fill in the sentences with the correct word from the box:

conflicts – sparked – aware – responded

1. The story .... his interest in studying history.
2. I called Salma, but she .... nervously.
3. Young people should be .... of how technology is important.
4. My dad advised me to avoid .... with my classmates.

B Language

2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb form (present simple or past simple):

1. Once upon a time, there .... (be) a brave knight.
2. Every night, he .... (check) the castle walls.
3. One day, he .... (see) a dragon flying over the hills.

C Speaking

3 Read and complete the dialog between Omar and Leila about the benefits of reading stories:

Omar : Hi, Leila! Do you like reading stories?
Leila : Yes, I love it! Stories are fun and they have many benefits.
Omar : (1).. .
Leila : First, they teach us an important morals in life, like honesty or courage.
Omar : (2).. . And we can read stories about various places and people, right?
Leila : Exactly! We also learn how characters deal with conflict and difficult situations. Can you tell me a benefit for reading stories?
Omar : (3).. .
Leila : Yes, and they show us how to solve problems in smart ways.
Omar : So reading stories can help us develop our mind and become better people.
Leila : (4)..!

Unit 6 Review

Vocabulary

aware (adj)	واعٍ/ مدرك
bark (ed) (v)	ينبح
beak (n)	منقار
bone (n)	عظمة
bravery (n)	شجاعة
comic	كوميدى
conflict (n)	صراع
crow (n)	غُراب
debate (n)	مناظرة/نقاش
deep message (n)	مغزى عميق
element (n)	عنصر
empathy (n)	تعاطف/مواساة
fables	خرافات
fiction	خيال
folk	شعبى
greedy (adj)	طماع
historical	تاريخى
non-fiction	واقعى
president (n)	رئيس
recommendation (n)	توصية/ترشيح
resolution (n)	حل/نهاية الصراع
shadow (n)	ظل/خَيال
spark (ed) (v)	يشعل/يثير/يطلِق
sparkling (adj)	متلألئ/لامع
stuck (adj)	عالق
symbol (n)	رمز
various (adj)	متنوع/مختلف

Language

Indirect/Reported speech

الكلام غير المباشر

عند التحويل من كلام مباشر الى كلام غير مباشر، نتبع التالى:

١. احذف علامات الاقتباس " " وغير صيغة الكلام.

e.g. • He said, "I like fish." (Direct)

• He said that he liked fish. (Indirect)

٢. تغير الضمائر حسب المعنى.

e.g. • "I will see you later," he said. (Direct)

• He said that he would see me later. (Indirect)

٣. تغير الزمن إذا كان فعل القول فى الماضى (مثل: said, told).

e.g. • "I've ironed the skirt," said Sara. (Direct)

• Sara said that she had ironed the skirt.

٤. تغيير بعض الظروف الزمنية والمكانية:

e.g. • I'm visiting my grandparents tomorrow. Ali said. (Direct)

• Ali said that he was visiting his grandparents the following day. (Indirect)

Skills

1. Talking about the importance of reading stories

A: Why is reading stories important?

B: Because it helps us grow emotionally and mentally.

A: What is the most valuable lesson a person can learn from reading stories?

B: One of the most valuable lessons is learning to be kind and fair to others.

A: What do you enjoy most about stories?

B: I enjoy learning from characters' mistakes and discovering new ideas.

A: Can stories change the way we think? How?

B: Yes, stories can open our minds to new ideas.

A: What kind of stories do you like the most? Why?

B: I like stories about brave characters who solve problems and help others.

2. Retelling a story

We can use sequence words like:

- First,... - Next,... - Then,... - After that,... - Finally

A: What story did you choose?

B: I chose *Jack and the Beanstalk*.

A: Who are the main characters?

B: The main characters are Jack, his mother, and the giant.

A: Where did the story happen?

B: The story happened at Jack's home, the market, and the giant's castle.

A: What happened in the beginning?

B: First, Jack sold the cow for magic beans.

A: What happened in the middle of the story?

B: Then, a giant beanstalk grew, and Jack climbed. He found a giant's castle.

A: What happened next?

B: Jack took gold, and a hen from the giant.

A: How did the story end?

B: Finally, Jack cut the beanstalk, the giant fell down, and Jack lived happily with his mother.

General Exercise on Unit 6

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Youssef loves the story called *The Lion and the Mouse*.

Salma : What's your favorite animal story?

Youssef : (1).. .

Salma : Isn't the lion much bigger than the mouse?

Youssef : (2).. . But the mouse helped him.

Salma : (3).. ?

Youssef : He cut the rope and set the lion free.

Salma : Was the lion surprised?

Youssef : (4).. .

Salma : (5).. ?

Youssef : I learned a small one can help a large one.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

conflict – said – told – aware – moral – setting

When I read *"The Boy Who Cried Wolf"*, it sparked something in my mind. The (1)............................ was clear—don't lie. My dad (2)............................ me that the story taught a valuable points of view about trust. I enjoyed it because it was both entertaining and thoughtful. The boy caused a (3)............................ by lying, and in the end, no one believed him. This made me more (4)............................ of how important truth is in social life.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Long ago, a dog found a tasty bone near a small village. He was lucky to have it and carried it in his mouth, his tail was wagging with joy. As he walked across a wooden bridge over a sparkling stream, he looked down and saw his shadow. It looked like another dog carrying a bigger bone. The dog, being greedy, barked loudly to frighten the other dog. But the moment he barked, his own bone fell into the stream. The dog was left with nothing. He had lost his bone because he

wanted more. The villagers say this story teaches a deep message about being thankful. One child said that the teacher told them, "The dog was greedy and lost everything." Stories like this give us a life lesson that we can remember forever.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the story is ....
   a) dogs love walking
   b) bones are tasty
   c) greed can make us lose everything
   d) villagers feed dogs
2. The dog saw a .... in the water.
   a) big fish
   b) shadow of a dog
   c) flying bird
   d) wooden boat

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where was the dog walking when he saw the water?

....

4. Why did the dog bark?

....

5. What do you think the story wants to teach children?

....

6. What might have happened if the dog had not barked?

....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nour's healthy .... includes eating fresh fruits and vegetables every day.
   a) lifestyle
   b) story
   c) point of view
   d) imagination
2. .... are funny stories that are full of fun and entertainment.
   a) Historical stories
   b) Comic stories
   c) Fables
   d) Adventure stories
3. Eating too much candy can lead .... problems with your teeth.
   a) in
   b) to
   c) at
   d) on

4. The happy dog wags its .... back and forth when its owner comes home.

a) bone b) tail c) mouth d) tale

5. Sara .... me that she would come the following day.

a) said b) told c) saying d) tell

6. They said that they would go to the park ....

a) the week before b) the previous week

c) the following week d) in the past

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My friend said that he .... (has) visited Aswan before.
2. I .... (said) my mother that I hadn't eaten yet.
3. Ahmed said he .... (can't) come at that moment.
4. She told me that she was watching TV .... (tomorrow).
5. Omar said that .... (him) was happy to help.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who became the president of the student council? ....
2. Do you think Zeina will be a good leader? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The garden became a .... of what students could do together.

a) symbol b) problem c) tool d) waste

4. Zeina believed small ideas could lead to big ....

a) changes b) mistakes c) walls d) losses

E Writing

7 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A story you like"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Review 2

LESSON 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Sarah spends .... on her phone daily.
   - a) 4 minutes
   - b) 6 hours
   - c) 60 minutes
   - d) 10 hours
2. What does Sarah's teacher suggest?
   - a) Using her phone only for one hour.
   - b) Stopping using technology.
   - c) Setting limits and balance activities.
   - d) Playing more games.
3. What activities does Sarah plan to do?
   - a) Only watch movies.
   - b) Join the library and play basketball.
   - c) Buy new games till feeling tired.
   - d) Sleep more and eat less.

2 Finish the following dialog:

Two friends, Sandy and Basma, are discussing their school's new technology project.

Sandy : Hi Basma, I heard you're working on a technology project with your group.
Basma : (1).. .
Sandy : That sounds interesting! What exactly are you creating?
Basma : We're designing eco-friendly fertilizers for modern agriculture.
Sandy : Wow, that's really practical! But I noticed you're always on your phone. Isn't that a distraction?
Basma : (2).. . I've set a schedule.
Sandy : A schedule? (3)..?
Basma : Yes, it's important because it would help me stay more focused.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Today's teenagers are growing up in a world controlled by screens and digital technology. While this modern technology offers many benefits, it also presents significant challenges. Students spend hours scrolling through social media, often losing focus on their studies and physical activities.

Experts warn that excessive screen time can negatively impact mental health and sleep routines. Many teenagers spend so much time on their phones or computers that they forget to take part in real-life activities around them. This can cause health problems and lower their school results.

However, technology also provides opportunities for learning and creativity. Students can access huge amounts of information instantly, collaborate with students around the world, and develop valuable digital skills. The key is learning to control technology rather than letting it control you.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   a) Technology should be banned in schools completely.
   b) Digital technology has both positive and negative effects on teenagers.
   c) Parents should control all their children's online activities.
   d) Students should only use traditional learning methods.
2. According to the passage, what do experts warn about too much screen time?
   a) It improves mental health and sleep patterns.
   b) It can negatively impact mental health and sleep routines.
   c) It has no effect on students' academic performance.
   d) It helps students focus better on their studies.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What opportunities does technology provide for students according to the passage?
4. How might teenagers feel when they spend too much time on screens? Why?
5. What do you think will happen if students don't learn to control their technology use?

LESSON 2

1 Listen to the audio, then put (T) True or (F) False.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Ahmed wants to improve his study habits. ( )
2. Ahmed plans to study math for three hours daily. ( )
3. Ahmed believes good planning increases his stress. ( )
4. Ahmed writes down his tasks and checks them off. ( )
5. Ahmed feels proud and confident about his progress. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students who show great .... can overcome difficult challenges.
   a) dishonesty b) determination
   c) irresponsibility d) greed
2. The opposite of "fair" is "..........................".
   a) confident b) unfair c) honest d) practical
3. The suffix "-ful" in "helpful" means "..........................".
   a) without b) full of c) not d) together
4. Many .... believe that technology can improve education.
   a) experts b) projects c) notifications d) perspectives
5. You .... turn off your phone during exams.
   a) must b) can c) shouldn't d) mustn't

The Story

3 A) Answer the following questions:

1. What happens when a leader makes people feel confident and important?

....

2. What did Zeina understand about being honest as a leader?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Nancy enjoyed ....
   a) writing stories b) drawing maps c) growing food d) painting walls
4. Being .... helped Zeina become a good leader.
   a) strong b) perfect c) strict d) honest

4 Write from ONE HUNDRED (100) to ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A Short Story: The Day I Learned to Balance Technology and Life"

....

....

Listening Texts Review 1

Egypt – Where the Past Meets the Future

Egypt is a country where the past meets the future. While it is famous for the pyramids, it is now making new wonders. It's changing quickly with the help of modern technology.

Impressive new projects are creating a bright future for its people. One example is the New Administrative Capital, a modern city that uses smart technology.

Egypt is also investing in solar power to produce clean energy. However, challenges such as overpopulation and pollution remain.

The country is developing rapidly with projects like high-speed electric trains and large solar farms.

Tourism plays an important role, as millions visit temples and Red Sea resorts, supporting the economy.

Young Egyptians are shaping the future through technology and social media businesses, making Egypt a land of both history and innovation.

Listening Texts Review 2

Lesson 1 page 100 Exercise 1

Sarah spends six hours daily on her phone watching videos and playing games. Her grades have dropped, and she feels tired often. Her teacher suggests setting limits and balancing screen time with reading and sports. Sarah decides to use her phone only for one hour on weekdays and two hours on weekends. She plans to join the school library and play basketball after school.

Lesson 2 page 101 Exercise 1

Ahmed wants to improve his study habits. He thinks carefully about his goals and creates a weekly schedule. He plans to study math for two hours, read English books for one hour, and exercise for thirty minutes daily. Ahmed believes good planning helps him stay focused and reduces stress. He writes down his tasks and checks them when completed. This method makes him feel proud and confident about his progress.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Has she finished studying yet?
2. I haven't seen him since we were in the party.
3. Amir has just repaired his car.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. My uncle has gone to Jordan.
2. She hasn't visited Paris for 15 years.
3. Has he ever traveled abroad?

Lessons 5 & 6

1. starting
2. has been said
3. was promoted

Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

1. If You had saved your file, you wouldn't have lost your work.
2. If he had taken a coat, he wouldn't have felt cold.
3. If we had asked for directions, we wouldn't have got lost.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. If I had studied hard, I wouldn't have failed the exam.
2. If they hadn't forgotten your birthday, you wouldn't have been upset.
3. If we had booked early, there would have been tickets left.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. If I had been careful, I wouldn't have broken the vase.
2. If he had followed the map, he wouldn't have got lost.
3. If they had watered the plants, they wouldn't have died.

Unit 3

Lessons 1&2

1. More tasks will be done by AI in the future.
2. Dinner won't be made by Hana tonight.
3. A lot of trees will be planted by volunteers in our community.

Lessons 3&4

1. The results will be published by the school next Friday.
2. The lesson will be explained by the teacher tomorrow.
3. The classroom will be cleaned by them after the exam.

Lessons 5&6

1. The house will be painted Marwan next month.
2. A novel will be written by Rawda one day.
3. The bridge will be built by the government next year.

Unit 4

Lessons 1&2

1. You must wear your school uniform.
2. You should study hard.
3. You can go out after doing your homework.

Lessons 3&4

1. You mustn't smoke here.
2. You shouldn't eat unhealthy food.
3. Although Omar is strong, he can't carry this box.

Lessons 5&6

1. Although Mazin got up early, he missed the bus.
2. You should revise for your lessons.
3. Omar can speak three languages.

Unit 5

Lessons 1&2

1. Open that window, Amr.
2. Don't be late for school again, Sara.
3. First, do your homework. After that, help your mom.

Lessons 3&4

1. Don't be noisy
2. open
3. play

Lessons 5&6

1. Be
2. Don't
3. show

Unit 6

Lessons 1&2

1. Mazin told Alaa that Omar went/had gone to Luxor the day before.
2. Aliaa said to Maha "I'm doing my homework now".
3. Hady said that he would arrive late that evening.

Lessons 3&4

1. Hatim said that he would call you later.
2. Omar said to me "I'm going to the cinema now".
3. Tarek told mom that he had already done his homework.

Lessons 5&6

1. Mona said that she was reading a new book.
2. He said that they would travel to Alexandria the following week.
3. Karim said that he couldn't find his keys," said Karim.

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE
رقم الإيداع: 2025/8845
خدمة العملاء: 16766

(اللغة الإنجليزية / الصف الثالث الإعدادى)

معاك الكتاب معاك الAPP

نزّل تطبيق الأضواء



1 نـزّل



2 سجّـل



3 أدخل كودك الشخصى



4 احصل على منهجك التفاعلى مجانًا

اسـم الطـالـب: ....

العـنـــــوان: ....

البريد الإلكترونــى: ....

الهاتف/ المحمـول: ....

المحـافـظـــة: ....

المـدرســـة: ....

الإدارة التعليميـة: ....

اسم مدرس المادة: ....

الـكـــــود: ....

6 221133 001311
لغة إنجليزية/ 3ع/ ف1/ 2026

3rd PREP
FIRST TERM

AL ADWAA
Gem

2026

ENGLISH



Ongoing Assessment & Final Revision

AL ADWAA

Gem

ENGLISH

for Preparatory Schools

Ongoing Assessment & Final Revision

For General & Al-Azhar Education

9 الصف الثالث الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول



Prepared by

Said Darahem

&

A Group of Experts in Teaching English

الاسم: ....

رقم الموبايل: ....

٢٠٢٦

امسح الكود واحصل على لينكات الأضواء الرسمية

Follow Us

16766

www.aladwaa.com

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

CONTENTS



Part 1 Ongoing Assessment



1 **Follow up Worksheets**

جزء خاص بالإملاء + اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة العام على كل درسين

2 **Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheets**

اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة الأزهر على كل درسين

3 **Units Mini-Tests**

اختبارات قصيرة على كل وحدة لطلبة العام

4 **Al-Azhar Units Mini-Tests**

اختبارات قصيرة على كل وحدة لطلبة الأزهر

Unit 1
Lessons 1 & 2

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

challenge	....	....	شخصية
shape	....	....	يذكر
confidence	....	....	يدعم/يساند
growth	....	....	صفات
affect	....	....	يحتفل
experience	....	....	فريد/مميز

Language Expressions & Prepositions

beyond my looks	....	....	تشكل شخصيتى
fit in	....	....	يبنى ثقة
believe in	....	....	يسجل/يحرز هدفًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يعنى	....	....
....	يكسر	....	....
....	ينمو	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
important	....	unimportant	....
simple	....	complex	....

Definitions

........................: where someone comes from

........................: have a high opinion of someone or something

........................: learning more about who you are

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... means learning more about who you are.
   a) Background b) Popularity c) Self-discovery d) Unique
2. I like to compete in running races. We add the suffix "...................." to get the noun of "compete".
   a) -ity b) -ness c) -ition d) -al
3. Football is a popular sport in many countries. The synonym of "popular" is "....................".
   a) famous b) personal c) real d) stressed
4. .... means where someone comes from.
   a) Unique b) Identity c) Background d) Value
5. Nourin has .... her piano since last year at her house.
   a) play b) played c) playing d) plays
6. The school walls .... painted with colors by the kids.
   a) have been b) has been c) have be d) has be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Kady .... (never/swim) in the deep end of the swimming pool.
2. Omar and his brother have been played in the park .... (since) two hours.
3. The dishes .... (already/be) washed by Mom after our family dinner.
4. The new library books .... (have/be) organized on the shelves.
5. Have you ever .... (write) a book?

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Shahd have visited Italy twice. (....................................)
2. We have saw that movie before. (....................................)
3. Lunch hasn't cooked yet. (....................................)
4. My parents have lived here since ten years. (....................................)

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ziad thinks that his creativity makes him special.

Farah : Ziad, what makes you special?
Ziad : (1).. .
Farah : (2)..?
Ziad : I create things with my hands.
Farah : That's cool! Do people like your work?
Ziad : (3).. . My friends always ask to see it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We visited a .... factory that uses robots instead of people.
   a) complex b) modern c) simple d) basic
2. The new student was very friendly and found it easy to fit .... with everyone.
   a) on b) in c) at d) for
3. The story teaches a lesson about the .... of being kind to others.
   a) match b) work c) message d) value
4. Eman has just .... a picture of her cat in art class.
   a) draw b) drew c) drawn d) drawing

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cookies .... (just/baked) by Mom for the party.
2. My dad has worked at the same company .... (since) ten years.
3. He .... (has/finish) his science project yet.
4. Three books have .... (read) by Basmala since last month.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Yourself"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

blazer	....	....	خرسانة
portrait	....	....	تجاعيد شعر
honest	....	....	فائدة
beauty	....	....	عادل
comfort	....	....	منفتح/اجتماعى
curious	....	....	مبدع/مبتكر

Language Expressions & Prepositions

proud of	....	....	يلقى نظرة على
stand out	....	....	يحدث تغييرا
on the ground	....	....	سبب لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يبدأ	....	....
....	يكتب	....	....
....	يُحضر	....	....
....	يرمى	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
sure	....	unsure	....
empty	....	full	....

Definitions

............: the importance, worth, or usefulness of something

............: always telling the truth

............: feeling sure about your abilities, qualities, or decisions

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

surprised – challenge – fair – worked – work – depressing

We had a class vote to choose our group leader. Some students were upset because they didn't win. Our teacher reminded us about being (1)................................ and showing honesty. Even if you lose, being kind matters. Later, our leader asked us to share ideas. I was (2)................................ when I was chosen! We've (3)................................ together since then, and things have improved. Sometimes, a new (4)................................ helps you learn how to respect others more.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hadeer .... (just/finish) painting a picture of her dog.
2. The toys .... (not/cleaned) yet, so the room is messy.
3. Has Malak .... (ever/ride) a bike in the park?
4. Taleen has studied English .... (for) 2015.
5. Wael has .... (play) video games for two hours.
6. What have you .... (do) for our breakfast?
7. .... (you/ever) read a novel by Charles Dickens?
8. She hasn't done her homework .... (already).

3 Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. I saw that movie twice. (already)

....

2. We moved to this city in 2010. (since)

....

3. She started playing the guitar in 2023. (for)

....

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Because Omar was ...., he opened the old book to see what stories were written inside.
   a) confused b) strong c) outgoing d) curious
2. Amira's hard work was the reason .... her excellent grades in all subjects.
   a) for b) of c) to d) about
3. The windows .... washed since the last month.
   a) hasn't been b) aren't
   c) wasn't d) haven't been
4. Nelly has just .... a cake for the party tonight.
   a) bake b) baked c) baking d) bakes

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Amira loved writing but felt very shy when speaking in front of people. One day, her teacher asked her to read her story aloud at the school assembly. Amira felt nervous but decided to try. She practiced every day in front of her family. On the big day, her hands were shaking, but she stood tall and began to read. As she continued, she saw smiles on her classmates' faces. When she finished, the whole room clapped. Amira couldn't believe it. She had faced her fear and succeeded. Now, she felt ready for more challenges.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who asked Amira to read her story aloud?

   ....

2. What happened in the story in a few sentences?

   ....

3. What do you think Amira might try next?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is Amira ....
   a) forgot her story on stage b) won a writing contest
   c) faced her fear and gave a speech d) liked drawing pictures
5. The persons who helped Amira prepare the most were her ....
   a) classmates b) teachers
   c) neighbors d) family

Unit 1
Lessons 5 & 6

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

due to	....	....	لغة الجسد
nod	....	....	مساند/مشجع
series	....	....	أمانة
actions	....	....	عدل
trust	....	....	مقال وصفى
classmate	....	....	مسئولية
weakness	....	....	تواصل بصرى
complete	....	....	شجاع

Language Expressions & Prepositions

go through	....	....	يتقبل الاختلافات
build self-respect	....	....	يحدث فرقًا
take part in	....	....	يؤمن بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يفهم	....	....
....	يصبح	....	....
....	يخسر/يفقد	....	....
....	يؤدى إلى	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
accept	....	refuse	....
true	....	false	....

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

accepting – with – has – have – body – eye

In our classroom, we are learning how to accept ourselves and be proud of who we are. I (1)................................ learned to nod when someone is talking to show I care. It's also important to pay attention to their (2)................................ language. This helps us show interest and build strong friendships. When someone acts (3)................................ respect, others feel happier. Respecting personal identity means (4)................................ differences and helping everyone stay true to who they are.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When Rayan was .... from the soccer game, his team lost by three goals.
   a) innovative b) brave c) caring d) absent
2. My family will support me in my new job. We add the suffix ".................." to get the adjective of "support".
   a) -ous b) -al c) -ive d) -ness
3. Amira needs to focus .... her math homework instead of watching television tonight.
   a) in b) at c) on d) with
4. Walid says that good eye .... helps people know he is listening carefully.
   a) interest b) way c) language d) contact
5. The polite student learned to .... respect and interest when teachers explained.
   a) show b) ignore c) avoid d) refuse
6. When Salma joined the team, her classmates made her .... accepted.
   a) feel b) keep c) show d) stay
7. My little brother has .... how to ride his new bicycle without help.
   a) learns b) learn c) learning d) learned
8. The garden .... decorated with many colorful lights for the party.
   a) was been b) have been c) has been d) is been

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

learned – learning – boost – trust – indifferent – different

I stand for responsibility, honesty, and never giving up. One time, I forgot my homework. Instead of making excuses, I told the truth. That built more (1)................................ with my teacher. I also took responsibility by finishing the task later that day. When someone feels (2)................................ , I try to be caring and listen. I have (3)................................ that even a small act can (4)................................ someone's mood and help them bounce back.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sama's .... helps her overcome different situations.
   a) weakness b) curious c) strength d) popular
2. Mirna should always act .... kindness when she meets new friends at school.
   a) for b) with c) on d) at
3. Lina has known how to swim .... she was a little girl.
   a) from b) for c) since d) ago
4. Who .... taken the last piece of pizza from the box?
   a) did b) is c) does d) has

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My parents have .... (get) married since 2004.
2. The last piece of cake .... (has/eat) by my hungry brother.
3. We can't use the computer because our dad .... (not/fix) it yet.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Values affect you"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 1 Mini-Test

1 Finish the following dialog:

Kareem thinks honesty and respect are most important values.

Nour : Kareem, what values are important to you?

Kareem : (1).. .

Nour : (2)..?

Kareem : Honesty is important because people will trust you more.

Nour : Do you always tell the truth?

Kareem : (3).. .

I try my best, even when it's hard.

Nour : (4)..?

Kareem : Respect! I respect everyone, even if we are different.

Nour : That's a good way to live. Thanks, Kareem.

Kareem : (5).. .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

for - since - arrange - fairness - series - features

I always try to focus on being kind and helpful. One time, we had to (1)................ chairs for a school show. Even though it wasn't my task, I helped. I also once watched a (2)................ where a girl had to be brave to find a clue. I loved that. I have wanted to be like that (3)................ I saw it—someone who helps, tells the truth, and shows (4)................ to everyone, no matter what they are.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sara worked hard to overcome her .... in public speaking by practicing in front of the mirror.
   a) weakness b) fairness c) price d) responsibility
2. It was an amazing .... for our family to go camping in the desert and sleep under the stars.
   a) qualities b) support c) experience d) science
3. Asser dreamed of .... a goal and winning the championship for his school.
   a) telling b) asking c) bringing d) scoring
4. The green traffic light stands .... go and drive your car safely.
   a) to b) for c) at d) in

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dalia has known her best friend .... (for) she was five years old.
2. All the tickets for the match .... (be/sell) already.
3. .... (Has) you ever tasted a mango from a different country?
4. My mom is happy because I .... (clean) my room by myself.
5. Ramez .... (not/tell) anyone about the surprise party yet.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Experiences shaped your identity"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 1 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Tamer thinks that he is a good listener.

Lina : What is your greatest strength, Tamer?
Tamer : (1).. .
Lina : (2)..?
Tamer : That is a strength because it helps people feel heard.
Lina : Do your friends trust you a lot?
Tamer : (3).. .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

just - since - looks - strength - realness - kindness

Some people notice how I dress, but there's so much more to me beyond my (1).......................... . I come from a kind and loving background. At school, I help others and show (2)...................... to everyone. I once faced a big challenge during a group project, but I showed (3)...................... and didn't give up. My teacher told me I was unique and reminded me that confidence comes from what we do, not (4)...................... how we look.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Kareem always wore big, round glasses. Some kids at school teased him and called him "Professor." Kareem felt bad at first and wished he didn't need glasses. One day, during science class, the teacher asked a hard question. Kareem raised his hand and gave the correct answer. Everyone was surprised and clapped. The teacher smiled and said, "Our real professor is Kareem!" From that day, the other students started respecting him more. Kareem felt proud of being smart and different. He learned that what makes him unique is also what makes him strong.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What subject were they studying when Kareem answered the question?

....

2. Write what happened in the story in your own words.

....

3. What do you think Kareem will do if someone teases him again?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is Kareem ....
   a) lost his glasses
   b) learned to feel proud of who he is
   c) became a real professor
   d) gave wrong answers in class
5. Kareem was teased for wearing ....
   a) a red hat b) big shoes
   c) round glasses d) a backpack

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .... parents came to watch their children in the school talent show tonight.
   a) eye contact b) attitude
   c) supportive d) body language
2. Ali was the first student to .... that the classroom clock had stopped working.
   a) care b) notice c) seem d) improve
3. Gamal has recently .... a new football team at his school.
   a) join b) joined c) joining d) joins
4. I haven't eaten anything .... the breakfast.
   a) for b) since c) at d) on

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Look! Basmala .... (paint) a very colorful picture of her family.
2. .... (Had) Rawan solved the puzzle yet?
3. .... (Does) your little sister ever seen snow in real life?

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

bond	....	....	صراع
strengthen	....	....	محترم للغير
serious	....	....	يسىء فهم
thoughtful	....	....	تعليمات
conversation	....	....	رأى

Language Expressions & Prepositions

point of view	....	....	يتقدم/يتحرك للأمام
solution to	....	....	يلحق القطار
get lost	....	....	يبقى هادئًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يتحدث	....	....
....	ينسى	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
open	....	closed	....

Definitions

....................................: means to share thoughts, feelings, or ideas

....................................: is to find a solution to a problem or conflict

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should .... friendships by spending more time together.
   a) cause b) strengthen
   c) misunderstand d) argue
2. Mesbah asked his mother to .... him for breaking the vase.
   a) forgive b) cause
   c) misunderstand d) solve
3. How do you communicate with your friends abroad? To change communicate into a noun, add the suffix ".....................".
   a) -tion b) -ation c) -ness d) -ity
4. If we had arrived earlier, we could have seen the whole ....
   a) accident b) exhibition
   c) umbrella d) instructions
5. If Adam had remembered his friend's birthday, he .... him a nice gift.
   a) would have bought b) bought
   c) will buy d) would buy
6. Yara would have finished her drawing if she .... more colored pencils.
   a) has b) had had c) would have d) had

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Youssef .... (find) his keys yesterday, he would have opened the door.
2. Nour would have bought the toy if she .... (have) enough money.
3. We would have won the game if our best player .... (not/get) injured.
4. Adam .... (not/fall) off his bike if he had been more careful.
5. I .... (give) you a slice of my pizza if you had just asked for one.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. If I studied harder, I would have passed the test. (............................)
2. She would won the race if she had run faster. (............................)
3. If they had leave earlier, they would have caught the bus. (............................)
4. We would have bought a mobile if we had more money. (............................)

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Salma and Ziad are talking about communication.

Salma : Do you think talking face-to-face is better?

Ziad : (1).. . It feels more real and warm.

Salma : What do you do if someone lives far away?

Ziad : (2).. .

Salma : (3)..?

Ziad : I talk to them at least once a week.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If the tourist had followed the .... carefully, she wouldn't have gotten lost.
   a) map b) umbrella
   c) loud d) misunderstanding
2. Samira is very .... and enjoys playing sports every day.
   a) thoughtful b) respectful
   c) upset d) active
3. The teacher studied the students' .... to check for understanding.
   a) facial expressions b) bonds
   c) failures d) tones
4. If we had known the ice cream shop was closed, we .... all the way there.
   a) didn't walk b) hadn't walked
   c) wouldn't have walked d) wouldn't walk

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Tayem .... (not/forget) his umbrella, he wouldn't have gotten wet.
2. .... (you/come) to my birthday party if you had known about it?
3. What would Jana have .... (do) if she had missed the school bus?

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Solving problems"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

disagreement	....	....	يختفي
frustrated	....	....	إيماءة/حركة يد
determination	....	....	منظم
discipline	....	....	مبادرة
council	....	....	متضايق
achieve	....	....	تصميم/إصرار

Language Expressions & Prepositions

at the dinner table	....	....	ممتلئ بـ
build a relationship	....	....	يبحث عن
take initiative	....	....	يُشكِّل فريقًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يصيب/يؤذي	....	....
....	يختار	....	....
....	يضع	....	....
....	يهز/يهتز	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
distant	....	near/close	....
....	غير مرتب	....	منظم

Definitions

......................: to build a relationship again after distance

......................: not giving up until achieving something

......................: emotionally or physically not close

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

apologized – apologize – chose – speech – meaningful – emotionally

There was a long absence between me and my cousin. Our last (1)........................ had ended in an argument over a missing toy. We didn't talk for weeks. The silence was (2)........................ hard. Then, I saw her laughing with someone else, and I missed her more. If I had (3)........................, she might not have felt so upset. I finally (4)........................ to say sorry, and we're closer now.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Salma .... (ask) for help, she would have finished her homework on time.
2. Karim .... (build) a huge sandcastle if it hadn't started to rain.
3. If they had .... (choose) the blue car, they might have won the race.
4. We .... (not/be) late for the movie if the car hadn't broken down.
5. Malak wouldn't have lost her new book if she .... (not/leave) it on the playground.
6. Would Zain have eaten the cake if he .... (know) it had nuts inside?
7. Kady .... (not/be) angry with you if you had told her the truth.
8. If we .... (leave) home earlier, we would have avoided all the traffic.

3 Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. I didn't study, so I failed the exam. (if)

....

2. She missed the bus because she woke up late. (would have)

....

3. We didn't see the movie because we arrived too late. (if)

....

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I felt .... when I forgot my friend's name.
   a) awkward   b) surprised   c) distant   d) annoyed
2. Our .... textbook includes information about animals and plants.
   a) biology   b) sadness   c) cafeteria   d) initiative
3. A .... is a detailed suggestion or plan.
   a) result   b) cause   c) reason   d) proposal
4. She .... to the concert if she had known her favorite band was playing.
   a) will go   b) would go
   c) went   d) would have gone

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Laila and Noor were best friends. They did everything together—homework, games, and even shared snacks. One day, Laila couldn't find her favorite bracelet. It was a gift from her grandmother. After looking everywhere, she thought Noor might have taken it. She became upset and didn't talk to Noor. Noor didn't understand why Laila was ignoring her. Days passed, and both girls felt lonely. One afternoon, Laila found the bracelet in her schoolbag. She had forgotten she put it there. She ran to Noor's house and explained everything. Noor smiled and said, "I forgive you." They hugged, and everything felt right again. From that day, they promised to always talk when something felt wrong.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Laila find her missing bracelet?
   ....
2. Why did Laila stop talking to Noor?
   ....
3. What happened at the end of the story?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the text is Laila and Noor ....
   a) stop being friends forever   b) find a new best friend
   c) fixed a misunderstanding   d) lose a bracelet
5. Laila thought Noor took her bracelet because ....
   a) she saw Noor with it   b) it was missing
   c) Noor was angry   d) Noor asked to borrow it

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

fight	....	....	سوء فهم
apologize	....	....	صفقة/اتفاق/أمر
proper	....	....	تمامًا/كليًا
intent	....	....	بصراحة/علنًا
rebuild	....	....	قاسٍ/صلب/شديد
glad	....	....	أخيرًا

Language Expressions & Prepositions

solve a problem	....	....	يتحول إلى
close to	....	....	قريب من
say sorry	....	....	يتطلب شجاعة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يُقاتل	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
proper	....	improper	....
....	قاسٍ/صلب/شديد	....	ضعيف

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

had – have – deal – fight – tough – proper

In any relationship, things can get mixed up. That's why it's important to talk things out. When people (1)............................., it's often not about the actual problem but about not feeling heard. If we had shared our true feelings from the start, the situation would (2)............................. gone better. Now, I totally believe in the power of (3)............................. communication. A small conversation can fix a big (4)............................. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When you make a mistake, just .... and fix it.
   a) rebuild b) end
   c) apologize d) damage
2. The workers began to .... the damaged bridge last week.
   a) share b) fight
   c) suggest d) repair
3. They promised to .... close after moving to new places.
   a) get b) stay
   c) go d) work
4. Climbing that rocky hill was a really .... challenge.
   a) proper b) cool
   c) glad d) tough
5. I .... you if you had called me for help with the boxes.
   a) would have helped b) helped
   c) will help d) help
6. If they .... a map, they would have found the way more easily.
   a) use b) have used
   c) had used d) will use
7. We need to build a bridge over the river. We add the prefix "...................." to "build" to repeat the action again.
   a) en- b) re-
   c) im- d) in-
8. We are preparing for the final exam. Add the suffix "...................." to get the adverb of "final".
   a) -er b) -ness
   c) -ing d) -ly

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

ended – openly – misunderstanding – end – finally – properly

Being honest doesn't mean being rude. You can be respectful and still speak (1)................................ . I once thought my friend was ignoring me, but it was just a (2)................................ . We had a long chat, and I realized I'd got everything mixed up. If I had asked her earlier, I wouldn't have (3)................................ up feeling hurt. Since then, I've learned to communicate (4)................................ . It feels good to deal with things clearly.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We need to .... on this project as a team.
   a) work b) deal c) get d) go
2. Nobody can tell .... sure what will happen next.
   a) for b) in c) to d) off
3. Life can be .... sometimes, but don't lose hope.
   a) proper b) tough c) cool d) glad
4. If Ali .... his umbrella, he wouldn't have got wet in the rain.
   a) hasn't forgotten b) has forgotten
   c) had forgotten d) hadn't forgotten

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Where would you have .... (go) for vacation if the beach had been closed?
2. If Rania .... (remember) her friend's address, she would have visited her.
3. Ihab .... (share) his lunch with you if he had known you were hungry.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Good communication with others"

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 Mini-Test

1 Finish the following dialog:

Nour and Hadi are talking about friendships.

Nour : What do you do when you miss a friend?

Hadi : (1).. .

Nour : Do they reply happily?

Hadi : (2).. . We start talking again.

Nour : Do you think friendship needs care?

Hadi : (3).. we need to talk and listen.

Nour : (4)..?

Hadi : If we don't talk, we start to feel apart.

Nour : (5)..?

Hadi : I fix that by sending a message.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

embarrassing – of – with – stress – had kept – keep

My brother and I used to have deep conversations. But (1).................. and busy days made us grow distant. I felt bad, especially after one (2).................. argument over nothing. The sound of silence in the room felt heavy. If we (3).................. our tradition of talks at night, things might have been different. I wrote him a short note filled (4).................. emotion, and we started rebuilding our bond.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Avoiding .... is important for a healthy relationship.
   a) discussion b) miscommunication
   c) conflict d) texting
2. A strong .... between friends helps them support each other.
   a) texting b) conflict
   c) argument d) bond
3. They decided to .... their work online instead of on paper.
   a) submit b) get c) disappear d) fix
4. The sun .... behind the clouds during our picnic.
   a) fixed b) shouted c) laughed d) disappeared
5. If my dad had fixed my bike, I .... it to the park yesterday.
   a) would ride b) rode
   c) could have ridden d) will ride
6. Nour would have played outside with her friends if it .... all afternoon.
   a) hadn't rained b) didn't rain c) wouldn't rain
   d) hasn't rained

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I wouldn't have been so sleepy in class today if I .... (not/ watch) movies late at night.
2. Would your parents have been very proud if you .... (get) first place in the competition?
3. What present would you have .... (buy) for your friend if you had gone to the mall?
4. If that little puppy .... (be) lost, its owner would have been very sad.
5. Camelia .... (plant) colorful flowers in the garden if her mom had bought her some seeds.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Proper Communication"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Laila and Adam are talking about family time.

Laila : How do you spend time with your family?

Adam : (1).. .

Laila : Do you think talking and sharing stories make you closer?

Adam : (2).. I feel safe and loved.

Laila : (3)..?

Adam : Yes, we do. We ask each other about our day.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

wouldn't have – wouldn't – disappear – filled – deep – disagreement

I forgot to call my aunt on her birthday. She felt hurt, and our bond started to (1)...................... . A few days later, I sent her a surprise drawing with a (2)...................... message. She called me, and we talked for hours. Her voice was (3)...................... with emotion. If I had remembered her special day, we (4)...................... had that distance. I learned how small acts can rebuild love.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Jana and Salma were partners for the art project at school. They planned to draw a big tree with many colorful leaves. But during art class, Jana used glitter all over the drawing without asking. Salma got mad and said the project was ruined. Jana felt sad and didn't talk to her for two days. At home, she told her older sister what happened. Her sister said, "Friends make mistakes. Maybe you can fix it together." The next day, Jana showed Salma how the glitter made the tree sparkle like sunlight. Salma smiled and said, "I like it now." They added more colors and finished the project. It turned out beautiful, just like their friendship.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did Jana use on the art project that upset Salma?

....

2. What advice did Jana's sister give her?

....

3. How did the two girls fix their project and friendship?

....

4. What do you think they learned from this experience?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5. The story is mainly about two girls ....
   a) winning a prize b) leading a stronger team
   c) causing a school fire d) leaving school
6. Salma got angry with Jana because Jana ....
   a) left school b) didn't help
   c) added glitter d) wanted to work alone

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You should never .... someone who needs your help.
   a) forgive b) laugh c) ignore d) strengthen
2. Basmala felt a lot of .... before the big test.
   a) absence b) stress c) movement d) distraction
3. Waleed looked .... and didn't join the group chat.
   a) busy b) frustrated c) annoyed d) distant
4. I would have bought that T-shirt if it .... in my size.
   a) was b) would be c) had been d) is

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we had .... (take) a photo, we would have remembered that funny moment.
2. The ice cream .... (not/melt) if you had put it back in the freezer.
3. .... (Hala/buy) the pretty dress if it had been cheaper?

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

behavior	....	....	عواطف
improvement	....	....	مُبدع/واسع الخيال
vacuum cleaner	....	....	اختراع
driverless	....	....	إعلان
improve	....	....	يؤلف/يكتب
replacement	....	....	يفحص/يراجع

Language Expressions & Prepositions

follow orders	....	....	يؤدى مهمة/عمل
go inside	....	....	يُعِد إعلانًا
get tired	....	....	يتخذ قرارًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يُحضر	....	....
....	يضع	....	....
....	يرسل	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
expensive	....	cheap	....
....	بسيط	....	معقد

Definitions

....................................: jobs or actions that need to be done

....................................: create or produce

....................................: people; men, women, and children

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Robots can .... work faster than people.
   a) do   b) follow
   c) make   d) leave
2. She learned how to .... her emotions during hard times.
   a) allow   b) control
   c) develop   d) expect
3. You will .... tired if you don't take a break from studying.
   a) keep   b) get
   c) put   d) have
4. .... means something that takes attention away.
   a) Smart   b) Focused
   c) Modern   d) Distraction
5. Students .... most of their lessons online in the future.
   a) will take   b) will be taken
   c) are taken   d) take
6. Teachers .... their jobs because of AI.
   a) won't lose   b) will be lost
   c) won't be lost   d) losing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Smartphones .... (be) even smarter in five years.
2. Scientists .... (discover) new planets in the future.
3. The new bridge .... (open) next month.
4. The match .... (play) live on TV next Thursday.
5. The email .... (send) to you tomorrow.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. The homework will checked tomorrow. (..................................)
2. The books will be deliver to your house. (..................................)
3. Lunch will serve at noon. (..................................)
4. The rooms will cleaning tomorrow morning. (..................................)

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nour is asking Youssef about AI.

Nour : Can AI be fun to use?

Youssef : (1).. . I use it in games and music apps.

Nour : (2)..?

Youssef : Yes, it plays with me and it learns what I like.

Nour : Can it tell jokes?

Youssef : Some robots can tell jokes.

Nour : What's your favorite thing about AI?

Youssef : (3).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This program is very .... and needs more training to use.
   a) advanced b) cheap c) basic d) further
2. That new .... can vacuum the house all by itself!
   a) program b) robot c) hospital d) human
3. How will AI .... us at schools?
   a) help b) helping c) helped d) helps
4. Will more new hospitals .... by 2030?
   a) build b) be built c) building d) built

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. AI teachers will.............................. (explained) the lessons clearly.
2. Our homework will .... (check) instantly by AI.
3. The school garden will be cleaned .... (on) the students.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"AI and robots"

....

....

....

....

....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

congratulate	....	....	متحفز
disappointed	....	....	مرتبك
climate	....	....	مُفاجئ/مُدهِش
learning website	....	....	لامع
failure	....	....	مُعلِّم روبوت
customize	....	....	اتصال

Language Expressions & Prepositions

ask for	....	....	يحمي من
with determination	....	....	يسير على ما يرام
aware of	....	....	قبل يوم الجمعة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يُعلم/يُدرس	....	....
....	يقف	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
....	معتاد	....	غير معتاد

Definitions

............: the usual weather in a place

............: to change something to make it the way you want

............: a link between people, things, or ideas

............: to stop doing something because it's too hard

............: taking action without waiting for others

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

ordinary – extra – instantly – used – use – confused

My new AI app helps me learn math faster than ever. It gives me (1)........................ lessons when I need help. At school, we have a new robot teacher. He's not like an (2)........................ teacher. He has shiny, blue eyes. I was (3)........................ at first, but now I understand him better. He makes learning fun and explains math problems in an exciting way. By the time I graduate, more robot teachers will be (4)........................ in schools.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The classroom .... (be/cleaned) after the lesson.
2. My father .... (travel) to Aswan next winter.
3. .... (Does) AI control all home devices soon?
4. Robots .... (be) more common in schools and homes.
5. New AI systems .... (design) to assist elderly people.
6. In the future, AI .... (not/make) emotional decisions like humans.
7. The road .... (will/repair) next month.
8. This problem .... (will/solve) by the new manager.

3 Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. They will publish the new book next year. (be)

....

2. The teacher will check the homework tomorrow. (The homework)

....

3. Someone will paint our house in spring. (will be)

....

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... your opinion, what's the best way to solve the problem?
   a) At b) On c) In d) With
2. I didn't .... any mistakes in the AI teacher's lesson.
   a) notice b) customize c) infer d) congratulate
3. Each .... made a big difference to the hospital.
   a) seed b) donation c) climate d) plan
4. Do you think robot teachers will .... in the future?
   a) use b) be used c) using d) uses

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Robots are not just in hospitals or factories. Many people now use robots at home. There are robots that clean the floor, like robot vacuums. Some robots can talk and answer questions. People can ask them to play music or tell the weather. Other robots help with cooking by telling the recipe or measuring food. Some homes have robots that watch for danger, like fire or strangers. These robots keep families safe. People like having robots at home because they save time and make life easier. In the future, we may have robots that can fold clothes or do the laundry.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Name two things robots can do at home. ....
2. Why do people like having robots at home? ....
3. What new home jobs might robots do one day? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a) robots live in schools
   b) people use robots to help with jobs at home
   c) only chefs use robots
   d) robots are dangerous at home
5. Robot vacuums can ....
   a) wash dishes b) clean the floor
   c) paint the walls d) bake cakes

Unit 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
creativity	....	....	يتعرف على
order	....	....	يساعد
powerful	....	....	فورى
definitely	....	....	منطقة
humans	....	....	يشمل
poetry	....	....	مثير/شيق
elderly	....	....	يطور/ينمى

Language Expressions & Prepositions			
chance for	....	....	يوصل طلب
controlled by	....	....	ينشئ قواعد
discover medicines	....	....	يرتكب خطأ
go further	....	....	تزداد علاقته قربًا بـ
in detail	....	....	فى عالم الغد

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

limits – will be – stay – will – hospitals

AI is becoming really advanced. In the future, robots with AI (1) .... help people in many ways. They will be used in schools, (2) ...., and homes. AI might recognize emotions better one day, but it has (3) .... People must use AI carefully and control it to (4) .... safe.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Could you .... me with carrying these heavy boxes upstairs?
   a) order b) assist
   c) develop d) recognize
2. The .... woman needed help crossing the busy street. She couldn't cross alone.
   a) instant b) powerful
   c) elderly d) exciting
3. The teacher loves seeing students use their .... in art projects.
   a) poetry b) creativity
   c) order d) area
4. Basmala got a/an .... reply to her question from the AI chatbot.
   a) powerful b) instant
   c) exciting d) elderly
5. New AI tools .... to improve online learning.
   a) will use b) is using
   c) will be used d) are using
6. The students .... the test next Friday.
   a) won't take b) will be taken
   c) won't be taken d) didn't take
7. Can you assist me in finding the missing book? The synonym of "assist" is "....................".
   a) recognize b) order
   c) support d) identify
8. Every machine needs power to work. We add the suffix "...................." to "power" to get its adjective.
   a) -ful b) -ous
   c) -ing d) -ly

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

recognize – in – on – powerful – systems

Schools will become exciting places with the help of AI. Lessons will be explained (1)........................ detail, and every student will have a chance for success. AI can (2)........................ a student's level and give the right support. In the future, homework will be corrected instantly by smart (3)........................ . Teachers will still use creativity to keep learning fun. In some areas, AI will assist students who have learning difficulties. The future of education looks (4)........................ .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If we study harder, we will .... further in science competitions.
   a) go b) think c) start d) break
2. The student wrote .... about friendship and love.
   a) area b) power c) poetry d) order
3. His .... helped him paint a beautiful picture in class.
   a) creativity b) poetry c) area d) order

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Doctors .... (not/replace) by AI completely.
2. .... (AI/help) students with their homework?
3. Important decisions .... (not/make) by AI alone.

4 Write an email of SIX (6) sentences to your friend Kady to tell her about the benefits of AI. Your name is Hanaa and your email is hanaa@moon.com. Your friend's email is kady@moon.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 3 Mini-Test

1 Finish the following dialog:

Sara wants to see robot teachers, but Hana prefers human teachers.

Sara : Do you think we'll have robot teachers one day?

Hana : (1)................................ . But I still prefer human teachers.

Sara : (2)...?

Hana : Because they understand our feelings.

Sara : Can AI help teachers in class?

Hana : (3).............................. . It can show videos and check answers.

Sara : Will we stop using books?

Hana : (4).......................... I think we'll use both books and tablets.

Sara : (5)...?

Hana: It can help students with their homework.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

will - will be - normal - of - by - infer

Our school had a robot teacher for the first time. It was fun, but I missed my (1)................ teacher. Still, I have to admit, the robot gave instant feedback. It helped me (2)................ the meaning of hard words. I was aware (3)................ how fast I was learning. By Friday, a new robot teacher (4)................ tested in every classroom.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The robot was programmed to .... voice commands only.
   a) move b) find c) follow d) paint
2. Teachers help students .... stress during exams.
   a) report b) reduce c) return d) serve
3. Our school collected a .... to help the poor children.
   a) soil b) seed c) reaction d) donation
4. We must learn to .... our mistakes and fix them.
   a) order b) develop c) assist d) recognize
5. .... your father buy you a new bike tomorrow?
   a) Does b) Has c) Will d) Is
6. A lot of projects will .... in Egypt by 2030.
   a) complete b) completed
   c) be completed d) completing

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The new school building .... (finish) by next month.
2. We .... (not/attend) the meeting if it rains.
3. .... (she/help) the new students tomorrow?
4. A prize .... (give) to the winner of the competition.
5. They .... (build) a new park near our house.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The future of AI and robots"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 3 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sama asks Hala about using AI.

Sama : Do you use AI at home?

Hala : (1)................................ . I use it for learning and games.

Sama : Would you like more AI at school?

Hala : (2)................................ . But I still want a real teacher with me.

Sama : (3)..?

Hala : Because a real teacher understands our feelings.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

recognize – for – on – in – go

AI will change how hospitals work. Doctors will (1).................. further in treating patients. Instant tests will be ordered by smart systems. The elderly will be better cared (2).................. with the help of robots. Nurses will still use their creativity to make patients feel comfortable. AI will (3).................. health problems early and assist in treatments. In the future, hospitals (4).................. homes may even become common. AI is truly exciting in the medical world!

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In some restaurants, robots are now serving food. They can carry dishes, bring drinks, and even talk to customers. These robots move between tables using wheels and maps. Some robots also take orders and send them to the kitchen. People enjoy seeing robots because it makes eating out more fun. Chefs may also use robots to help cook or clean. These robots save time and help workers focus on other tasks. In busy restaurants, robots are very helpful. In the future, we might see robots cooking meals and cleaning tables all on their own.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Name two jobs robots do in restaurants...
2. Why are robots useful in busy restaurants?...................................
3. What do you think restaurant robots will do in the future?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?
   a) Robots help in many restaurant jobs.
   b) Robots are too slow in restaurants.
   c) Only waiters can bring food.
   d) Robots can't be used in restaurants.
5. What do some robots do with food orders?
   a) Eat the food. b) Throw the orders away.
   c) Send them to the kitchen. d) Paint them.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... can feel emotions, but robots cannot feel the same way.
   a) Emotions b) Limits c) Humans d) Shapes
2. That online .... helped me find a cheap hotel.
   a) essay b) report
   c) advertisement d) story
3. Shaimaa felt .... when the AI app gave two answers.
   a) confused b) fun c) normal d) shiny
4. My friends .... invited to my next birthday party.
   a) will b) have c) going to d) will be

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (you/visit) your grandparents next weekend?
2. He .... (not/complete) the project on time without help.
3. Will we .... (give) extra homework by the teacher?

Unit 4
Lessons 1&2

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

entertainment	....	....	مُراهِق
distracted	....	....	مهارة
balance	....	....	حديث/متطور
privacy	....	....	أثار جانبية
screen use	....	....	صداع
monorail	....	....	ذهنيًا/نفسيًا

Language Expressions & Prepositions

away from	....	....	يأخذ استراحة قصيرة
do schoolwork	....	....	يتبع قواعد السلامة
change settings	....	....	يُحدث ضوضاء

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يقضى/ينفق	....	....
....	يبنى	....	....
....	يعنى	....	....
....	يأخذ	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
advantage	....	disadvantage	....

Definitions

..................................: a person who knows a lot about something

..................................: not easily distracted

..................................: fun activities like games or watching TV

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To stay healthy, it's important to do some .... activity every day.
   a) mental b) productive c) physical d) total
2. A/An .... is a person who knows a lot about something.
   a) balance b) entertainment c) screen d) expert
3. We should always .... the amount of time we spend on screens.
   a) recommend b) limit c) scroll d) balance
4. Playing video games before homework is a bad .... for some students.
   a) wise b) habit c) crowd d) modern
5. This store sells good products. We add the suffix "............................" to get the adjective of "product".
   a) -ment b) -ive c) -y d) -ous
6. .... she didn't study, she passed the test.
   a) Although b) Because c) So d) While

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister went outside .... (because) it was raining.
2. I stayed quiet .... (if) my brother was talking.
3. We must .... (to bring) our books every day.
4. You .... (shouldn't) be kind to your classmates.
5. My brother likes tennis, ... (although) my sister prefers basketball.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. While the cake didn't look nice, it tasted amazing. (............................)
2. You should to take a deep breath when you feel nervous. (............................)
3. You must touch the museum items. It's not allowed. (............................)
4. On one hand, playing video games is fun, but on another hand, it wastes time. (............................)

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Maha and Rana are talking about building roads.

Maha : Do you think building roads is important?

Rana : (1).. . It helps people travel safely.

Maha : (2)..?

Rana : Yes, there are many modern roads in Egypt.

Maha : Is it good for drivers?

Rana : (3).. And for buses and trucks too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Good .... helps us relax, but too much isn't healthy.
   a) expert b) entertainment c) screen use d) focus
2. One .... of living far away is the long time it takes to travel.
   a) advantage b) disadvantage c) password d) library
3. I couldn't stay .... with all the noise from outside.
   a) smart b) focused c) distracted d) user
4. .... you tell me how I can protect my eyes when using a tablet?
   a) Should b) Can c) Must d) Mustn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Laila passed the test .... (so) she didn't study much.
2. Hana .... (can) watch TV if she hasn't done her homework.
3. Children .... (shouldn't) go to bed early on school nights.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Screen time"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

fertilizers	....	....	مصدوم
nervous	....	....	مادة خام
global responsibility	....	....	قلق
notifications	....	....	الجيل القادم
eco-friendly	....	....	نجاح
growing	....	....	قائد/زعيم

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make a plan	....	....	يُحدث تغييرًا
lead a group	....	....	يبقى بعيدًا/يبتعد
harmful to	....	....	مسئول عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يقابل	....	....
....	يبدأ	....	....
....	يقود	....	....
....	يحفظ	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
turn off	....	turn on	....

Definitions

................: caring for the Earth and future generations

................: happy about something you or others achieved

................: answers to problems

................: not harmful to nature

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

keep – realized – though – although – get – relaxed

Yesterday, I felt very nervous because I forgot to do my homework. I had spent hours watching videos. I finally (1)........................ I needed time for other things. Even (2)........................ my tablet is fun, it keeps me from reading or playing outside. I now try to (3)........................ away from screens when it's not needed. My mom helps me make a change in my routine. We sometimes meet in person with friends instead of chatting online. I feel more (4)........................ now.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. On one hand, staying up late is fun. .... (Because) we feel sleepy the next day.
2. .... (So) my sister is younger, she is taller than me now.
3. Mom likes to eat at home .... (if) Dad prefers to eat out.
4. We .... (can) answer this question; it's too difficult.
5. You .... (visit/can) your cousin if you finish your homework.
6. Why .... (we/should) save water at home?
7. You should .... (takes) a deep breath when you feel nervous or worried.
8. We .... (must) make noise in the library.

3 Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. It's bad for you to eat too many sweets. (mustn't)

....

2. It's advisable for us to take care of nature. (should)

....

3. They left the house late, so they missed the bus. (because)

....

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I didn't .... my backpack was missing until I got home from school.
   a) relax b) realize c) shock d) call
2. She looked very .... while sitting by the sea. She was very comfortable.
   a) shocked b) surprised c) relaxed d) nervous
3. Omar felt proud of his .... after winning the science competition.
   a) method b) success c) leader d) material
4. The teacher stayed calm and was .... control of the noisy class.
   a) of b) on c) in d) at

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Omar loved video games. He played them before school, after school, and even during meals. His grades started going down. His mom said, "We need to make a change." Together, they made a plan. Omar would use a timer and play only for one hour a day. Although Omar didn't like the idea, he agreed to try. He started writing in his journal and reading more. Even though he still played games, he was now in control of his time. While it was hard at first, he began feeling proud of himself. He had more time to talk to his family and walk with his dad in the evening. Omar learned that screen time is okay—if it's balanced.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How did Omar's screen time affect his schoolwork?

   ....

2. Why do you think he felt proud later?

   ....

3. What might Omar say to his friend who plays too much?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is Omar ....
   a) stopped playing video games b) played games with his dad
   c) learned to control his screen time d) bought a phone
5. Omar used to limit screen time of his ....
   a) phone b) timer c) notebook d) clock

Unit 4
Lessons 5 & 6

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
smooth	....	....	يشتت/يلهى
briefly	....	....	يدير/يدبر/يتمكن
culture	....	....	مؤدب
annoying	....	....	تكنولوجى
wisely	....	....	ممحاة/أستيكة
outdoor	....	....	يستكشف
Grand Egyptian Museum	....	....	وقت الدراسة
history	....	....	مفيد

Language Expressions & Prepositions			
set a timer for	....	....	يبقى مركزًا
get good sleep	....	....	فى الوقت المحدد
connected to	....	....	يحقق أهدافًا
get good sleep	....	....	يشعر بتحسن
have fun	....	....	قُم بإنهاء عملك

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		
يُعد	....	....
يحصل على	....	....

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

history – enjoy – enjoys – outdoor – mood – report

Using screens wisely can help you feel better. If you always use your tablet, your (1)................................ might change. You must not use screens during meals. Try writing your ideas briefly in a notebook instead. I visited a museum and learned a lot about Egypt's (2)................................ . That was more fun than being on a phone all day. Be on time for (3)................................ games with friends. You can (4)................................ both culture and real life.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I try to .... my time carefully, so I can play and study too.
   a) annoy b) achieve c) distract d) manage
2. It's really .... when someone talks loudly on the phone in public.
   a) smooth b) polite c) annoying d) local
3. My phone isn't connected .... the internet, so I can't check my messages.
   a) for b) to c) on d) at
4. When I drink warm tea and rest, I usually .... better.
   a) achieve b) set c) stay d) feel
5. .... the boy studied hard, he didn't pass the science test.
   a) While b) Although
   c) Even though d) On the other hand
6. You .... lie about your real name when talking to strangers online.
   a) must b) should c) mustn't d) can
7. Loud noises late can annoy others. We add the suffix "........................" to get the adjective of "annoy".
   a) -ing b) -ful c) -ly d) -ive
8. Basmala can manage her time well. The synonym of "manage" is "........................".
   a) achieve b) distract c) annoy d) control

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

achieve - stay - should - amazing - outdoor

Too much screen time can affect your eyes and your mind. I watched a show about the past and how children lived without phones. It made me think. You (1)............................ use technology only when needed. I decided to do (2)............................ activities, so I went to the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was (3)............................ . Use your time wisely to (4)............................ goals that make you proud.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I'm trying to .... a balance between screen time and outdoor play.
   a) get b) feel c) find d) have
2. It's smart to .... specific times for studying and relaxing each day.
   a) set b) feel c) stay d) find
3. If you want to .... your goals, you must work hard every day.
   a) fix b) achieve c) break d) explain
4. We .... go to the park today if the weather stays nice and sunny.
   a) must b) can c) shouldn't d) mustn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We .... (must) eat too many sweets because they are not good for our teeth.
2. We .... (mustn't) always be kind to young children.
3. I don't think Adel .... (shouldn't) bring his guitar.

4 Write an email of SIX (6) sentences to your friend Hala to tell her about screen time. Your name is Sama and your email is sama@moon.com. Your friend's email is hala@moon.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 Mini-Test

1 Finish the following dialog:

Mona and Lina are discussing screen limits.

Mona : My mom says I need screen limits.

Lina : (1)... .

Mona : (2)...?

Lina : You should be two hours a day on your screen.

Mona : (3)...?

Lina : You can use a timer or an alarm to limit your screen time.

Mona : What can I do if I go over time?

Lina : (4)... .

Mona : OK, I'll stop. Will that make me happy?

Lina : (5)... . Your body will feel better.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

set – sit – distract – using – use – find

Sometimes I play games on my tablet for too long, and it can (1)................ me during study time. I try to (2)................ a balance by going outdoor to ride my bike. The fresh air helps me feel better. My parents told me I shouldn't (3)................ screens right before bed because it affects my sleep. I (4)................ specific times for my screen use, so I can get my work done and still have fun later.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Watching cartoons or playing video games is a kind of .... for kids.
   a) screen b) movies
   c) entertainment d) trouble sleeping
2. Rana stayed .... during the test and didn't let anything distract her.
   a) focused b) privacy c) policy d) user
3. I missed the meeting because I didn't get any .... on my tablet.
   a) connections b) notifications c) surprises d) areas
4. These plants need more sunlight and better .... to grow properly.
   a) reports b) fertilizers c) tomatoes d) leaders
5. She was playing the piano .... her brother was doing his homework.
   a) although b) while c) so d) because
6. He .... wear sunglasses because the sun is too bright today.
   a) must b) can't c) need d) mustn't

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (If) she was scared, she spoke in front of the class.
2. .... (Should) I open the window? It's really hot in here.
3. .... (We should) bring healthy snacks to school instead of junk food?
4. Students .... (can) follow the school rules to keep everyone safe and happy.
5. They were happy .... (although) they finished the difficult puzzle.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Screen time"

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Yasmin is telling Salma how to balance screens.

Salma: My dad says I use the computer too much.

Yasmin: (1)..?

Salma: I told him that I did my homework.

Yasmin: Do you play games too?

Salma: (2)... . But after I finish my work.

Yasmin: Maybe your dad wants more balance.

Salma: (3)..?

Yasmin: You should show him your homework first.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

wisely – rarely – password – avoiding – distractions

To protect your personal information, you should create a strong (1)................ and never share it online. The internet is a great place, but (2)................ and lies can easily take attention away. Egypt's young generation must develop habits that use technology (3)................ . Being wise means understanding the advantages of smart tools while (4)................ their disadvantages.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Tamer was spending too much time on his phone. His parents noticed that he looked tired and was not doing his homework. One day, they all sat down and made a plan together. Tamer would check his screen time report each evening and write in his journal how he felt. He could watch videos or play games only after finishing his homework and chores. Although Tamer was nervous at first, he started feeling better. He had more time to play with his dog, read books, and talk with friends in person. Even though he didn't stop using his phone completely, he kept away from it when he didn't need it. His teachers saw a big change in his work. While using his phone was still fun, Tamer learned to be in control of his time and to make better choices.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What helped Tamer change his screen habits?................................
2. Why do you think Tamer felt nervous at first?................................
3. What might Tamer do if he forgets to follow the plan?............

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Tamer learned to .... screen time with a family plan.
   a) use b) balance c) damage d) buy
5. Tamer .... before he could watch videos.
   a) takes a nap
   b) talks to his parents
   c) finishes homework and chores
   d) eats dinner

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I will .... explain what happened, so we won't waste much time.
   a) rarely b) briefly c) wisely d) recently
2. We need to .... our study time better before the final exam.
   a) annoy b) smooth c) distract d) manage
3. The best .... to grow fresh tomatoes is using natural fertilizers.
   a) leader b) method c) material d) lettuce
4. .... we tried to be quiet, the baby woke up.
   a) Although b) Because c) So d) While

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't go to the park .... (so) I had to finish my homework first.
2. .... (And) I enjoy maths, I sometimes find it hard.
3. Although she studies hard, she .... (can) remember the answer during the test.

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

design	....	....	مصمم
stylish	....	....	تطوير سريع
brainstorm	....	....	فعال
complex	....	....	توليد الأفكار
backpack	....	....	وظيفة
impossible	....	....	خطوات

Language Expressions & Prepositions

explore ideas	....	....	يبتكر أفكارًا
important for	....	....	يعمل فى مشروع
work in a team	....	....	على الورق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يصنع	....	....
....	يفهم	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
safety	....	danger	....
successful	....	unsuccessful	....
....	مناسب	....	غير مناسب

Definitions

........................: ability to make new ideas

........................: a process of solving complex problems

........................: a way to solve a problem

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The famous .... created beautiful clothes for the fashion show.
   a) model b) building c) designer d) problem-solver
2. Laila felt .... when she had to speak in front of many people.
   a) practical b) suitable c) effective d) afraid
3. Omar forgot to write his answers .... the sheet during the test.
   a) inside b) beside c) around d) on
4. Mira enjoys sitting in the garden because nature helps her .... beautiful ideas.
   a) kill b) make c) burn d) stop
5. Rana eats her breakfast, ... she brushes her teeth and gets ready for school.
   a) then b) first c) to begin with d) firstly
6. When you feel angry, ... deep breaths to calm down.
   a) take b) taking c) takes d) to take

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Please .... (to knock) on the door three times before you enter the room.
2. To plant a flower in the garden, ... (then) you must dig a small hole in the soil.
3. First, Lara washes the fresh apples, ... (to begin with), she cuts them into small pieces.
4. .... (No worry) about the test because you have studied very hard for it.
5. Eman, ... (listens) carefully to what I say.

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Not talk loudly in the library when other people are reading books. (....................)
2. When you see trash on the ground, please to pick it up immediately. (....................)
3. Mix the yellow and blue paint. First, use the new color. (....................)
4. Before eating your dinner, please washing your hands with soap and water. (....................)

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nour wants to think like designers.

Omar : Our classroom is always noisy. What can we do?
Nour : Let's think like designers and solve the problem.
Omar : (1)..?
Nour : First, they understand people's needs.
Omar : What do teachers need to teach?
Nour : (2)..
Omar : (3)..?
Nour : We can talk to our classmates about that.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Zakaria built a .... of his invention before making the real one.
   a) prototype b) function c) comfort d) safety
2. The teacher told Yasmine that she must .... in a team to finish the big project.
   a) sleep b) sing c) work d) jump
3. .... push other children when you are waiting in line together.
   a) Don't b) Not c) No d) Doesn't
4. .... forget to pack your lunch box before leaving for school tomorrow.
   a) Not b) No c) Don't d) Doesn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. To make a sandwich, ... (finally) you need to get two pieces of bread from the bag.
2. Please .... (to water) the beautiful flowers in the garden every morning before school.
3. .... (Not/talking) with your mouth full of food during dinner at the table.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"How to solve a problem"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
newcomer	....	....	مرحب به
curious	....	....	لوحات/رسومات
dedicated	....	....	زراعة
impact	....	....	يعامل
self-awareness	....	....	لافتة
learner	....	....	قيادة
inspired	....	....	صناعة
Language Expressions & Prepositions			
feel sorry	....	....	يرى من وجهة نظرهم
careful with	....	....	حب لـ
ask for advice	....	....	ممتلئ بـ
add art	....	....	يدون

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

curious - Be - To be - welcomed - corner - map

One day, a newcomer named Ziad arrived in our class. He stood alone near the break-time (1)................................., looking shy. I decided to welcome him by saying hello and showing him around" (2)................................. kind—go talk to someone new today!" I told myself. He was very (3)......................... about our school and asked many questions. When I listened closely, I could see through his eyes. It was hard for him, but he soon felt (4)................................. .

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Be) late for school again, Samy.
2. .... (Lastly), boil the water to make tea.
3. I finished my project .... (final).
4. Mariam, ... (makes) some tea for me, please.
5. Don't .... (to waste) your time, Sara.
6. .... (Make) noise in the library. You shouldn't do that.
7. .... (In end), hard work leads to true success.
8. .... (Didn't) explore ideas from only one person or point of view.

3 Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. You mustn't climb on the furniture because you might fall. (Don't)

....

2. To begin with, you should wash your hands before eating. (Firstly)

....

3. After you wash the dishes, dry them. (then)

....

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Fatima wants to study .... at university to help farmers grow better crops.
   a) agriculture b) leadership
   c) industry d) self-awareness
2. When Malika saw the hungry cat in the rain, she started to .... sorry for it.
   a) make b) feel c) do d) take
3. The friendly .... from Canada told everyone about the beautiful lakes in her country.
   a) corner b) newcomer
   c) map d) gardener
4. .... write in library books because they belong to everyone in town.
   a) Not b) Don't c) No d) Doesn't

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Lena had just moved to a new city. On her first day at school, she stood near the break-time corner, holding her lunch and looking around. She was curious but also a little nervous. She didn't know anyone yet. Huda noticed her and said to her friend, "We should welcome her. It must be hard for her." They walked over and smiled. "Come sit with us!" they said kindly. Lena smiled back and slowly walked over. During lunch, they asked questions and listened closely to Lena. She shared about her old school and how different this one felt. By seeing things through her eyes, the girls understood how scary it was to be new. That helped them treat her kindly. By the end of the day, Lena felt safe, happy, and truly welcomed.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Lena stand during break-time?
2. Why do you think Lena was nervous on her first day?
3. What might happen next time a new student joins the class?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is two girls ....
   a) played near the corner b) like the food at school
   c) helped a newcomer d) went back to old school
5. Lena held her .... when she stood near the corner.
   a) backpack b) toy c) book d) lunch

Unit 5
Lessons 5 & 6

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

مخطط/رسم بيانى	عملية ....
مجهود	يبلغ من العمر ....
يتردد	مثالى ....
جدول للتذكير	يُصرح/يذكر/يوضح ....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يتوصل إلى فكرة	get better ....
يقلق على	make a model ....
يرسم مخططًا	ask for ....

Definitions

........................: to invent or think of an idea or plan

........................: logically correct; easy to understand

........................: as good as possible; ideal

........................: a series of steps or actions taken to achieve something

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Don't - Not - stated - up with - out of - reminder

In class, we learned how to solve problems using design thinking. Our teacher asked us to come (1)................................ ideas to stop people from losing things. We made a chart to show where lost items go. Mariam made a model of a (2)................................ chart and placed it on her desk. She (3)................................ it could help students remember their things. "(4)................................ hesitate—share your idea with your team!" These are our teacher's encouraging words to finish our project.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmed began to .... when choosing between the red bicycle and the blue one.
   a) chart b) hesitate c) age d) state
2. With great ...., Laila finally managed to come first.
   a) effort b) reminder c) chart d) desk
3. Rania's grandmother .... eighty still bakes the most delicious cookies for the whole family.
   a) reminded b) stated c) hesitated d) aged
4. Hala drew a weather .... to show if it was sunny or rainy each day.
   a) reminder b) effort c) chart d) desk
5. When you finish eating your breakfast, please .... your plate to the kitchen.
   a) brings b) bringing c) bring d) to bring
6. When you want to bake cookies, ... you need to wash your hands carefully.
   a) finally b) first c) then d) next
7. The teacher asked Mariam to .... her name clearly for all the students.
   a) hesitate b) state c) age d) chart
8. Farah needs to come up .... interesting topics for her presentation.
   a) for b) on c) about d) with

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

reminder - effort - built - Try - Trying - hesitate

Kareem, aged nine, kept forgetting his homework. His team didn't laugh at him; instead, they tried to help him. They decided to make a (1).................. chart with colors and pictures. Kareem didn't (2).................. to ask for help. The team came up with many fun ideas and (3).................. a prototype. Kareem placed it near his desk. It worked! (4).................. something new to help your friends. Design thinking made a real difference for Kareem.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher asked Judy to .... a chart showing the weather patterns this month.
   a) break b) make c) hide d) throw
2. Mahmoud tends to worry .... his math test results because he finds numbers difficult.
   a) with b) about c) for d) on
3. Malak decided to ask her teacher .... extra help with her math homework today.
   a) about b) for c) to d) with
4. When playing in the playground, always .... nicely with all your friends.
   a) plays b) playing c) to play d) play

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (No run) across the busy street without looking both ways for cars.
2. Please .... (to feed) the hungry birds some bread crumbs in the park today.
3. To plant a flower in the garden, ... (then) you must dig a small hole in the soil.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A problem you faced"

....
....
....
....
....

Unit 5 Mini-Test

1 Finish the following dialog:

Sama and Jomana are trying to solve the problem of rubbish in their community.

Sama : Do you love your community?

Jomana : (1).. .

Sama : (2)..?

Jomana : Rubbish is the most dangerous problem in it.

Sama : What did you do to solve this problem?

Jomana : (3).. .

Sama : (4)..?

Jomana : Yes, we made posters to guide people.

Sama : (5).. .

Jomana : You're welcome.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

through - by - Invite - Inviting - welcomed - newcomer

Kareem stood near the break-time corner, holding a map he had made himself. He was a (1).................... and didn't know anyone yet. He watched us closely, curious and quiet. "(2).................... him to play a game!" our teacher said. So we did. I could feel how hard it was for him at first. But when we listened to him and laughed together, I started to see (3).................... his eyes. He felt (4).................... at last.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Malek promised to be best friends with Rahaf .... life.
   a) by b) for c) with d) at
2. Many people in our village work in .... to feed their families.
   a) growth b) impact c) trade d) agriculture
3. Sayed is a/an .... student who never misses any of his classes.
   a) pretended b) inspired c) treated d) dedicated
4. Every team needs a good .... to help with difficult challenges.
   a) model b) building c) problem-solver d) designer
5. Before going to bed tonight, ... your teeth for two whole minutes.
   a) brushing b) brush c) brushes d) to brush
6. .... you should choose your favorite book from the big shelf in the library.
   a) To begin with b) After that c) Lastly d) Next

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. To pack your suitcase for vacation, ... (then) you should make a list of everything you need.
2. First, Leen picks fresh flowers; .... (firstly), she arranges them in a vase.
3. .... (To help) your mom carry the heavy shopping bags from the car.
4. .... (No be) rude to your little sister when she asks for help.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Finding a solution for a problem"

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Amina and Bilal try to solve a problem.

Amina: The sun is too hot on the playground.

Bilal : How about designing a shade roof?

Amina: (1)................................ . What material do we need?

Bilal : We need something strong but light.

Amina: (2).. .

Bilal : (3)..?

Amina: We should tell the principal.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

for - Don't - Not - define - prepare - involves

Designers dream about solutions that help others. They (1).............. problems and use design thinking to explore how people live and what they need. Whether it's creating a space (2).............. learning or a stylish outfit for everyday use, their work (3).............. both passion and planning. Interview others to understand what works. (4).............. forget to test your ideas more than once, because great designers always ask, "How can I make this better?"

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

At school, our teacher introduced something called "design thinking." She said it's a special way to solve problems. First, we try to understand what people need. Then we think of many ideas to help. After that, we choose one good idea, make a small model, and test it. If it doesn't work, we improve it. My class used design thinking to help a classmate who kept forgetting his homework. We created a colorful reminder chart for his desk. We asked for feedback and then made a better version. It felt great to work as a team and solve a real problem. Design thinking teaches us to listen, imagine, build, and fix. It helps us think like real designers—even in school!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the class make to help their friend?

   ....

2. Why do you think the team made a better version later?

   ....

3. What do you think they will design next?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the text is .... helps students solve problems together.
   a) design thinking b) preparing lunch at school
   c) drawing colorful charts d) making a model

5. The class tried to solve a classmate who ....
   a) kept losing pencils b) forgot homework often
   c) was too dirty d) wanted a poster

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lojain wants to .... a beautiful dress for her school party.
   a) organize b) design c) test d) offer

2. The math problem was very .... for the young students.
   a) afraid b) complex c) crazy d) practical

3. The new girl felt very .... when her classmates invited her to their fun games.
   a) curious b) welcomed c) crazy d) suitable

4. You put the bread in the toaster, and .... you wait for it to become golden brown.
   a) first b) then c) firstly d) to begin with

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. To make hot chocolate on a cold day, ... (then) you must heat the milk in a pot.

2. Please .... (to wash) your hands before you eat your lunch today.

3. .... (Not/running) in the hallway because you might slip and fall down.

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

conflict	....	....	بقوة
influence	....	....	يؤثر على
emotional	....	....	اجتماعى
unfair	....	....	توصية
entertain	....	....	حقيقة
critically	....	....	يقدم
thoughtful	....	....	وعى/إدراك
empathy	....	....	يصرخ

Language Expressions & Prepositions

point of view	....	....	يذهب فى رحلة
agree/ disagree with	....	....	يُعرض لـ
go through	....	....	يبقى هادئًا

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
increase	....	reduce	....
agree	....	disagree	....

Definitions

........................: different kinds or types; many and not the same

........................: to start or cause something to happen

........................: is related to what is right or wrong in behavior

........................: knowing or noticing something

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Jana showed great .... when she comforted her friend who had lost her pet.
   a) awareness b) empathy c) mind d) type
2. The art museum displays .... paintings from different countries around the world.
   a) thoughtful b) valuable c) enjoyable d) various
3. Good friends can .... each other to make better choices every day.
   a) spark b) influence c) enter d) memorize
4. It seemed .... that some children had to work while others could play all day.
   a) stuck b) unfair c) aware d) various
5. Rayan told me that .... wanted to join the soccer team.
   a) I b) you c) he d) we
6. My sister told me that she .... find her favorite book anywhere.
   a) can't b) couldn't c) won't d) doesn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Malak told her sister that she .... (love) chocolate ice cream very much.
2. The boy said that he .... (play) soccer every afternoon after school.
3. The girl told her teacher that .... (my) pencil was broken during class.
4. Rayan explained to his friend that .... (I) would visit the zoo tomorrow.
5. The teacher said that the test would be .... (tomorrow).

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Hala said that she visits her grandmother the day before. (....................)
2. The librarian said us that we should return the books by Friday. (....................)
3. Sagda said that she has already met the new manager. (....................)
4. Kady said that her birthday party would be tomorrow. (....................)

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nour : What do stories teach us, Ziad?
Ziad : They teach us how to be good people.
Nour : (1)..?
Ziad : They teach us values like honesty, kindness, and helping others.
Nour : Do you remember a story about kindness?
Ziad : (2)..
Nour : (3)..?
Ziad : It's about a boy who helped an old man.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher helps students develop .... about keeping the environment clean and safe.
   a) empathy b) awareness c) conflict d) story
2. Nour noticed that each bird has a different shaped .... for eating different foods.
   a) tale b) event c) song d) beak
3. Maha learned that good .... are not as important as having a good heart inside.
   a) looks b) forests c) songs d) humors
4. Tameem said that his grandfather .... him stories every night when he was young.
   a) tells b) told c) will tell d) is telling

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ghada told her mom that she .... (can) ride her bicycle without training wheels.
2. Yara said that her cat .... (like) to chase butterflies in the backyard.
3. Mariam .... (told) that she wanted to go to the new water park.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"The importance of reading"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

clever	....	....	غُراب
catch	....	....	ثعلب
bravery	....	....	شعبية
fiction	....	....	واقعية
historical	....	....	يستمر
traditional	....	....	الشخصيات
details	....	....	أرجوحة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

take turns	....	....	يؤلف
based on	....	....	يؤمن بـ
look forward to	....	....	يؤدى إلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يقع	....	....
....	يمسك	....	....

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
beautiful	....	ugly	....
true/real	....	untrue/unreal	....

Definitions

....................................: a strong desire to achieve something big

....................................: unique or valuable in a different way

....................................: short tales that teach a moral, often with talking animals

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

said – told – down – up – folk – crow

It was summer and very hot. A thirsty (1)................................ flew around looking for water. He found a jug with little water inside. He looked (2)................................ and had an idea. He dropped small stones in until the water rose. Then he drank. A boy saw this and (3)................................ that the crow was smarter than many people he knew! This (4)................................ tale shows how clever thinking can solve problems.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Heba said that they .... (don't) go to the museum on Tuesday.
2. Fatma said that .... (my) little brother was learning to ride his bike.
3. The principal told us that school would be closed .... (today).
4. The guide told the visitors that the museum was located .... (here).
5. Sama said that Rody .... (helps) her understand the lessons.
6. The girl said that her favorite subject .... (be) art.
7. The teacher told us that we .... (can) go out then.
8. Tamer said, "I have .... (finish) my homework."

3 Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. Ali said, "I am reading a book." (was)

....

2. Mona said to Sara, "I will help you tomorrow." (the following day)

....

3. Sara said, "I went to the park yesterday." (the day before)

....

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .... restaurant always has long lines because everyone loves eating there.
   a) comic b) clever c) well-known d) traditional
2. The brave girl in the .... book reminded Heba of her own courage.
   a) fable b) comic c) adventure d) folk
3. The mountain climber showed great .... when he reached the very top.
   a) swings b) president c) ambition d) courage
4. Nadeen told her friends that she .... studying French at the language center that year.
   a) is b) was c) will be d) has been

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A hungry fox saw some grapes hanging high on a plant. They looked juicy and delicious. The fox jumped and jumped, but couldn't reach them. After many tries, he gave up and said, "Those grapes are probably sour anyway!" Then he walked away. The fox didn't want to feel bad for failing, so he pretended the grapes weren't good. The story shows how people sometimes say bad things about things they can't have. The moral is: It's easy to dislike what you can't get.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why couldn't the fox eat the grapes?
   ....
2. Why did the fox say the grapes were sour?
   ....
3. What do you think the fox might do next time he sees grapes?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is that people may pretend .... what they can't reach.
   a) not to ignore b) want
   c) not to want d) like
2. The fox .... to get the grapes.
   a) ran b) gave up trying
   c) flew d) asked for help

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
bridge	....	....	ظل/خيال
bark	....	....	مغزى عميق
greedy	....	....	يُخيف/يُرعب/يُفزع
fictional	....	....	حل/نهاية/الصراع
knight	....	....	يحمل
tasty	....	....	خشبى
Language Expressions & Prepositions			
fly over	....	....	يأخذ دوره
look down into	....	....	يقع فى داخل
pass the turn	....	....	يمشى عبر
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
....	يطير	....	....
....	يقع	....	....

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

across – cross – lesson – told – said – fictional

A girl sat under a wooden bridge, writing a (1)................ story. She watched a dog walk (2)................ it, wagging its tail. The dog dropped its tasty bone into the stream. She (3)................ the story reminded her not to be too proud. Her teacher told her that she had written a story with a strong life (4)................ . Sometimes, real life gives the best ideas for stories.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Laila thinks her grandmother's cookies are very .... and always asks for more.
   a) wooden b) tasty c) lucky d) fictional
2. Rasha saw a cat with a long black .... sitting on the wall outside.
   a) tail b) wall c) bone d) mouth
3. His unexpected shout caused a fright. We add the suffix "........................" to get the verb of "fright".
   a) -en b) -ing c) -y d) -er
4. The .... boy won the school game because he guessed the right answer first.
   a) lucky b) wooden c) fictional d) tasty
5. Mai followed the .... for two hours until it reached the big river.
   a) shadow b) bone c) bridge d) stream
6. Omar found .... shells on the beach that shined like sunlight.
   a) wooden b) greedy c) fictional d) sparkling
7. Esraa told her mother that she .... helping her little sister with homework at that time.
   a) is b) was c) will be d) has been
8. Heba told me that she .... her room when her mother asked her to.
   a) cleans b) cleaning c) will clean d) had cleaned

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

said – told – villagers – life lesson – fictional – comic

Once in a faraway land, a greedy dragon lived behind a high wall. He wouldn't let the (1)................................ pass to take food from the field. A small girl went to talk to him. She told a (2)................................ story about a dragon who shared everything. The next day, the dragon gave the food away. The villagers (3)................................ the dragon had learned from her story. The (4)................................ was clear: sharing brings peace.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .... table in the kitchen is where the family eats their meals every day.
   a) tasty b) fictional c) lucky d) wooden
2. Ritaj feels very .... because she found her lost toy under her bed this morning.
   a) tasty b) lucky c) wooden d) fictional
3. The .... water in the swimming pool looked very clean today.
   a) greedy b) fictional c) sparkling d) wooden
4. Zakaria told his sister that he .... want to share his toys with anyone that day.
   a) doesn't b) didn't c) won't d) isn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Basel told his friend that he .... (will) bring his new video game tomorrow.
2. Tameem explained that his family .... (have) a big garden.
3. The teacher told the class that reading books .... (make) them smarter every day.

4 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A story you liked"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 6 Mini-Test

1 Finish the following dialog:

Nabil and Dalia are discussing the importance of reading stories.

Nabil: Can stories help us solve problems, Dalia?

Dalia: (1).. . Many characters face problems.

Nabil: (2)..?

Dalia: Yes, the characters find solutions in the end.

Nabil: (3)..?

Dalia: Yes, I have learned a lot from stories.

Nabil: What kind of stories do you read?

Dalia: (4).. .

Nabil: When do you like to read adventure stories?

Dalia: (5).. .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

said – told – hill – sparkling – clever – deep

There was once a lucky young knight who always helped others. He lived on a (1).................... near a quiet castle. One day, he met a poor man who (2)...................., "I've heard the knight helps everyone in trouble." He took the man across a (3).................... stream. In return, the man told a fictional story that made the knight wiser. Stories can be a gift that teach us a (4).................... message.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Tameem was too tired to play, so he decided to .... the turn to Lojain.
   a) give b) hand
   c) pass d) offer
2. The young knight needed .... to face the dragon in the story.
   a) courage b) bravery
   c) determination d) ambition
3. The .... between the two teams was exciting and everyone learned something new.
   a) recommendation b) debate
   c) ambition d) influence
4. Yasmin is .... that she needs to study harder for her math test tomorrow.
   a) enjoyable b) aware c) valuable d) thoughtful
5. Mira told her mother that she .... her homework after dinner.
   a) will finish b) would finish
   c) finishes d) finished
6. Karim said that his family .... to the beach every summer.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) will go

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The teacher said that the students .... (work) very hard on their projects.
2. Heba explained that she .... (help) her mother clean the house regularly.
3. The boy told his mom that .... (I) had finished all the homework.
4. Laila mentioned that .... (my) favorite color was bright pink like flowers.
5. Yasmin explained that she was feeling much better .... (now).

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your favorite story"

....

....

....

....

Unit 6 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nora is asking Omar about a story.

Nora : Do you know the story about the tortoise?
Omar : (1).. . He raced a fast hare.
Nora : (2)..?
Omar : The hare took a nap during the race.
Nora : Who won the race?
Omar : (3).. . What does that mean?
Nora : That means we shouldn't give up.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

looks forward - confidence - president - in - passed

Rania failed her first test. She felt lost. But with her mother's help, she gained (1)................ and believed (2)................ herself again. She studied hard and (3)................ the next one. Her friend told her that the teacher had said you had shown real strength. Now Rania (4)................ to becoming a doctor. She says every fall teaches her how to rise.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Cinderella is a story that changed how I treat people. She lived with her stepmother and stepsisters, who were not kind. They made her do all the chores. But Cinderella stayed kind and never got angry. With the help of magic, she went to the royal ball. She danced with the prince, and he wanted to find her again. Later, he found her and married her. My friend told me, "Cinderella teaches us to stay kind even when life is unfair." That made me think a lot. I started being nicer to others, even when I was upset. This story helped me become more thoughtful.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who helped Cinderella go to the ball?

....

2. Why do you think the prince looked for Cinderella?

....

3. What is the most important message of this story?

....

4. What do you think Cinderella would do after becoming a princess?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5. The story teaches us to stay kind even when others are unkind because ....
   a) kindness wins in the end b) Cinderella had chores
   c) the prince danced well d) the ball was big
6. Cinderella lived with her unkind stepmother and stepsisters and they ....
   a) loved her b) were kind
   c) helped her d) treated her badly

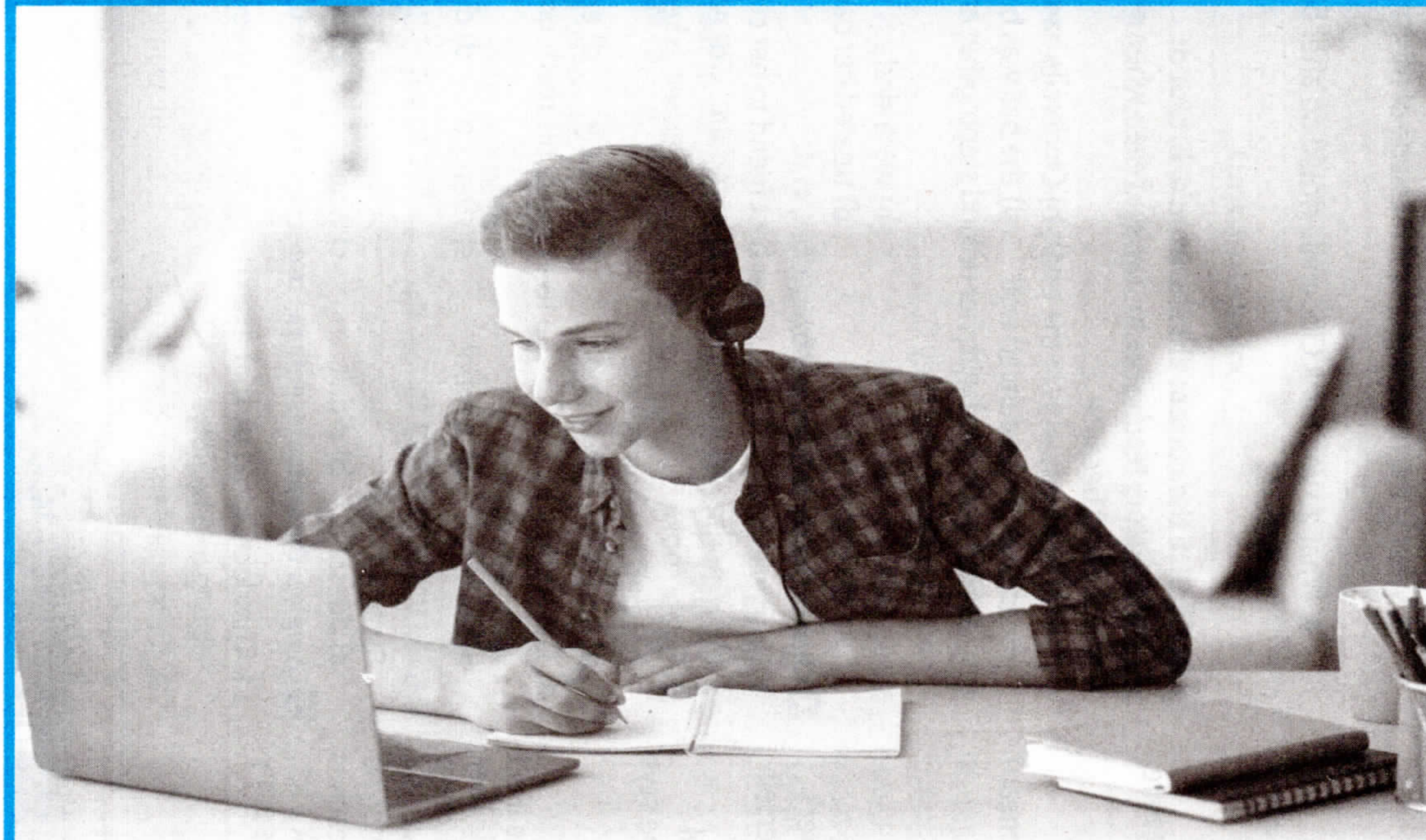
4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nour wants to .... her best friend to her cousin.
   a) memorize b) introduce c) entertain d) enter
2. Farah spoke .... when her teacher asked if she had finished her homework.
   a) honestly b) strongly c) critically d) emotionally
3. The student's .... to improve his math grades paid off with hard work.
   a) ambition b) symbol c) strength d) determination
4. My uncle said that he .... like to eat vegetables when he was a child.
   a) doesn't b) didn't c) won't d) wasn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The doctor told us that exercise .... (keep) our bodies strong and healthy.
2. Karim said that .... (I) wanted to become a pilot when he was older.
3. The librarian told the children that story time would begin .... (now).

Part 2 Final Revision & Exams



1 **General Revision (Vocabulary/Language/Speaking/Writing)**

مراجعة على أهم الكلمات والقواعد والمحادثات والفقرات على كل وحدتين

2 **Final Exams (General/ Al-Azhar)**

امتحانات خاصة بطلبة العام والأزهر

Unit 1: Personal Identity

A Vocabulary

adjust	يُعدل	individuality	فردية/تميز شخصى	strength	القوة
background	خلفية/نشأة	mirror moment	لحظة التأمل الذاتى	celebrate	يحتفل
belief	إيمان/اعتقاد	outgoing	منفتح/اجتماعى	self-discovery	اكتشاف الذات
challenge	تحدٍ	panic	يفزع/يصاب بالذُّعر	eye contact	تواصل بصرى
character	شخصية	personality	شخصية	thumbs-up	علامة إعجاب
confidence	ثقة	portrait	صورة شخصية	unique	فريد/مميز
depressing	محبط/مُحزن/كئيب	pressure	ضغط/توتر	value	يقيم/يقدّر/قيمة
fair	عادل	qualities	صفات		

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shape – value – have believed – believed – dressed – affect

There was a time when I really cared about how others saw me. I changed how I (1)........................ and tried to be like everyone else. But I didn't feel happy. Then I started to listen to my own opinion and learned to (2)........................ myself. I focused on my hobbies, like painting and writing. These things helped (3)........................ my character and taught me to appreciate my real self—not just how I look. Since then, I (4)........................ in me.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hana's group project was harder because one member was .... all week long.
   a) caring b) brave c) absent d) numerous
2. The teacher told Malak that her good .... helps everyone feel happy.
   a) eye contact b) nod c) attitude d) body language
3. Raneem decided to .... a change by volunteering to help clean the classroom.
   a) do b) want c) find d) make
4. I feel .... about the smell.
   a) confused b) resilient c) outgoing d) curious
5. Honesty and loyalty are personality .... that are very important to have in a good friend.
   a) qualities b) characters c) chapters d) traits

B Language

1 The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Subject (الفاعل) + has/ have (not) + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. • Salma has eaten Chinese food. • They haven't slept in a tent.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(A) ever/never

١- never (أبدًا) تُستخدم فى وسط جملة المضارع التام، أى بعد (have/has) لتدل على النفى.

Subject (الفاعل) + have/has + never + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. He has never been to Paris.

٢- ever (من قبل) تُستخدم فى وسط السؤال فى المضارع التام أى بعد (have/has) والفاعل وقبل P.P.

Have/Has + subject (الفاعل) + ever + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل?

e.g. Has your father ever visited Paris?

(B) since/for

٣- عند ذكر وقت مع المضارع التام نستخدم قبل الوقت كلمتى (for لمدة) أو (since منذ).

Subject فاعل + have/has + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل + since + بداية الحدث

e.g. My father and mother have lived in Tokyo since 2015.

Subject فاعل + have/has + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل + for + مدة وقوع الحدث كاملة

e.g. My brother has lived in Rome for 9 years.

2 Passive المبنى للمجهول

Object مفعول + (has/have) + been + P.P.

e.g. • My car has been stolen since 2020.

• The Pyramids have been built for thousands of years.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Aida has just .... a beautiful picture of a butterfly for her art class.

   a) drawn b) drew c) drawing d) draw

2. I'm sorry, I .... finished my glass of milk yet.

   a) am not b) haven't c) didn't d) wasn't

3. The museum .... by many tourists already.

   a) visited b) has visited
   c) has been visited d) has being visited

4. Bassam has wanted a new bicycle .... long time.

   a) for b) since c) ago d) from

5. I haven't eaten anything .... breakfast this morning.

   a) for b) since c) at d) on

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Adam can't play outside because he .... (not/finish) his homework yet.
2. Basmala .... (paint) a very colorful picture today.
3. The toys are all tidy because they .... (just/put) them away in the box.
4. Why has Camelia .... (bring) her big umbrella to school today?
5. Dalia has known her best friend .... (for) she was five years old.
6. Has Emad .... (ever/ride) a horse at the countryside farm?
7. How many cookies .... (is) Leila made for the school bake sale?
8. I am not hungry because I .... (already/eat) a big sandwich for lunch.
9. Your new shoes are dirty! Where have you .... (be)?
10. Has the teacher.................... (give) you your test results back yet?
11. My little sister .... (grow) so much since last year's party.
12. Ibrahim .... (has/visit) his grandparents this month yet.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Asking and answering about your identity:

- **A:** How do people's opinions affect you?
  B: People's opinions have influenced me, especially when they come from those I respect.
- **A:** How do you feel when you hear negative opinions?
  B: At first, I may feel upset or discouraged, but I try to understand if there's any truth in the negative opinion.
- **A:** What experiences shape your identity?
  B: Experiences like overcoming challenges at school, learning new skills, and helping others have shaped my identity.
- **A:** What qualities and values make you a good person?
  B: I believe being honest, kind, and respectful are key values that guide my actions.

2. Writing

How to write a descriptive essay

"Topic Sentence"

I have developed my personal identity through a variety of meaningful experiences and choices that have shaped who I am today.

"Explanation"

Over the years, I have learned important values from my family, and I have formed strong friendships that have taught me empathy and trust. Moreover, I have taken part in community service and school activities, which have helped me discover my strengths and passions.

"Evidence and Example"

In addition, I have faced challenges that have tested my patience and strength, yet each obstacle has made me more confident and independent. Because of these experiences, I have built a clearer understanding of my beliefs and goals.

"Ending"

As a result, I have grown into someone who values honesty, learning, and connection with others.

Unit 2: Communication with Family and Friends

A Vocabulary

awkward محرج/غير مريح	embarrassing مُحرِج	meaningful ذو معنى/قيمة
bond صلة/علاقة/ارتباط	face-to-face talk محادثة وجهاً لوجه	miscommunication سوء تواصل
communication تواصل	facial expressions تعبيرات الوجه	misunderstand يسيء الفهم
conflict صراع	fight شجار/معركة/نزاع	proper مناسب/ملائم
determination تصميم/إصرار	frustrated محبط/مكتئب	proposal عرض/اقتراح
disagreement خلاف/نزاع	gesture إيماءة/حركة يد	reconnect يعيد التواصل
discipline انضباط	initiative مبادرة	siblings أشقاء
distractions مشتتات/ملهيات	laughter ضحك	silence صمت

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

frustrated – has – had – silence – laughter – gesture

I hadn't talked to Omar since our disagreement over a silly game. At first, the (1)........................ between us felt awkward. We sat across from each other at the dinner table without a word. I felt so (2)........................ . Then, he made a small (3)........................ by sliding a plate of food toward me. If I (4)........................ spoken him earlier, we could've fixed things sooner. We laughed softly and felt emotionally closer again.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I can't study well with too many .... around me.
   a) meals b) movements c) distractions d) emotions
2. Even after the conflict, their .... remained strong.
   a) miscommunication b) conflict
   c) bond d) discussion
3. Last summer, I .... with friends I hadn't seen in years.
   a) disappeared b) shouted c) missed d) reconnected
4. Their .... lasted for hours, but they finally talked.
   a) distance b) disagreement c) stress d) silence

B Language

1 The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضى التام

It is a tense used to express an action that happened before another action in the past.

هو زمن يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى.

e.g. I had **finished** my homework before I went out.

Form التكوين

Subject الفاعل + had + past participle

e.g. I had **left** before the train arrived.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + hadn't + past participle

e.g. Tarek hadn't **seen** the movie before.

Question السؤال

Had + subject الفاعل + past participle?

e.g. Had they arrived before 5 p.m.?

2 If (The Third Conditional) الحالة الشرطية الثالثة

e.g. If you had helped me, I would have finished faster.

Form التكوين

If + past perfect ماضٍ تام , Subject فاعل + would have + P.P.

e.g. If Ali had studied more, he would have got high marks.

Subject فاعل + would have + P.P. + if + past perfect ماضى تام

e.g. I would have caught the bus if I had woken up earlier.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If Zain had worn his glasses, he .... the movie screen much better.
   a) would have seen b) saw c) would see d) has seen
2. I would have helped you with your homework if you .... me for help.
   a) ask b) will ask c) would ask d) had asked
3. If Karim .... the map, we wouldn't have gotten lost on our trip.
   a) had brought b) brought c) brings d) would bring
4. The teacher would have been very happy if we .... our project on time.
   a) finish b) had finished
   c) will finish d) have finished
5. If the baby hadn't been sleeping, we .... so much noise in the house.
   a) would make b) made
   c) would have made d) will make

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Fares wouldn't have been so tired this morning if he .... (not/stay) up late.
2. Why would they have .... (cry) if they had actually won the game?
3. If Basmala .... (catch) the ball, her team would have cheered for her.
4. Gamal .... (draw) a picture of a lion if he had found his crayons.
5. If you had .... (speak) more loudly, the whole class would have heard you.
6. Dalia .... (not/break) the vase if she had watched where she was going.
7. The pretty plants would have grown tall if you .... (not/forget) to water them.
8. Would you have helped your mom bake if she .... (be) busy in the kitchen?
9. What book would Louay .... (read) if he had gone to the library yesterday?
10. If Wael .... (wake) up earlier, he would have seen the beautiful sunrise.
11. Lina .... (write) a letter to her grandma if she had had a pen and paper.
12. If the dog .... (run) a little faster, it would have caught the stick.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Expressing opinions about communication with family and friends

A: Do you think it's important to talk with your family every day?

B: Yes, I do. Talking with my family helps me feel safe and supported.

A: How can you stay connected with others?

B: - Through kind words, active listening and thoughtful messages.

- That's nice! And what about your friends?

A: I stay in touch with my friends through messages and calls. It keeps us close.

B: I think real conversations are better than just texting.

2. Writing

How to write an opinion paragraph

One of the best experiences I had was joining a school clean-up day. We cleaned the school garden and planted some flowers. It was my first time doing this, and I was a little nervous at the beginning. At first, I didn't know what to do, but my friends helped me. I started to enjoy the work. I felt happy because I was helping my school. Working together with my classmates was fun and made me feel proud. This experience taught me that helping others is important. I also learned that small actions can make a big difference. It made me feel more confident and responsible. In my opinion, every student should try to do something good for their school or community. It helps us become better people and teaches us to care for others. This experience was simple, but I will never forget it.

Unit 3: Artificial Intelligence

A Vocabulary

advanced	متقدم/متطور	customize	يخصص/يعدّل	limits	حدود
assist	يساعد	donation	تبرع	local	محلى
behavior	سلوك	emotions	عواطف	motivated	متحفز
cheat	يغش/يخدع	error	خطأ	powerful	قوى
compose	يؤلف/يكتب	humans	البشر	quit	ينسحب/يترك
confused	مرتبك	imaginative	مبدع/واسع الخيال	recognize	يتعرف على
congratulate	يهنئ	improvement	تحسُّن	soil	تربة زراعية
connection	اتصال	innovation	ابتكار/إبداع	surgery	جراحة
creativity	ابتكار/ابداع	instantly	فورًا/فى الحال	vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربائية

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

will be – will – soil – cheat – check – determination

Rami failed his first gardening project because he didn't care for the type of (1)........................ . Instead of quitting, he started again with (2)........................ . He asked for help from a local farmer, who explained how to plant the seed. A better watering system (3)........................ installed next week. Rami felt motivated and didn't (4)........................ when testing new ways. His success showed that problems can be solved when you keep trying.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We must .... politely when someone asks us for help.
   a) control b) replace c) respond d) allow
2. This robot has only .... functions like moving and stopping.
   a) advanced b) basic c) complex d) expensive
3. Every good .... must listen to both workers and customers.
   a) report b) manager c) invention d) essay
4. After the robot broke, they sent a .... that works even better.
   a) story b) medicine c) machine d) replacement
5. It was hard to .... the change in the new AI app.
   a) disappoint b) delay c) score d) notice

B Language

1 The Future Simple Active المستقبل البسيط فى المبنى للمعلوم

Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + will/won't + inf.

e.g. • My father will mend his car tomorrow.
• Amany won't go to school tomorrow.

Usage الاستخدام

To describe actions that someone will do in the future.

لوصف الأفعال التى سوف يقوم بها شخص فى المستقبل.

e.g. We will finish this project next Friday.

Key Words الكلمات الدالة

(tomorrow غدًا /in the future فى المستقبل /soon قريبًا /one day فى يوم من الأيام/
next/week/month/year/Friday ...): (الأسبوع/الشهر/السنة/الجمعة ... القادم/القادمة)

2 The Future Simple Passive المستقبل البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول

Form التكوين

Object مفعول + will/won't be + P.P. + by + subject فاعل

e.g. • In schools, lessons will be explained by AI programs.
• A lot of jobs won't be found in the future because of AI.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Will + object (المفعول) + be + P.P. ...?

e.g. Will lessons be explained by AI programs?

Wh- question

Q. word + will + object (المفعول) + be + P.P. ...?

e.g. Where will the new school be built?

Usage الاستخدام

To describe actions that will be done by someone in the future.

لوصف الأفعال التى سوف يقوم بها شخص ما فى المستقبل.

e.g. This project will be finished next Friday.

Language Exercise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. New hospitals will be .... in poor areas.
   a) building b) builds
   c) build d) built
2. Nader will .... to London next week.
   a) travels b) travel
   c) traveled d) traveling
3. Robots will .... developed to do important task.
   a) be b) been
   c) being d) were
4. I think people and technology .... closer with AI.
   a) grow b) will grow
   c) be grow d) is grown
5. Do you think AI .... learn to understand feelings like people?
   a) will b) will been
   c) is being d) has been
6. I think my father .... his car tomorrow.
   a) mend b) mended
   c) will mend d) will be mended

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Tomorrow, we .... (visit) the new museum downtown.
2. A new medicine .... (develop) in 2030.
3. Robots .... (not/take) over human jobs completely.
4. .... (Is) she join the team next season?
5. The old building .... (not/repaired) anytime soon.
6. My brother .... (buy) a new phone next week.
7. Our teacher .... (not give) us homework on Friday.
8. Will your friends .... (came) to the party tonight?
9. More electric cars .... (be/used) in the future.
10. The broken road .... (be/fixed) soon by the workers.
11. I think people .... (live) longer in the future.
12. They .... (not/travel) during the next summer holiday.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Expressing expectations for the future use of AI in the future

A: What jobs do you think AI can do in the future?

B: It can drive cars, teach students, and help in hospitals.

A: Do you think AI will be able to replace humans?

B: No, I don't think so.

A: Do you think AI and robots can make our life better? Why?

B: Yes, because they can do boring and dangerous jobs.

A: Do you think robots can do all human work?

B: No, because they don't have feelings or creativity.

A: Do you think robots can help doctors in surgery?

B: Yes, they can make surgeries safer.

A: Do you think AI will become smarter than humans one day?

B: Maybe, but humans will still control it.

A: - I expect AI will control everything in the future.

- AI will help you with your homework.

2. Writing

"A Robot Teacher"

In the future, schools might have robot teachers to help children learn. A robot teacher is a machine that can talk, explain lessons, and answer questions. It never gets tired or forgets things. Robot teachers can teach math, reading, science, and more. They can show videos, play learning games, and even speak different languages. Some robot teachers have screens for faces and can smile or move their arms. Children can ask them questions anytime, and the robot will always try to help. But human teachers are still important because they understand feelings. A robot teacher is great for helping students learn better. In the future, schools might have both robots and humans working together.

Unit 4: Screen Time

A Vocabulary

balance	يوازن	leader	قائد/زعيم	productive	مُنتِج/مثمر
blame	يلوم	limit	يحد من/يقلّل	screen time	الوقت أمام الشاشة
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	manage	يُدير/يُدبر/يتمكن	screen use	استخدام الشاشة
distracted	مشتت/غير مُركّز	mental	ذهنى/عقلى/نفسى	scroll	يُمرر
entertainment	ترفيه/تسلية	method	طريقة/أسلوب	shocked	مصدوم
expert	خبير	outdoor	خارجى	success	نجاح
fertilizers	أسمدة	physical	بدنى/جسدى	technological	تكنولوجى
focused	مركّز	policy	سياسة	teenager/teen	مُراهِق
giant	عملاق	privacy	خصوصية		

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

give – gives – entertainment – recommend – amount – effects

On the weekend, many kids spend extra time on screen. That's fine for (1)........................, but they also need to do activities away from devices. You must (2)........................ your eyes rest and do something physical too. Spending total screen time without breaks can cause side (3)........................ like headaches and trouble sleeping. Experts (4)........................ limiting screen use and encouraging skills that help in the real world.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adam stayed .... while studying for his big test in the library.
   a) modern b) distracted c) smart d) focused
2. Amal didn't .... her friend was sad until she saw her crying.
   a) call b) relax c) shock d) realize
3. Farmers use natural .... to help their crops grow strong and healthy.
   a) fertilizers b) materials c) chemicals d) tomatoes
4. The loud TV in the room started to .... me while I was thinking.
   a) manage b) distract c) smooth d) annoy

B Language

1 Using Modals استخدام الأفعال الناقصة

A: must/mustn't يجب/لا يجب (للضرورة/المنع والتحريم)

e.g. • Students must follow the school rules.

• People mustn't smoke in hospitals.

B: should/shouldn't ينبغى أن/لا ينبغى أن (للنصيحة)

e.g. • We should visit our grandparents on the weekend.

• People shouldn't tell lies.

C: can/can't يستطيع/لا يستطيع (للاستئذان)

e.g. • My brother and I can play before finishing our homework.

• You cannot (can't) go out now. It's raining.

2 Connectors الروابط

A: While/ Although/ Even though على الرغم من (للتناقض)

e.g. • Although he is rich, he isn't happy.

• While the movie was long, it was very interesting.

• Even though he is strong, he can't lift the box.

B: On the one hand/ On the other hand من ناحية/من ناحية أخرى (لعرض وجهتى نظر مختلفتين)

e.g. • On the one hand, I want to play outside. On the other hand, I have homework to finish.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You .... wash your hands before you eat to stay healthy and clean.
   a) must b) can c) should to d) can't
2. On the one hand, staying home is safe, but on the ...., I miss my friends.
   a) although b) while c) other hand d) even though
3. We .... bring snacks to school if the teacher says it's okay.
   a) can b) mustn't c) should d) can't
4. .... he is only eight, he plays the piano better than I do.
   a) Even though b) On the one hand
   c) Must d) Can
5. You .... talk loudly in the library because people are trying to read.
   a) must b) can't c) can d) should
6. .... technology is useful, it sometimes has lots of disadvantages.
   a) When b) While c) Although d) But

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (mustn't) listen carefully when the teacher gives instructions.
2. Eman can .... (speaks) three languages because her family travels a lot.
3. We .... (must) touch anything in the science lab without permission.
4. .... (Omar/should) help his brother with his schoolwork?
5. Leila can't .... (going) to the park because she has to finish her homework.
6. On the one hand, I love reading books, but .... (other hand) I enjoy playing outside too.
7. Hatem .... (can/to paint) beautiful pictures without taking any lessons.
8. Students .... (should/bringing) their books to every class.
9. .... (But) he is young, he plays the piano beautifully.
10. We stayed inside .... (although) it was raining heavily.
11. .... (Even) the dog was wild, it didn't attack us at all.
12. Naglaa kept smiling .... (but) she was feeling very nervous.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Expressing opinions about screen time and its impact on daily life

A: What is screen time?

B: It is the amount of time a person spends looking at digital screens.

A: How many hours do you spend on screens every day?

B: I spend about 2 to 3 hours on screens every day.

A: Do you think it is good to spend much time on screens?

B: No, it is not good because it can affect our health.

A: Why is it important to limit screen time?

B: Limiting screen time helps protect our health and allows time for other healthy activities.

A: What are some healthy activities to balance screen use?

B: Healthy activities include playing sports, reading books, and spending time with family and friends.

A: Can screen time be useful sometimes? How?

B: Yes, screen time can be useful for learning and communication.

2. Writing

"How to Improve Your Screen Time Habits"

Many children use screens every day, but it's important to use them in a smart way. To improve your screen time habits, you should make a plan. Start by setting a plan for when to study, play, and rest. You could set a timer to know when it's time to stop. It's a good idea to turn off notifications because they may distract you. Don't forget to take breaks and go outside to play. You should also avoid screens before bedtime, so you can sleep well. If you use screens wisely, you'll feel happier and learn more. In the end, using screens the right way won't harm your body and your brain.

Unit 5: Design Thinking

A Vocabulary

agriculture زراعة	drawings لوحات/رسومات	pretend يتظاهر
brainstorm يُعصف ذهنيًا بالأفكار	effective فعال	problem-solver حلال مشاكل
chart مخطط/رسم بيانى	gardener بستانى/جانينى	prototype نموذج أولى/مبدئى
closely عن قرب	growth نمو/زيادة	reminder chart جدول للتذكير
curious فضولى	hesitate يتردد	schedule جدول/خطة زمنية
dedicated مُخلص/مُتفان	inspired مُلهم	self-awareness وعى ذاتى
design sprint ورشة التصميم السريعة	newcomer وافد/قادم جديد	stylish أنيق/راقٍ/عصرى
design thinking التفكير التصميمى	practical عملى	suitable مناسب

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

organize – designer – gardener – not – don't – suitable

Some ideas feel unusual, but that's where creativity begins. A (1)........................ knows that every building starts as a dream, and every dream needs a plan. You can (2)........................ your process and list practical goals that are (3)........................ for your space. Design thinking helps you see things from every perspective. (4)........................ judge your ideas too early— great things take time to grow. Even a stylish backpack began as a sketch on a sheet!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .... of a watch is to tell people what time it is.
   a) comfort b) function c) weight d) safety
2. Ahmed found that studying every day was .... for improving his grades.
   a) afraid b) complex c) crazy d) effective
3. The math homework was really hard .... Rayan to finish before dinner.
   a) on b) at c) for d) with
4. Mom made a colorful .... chart to help Jouri remember to brush her teeth every night.
   a) effort b) reminder c) desk d) chart

B Language

1 Sequence Connectors روابط الترتيب الزمنى

Sequence Adverbs help us organize the steps in a process.

تساعدنا ظروف الترتيب الزمنى فى تنظيم الخطوات فى العملية.

1. First/Firstly (To begin with) أولًا

e.g. • First, wash your hands. • Firstly, let's clean the room.

2. Next (التالى)/ Then (ثم)/ After that (وبعد ذلك)/ Subsequently (فيما بعد)/ Following this

e.g. • He finished his homework. Then he watched TV.
• We went to the park. After that, we had ice cream.
• We made a plan. Subsequently, we started the project.

3. Finally/Lastly/In conclusion/ To end

e.g. • Finally, serve the food.
• We played games, had snacks, and lastly, took a group photo.
• In conclusion, exercise is important for good health.

2 Imperatives صيغ الأمر

Form التكوين

A) Affirmative الإثبات

inf. الفعل فى المصدر

Always + inf. الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. • Wash your hands before lunch. • Always go to bed early.

B) Negative النفى

Don't + inf. الفعل فى المصدر

Never + inf. الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. • Don't forget to water the plants.
• Never leave your account open for everyone.

إذا كان هناك صفة نستخدم:

Be + adj. الصفة

e.g. • Be quiet. The baby is sleeping. • Be careful when you go online.

Don't be + adj. الصفة

e.g. • Don't be rude to your friends. • Don't be lazy. Do your homework now.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To build a sandcastle at the beach, ... you must find a good spot near the water.
   a) finally b) then c) firstly d) next
2. First, Amira picks the red apples from the tree. .... she puts them in her big basket.
   a) To begin with b) Next c) Firstly d) Finally
3. .... push other children when you are waiting in line together.
   a) Don't b) Not c) No d) Doesn't
4. After reading your favorite book, please .... it back on the shelf.
   a) putting b) puts c) put d) to put

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. First, Aida puts on her school uniform carefully; .... (to begin with), she combs her hair.
2. .... (No eat) too much candy because it will make your teeth hurt badly.
3. .... (Not/forget) to bring your favorite book to school for reading time.
4. .... (To share) your crayons with Zain when he needs them for art class.
5. First, you brush your teeth. .... (Firstly), you wash your mouth with water.
6. .... (To clean) your bedroom before your friends come over to play games.
7. You wash your hands with soap and warm water first. .... (Finally), you dry.
8. Please, ... (to listen) carefully when the teacher explains the new math lesson.
9. After you finish eating dinner and washing the dishes, ... (next) you can watch TV.
10. Please, ... (brushing) your teeth twice every day to keep them clean.
11. .... (Not/leaving) your toys on the floor where people can trip over them.
12. You put your backpack on your shoulders first. .... (Lastly), you take your lunch.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Expressing ideas clearly when presenting a design solution

A: What do you think a "designer" mainly does?

B: A designer imagines and creates things that solve problems.

A: Can you name some everyday objects that are well-designed?

B: Sure! These objects include a backpack, a smartphone, and a lunchbox.

A: What does it mean to think like a designer?

B: It means caring about people's needs and exploring ideas.

A: How can thinking like a designer help people?

B: It helps people solve problems better and express their ideas clearly.

A: Why is expressing ideas clearly so important when presenting a design?

B: Clear communication helps others understand the function of a design.

2. Writing

"A review of a problem"

We have a problem at school. Sometimes students forget to do their homework because they don't write it down or remember the teacher's instructions. This can be a big problem, especially when they have many subjects. One good way to solve this problem is by using a colorful homework reminder chart. Each student can keep this chart in their desk and write their homework tasks every day. The chart helps them remember what they need to do at home. Teachers and parents can also look at the chart to see if the student is organized. If the chart is helpful, more can be printed and used in the whole school. This simple tool can make homework easier for everyone.

Unit 6: Why do We Like Stories?

A Vocabulary

aware	واعٍ/ مدرك	deep message	مغزى عميق	non-fiction	واقعى
bark	ينبح	elect	ينتخِب	president	رئِيس
beak	منقار	element	عنصر	recommendation	توصية/ترشيح
bone	عظمة	empathy	تعاطُف/مواساة	resolution	حل/نهاية/قرار
bravery	شجاعة	fables	خرافات	spark	يشعل/يثير/يطلِق
comic	كوميدى	fiction	خيال	sparkling	متلألئ/لامع
conflict	صراع	folk	شعبى	stuck	يعلق
crow	غُراب	greedy	طماع	transparent	شفّاف
debate	مناظرة/نقاش	historical	تاريخى	various	متنوع/مختلف

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

feelings – idea – read – element – views – reading

The Lion and the Mouse is a story that taught me to be helpful. It showed me that even small acts can be powerful. My friend told me that she had (1)........................... the story the week before. It gave her a new (2)........................... about kindness. The story helped me see from different (3)..........................., like how the lion felt. It started (4)........................... in me to help others every day.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Children .... their home address and phone number for emergency situations.
   a) introduced b) memorized c) entertained d) sparked
2. The little kitten got .... in the tall tree and couldn't climb down safely.
   a) stuck b) unfair c) aware d) moral
3. Water is an important .... that all living things need to stay healthy and strong.
   a) forest b) element c) song d) tale
4. The children will .... their favorite book for story time today.
   a) treat b) act c) elect d) empower

B Language

Reported speech — الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر)

الكلام غير المباشر: هو الكلام المنقول على لسان شخص آخر ولا يوضع بين علامتى التنصيص.

e.g. Nada said that she was ill that day.

How to change from direct to indirect:

١- نحول فعل القول كالآتى:

say/says → say/says   say to/says to → tell/tells
said → said   said to → told

٢- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بين فعل القول والجملة الخبرية بـ that ويمكن الاستغناء عنها.

فعل + الفاعل + (that) + said + المتحدث

فعل + الفاعل + (that) + مفعول + told + المتحدث

٣- نغير الضمائر حسب المتحدث والمخاطب كالآتى:

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct	**Indirect**	**Direct**	**Indirect**	**Direct**	**Indirect**
I	he/she	me	him/her	my	his/her
you	I/we	you	me/us	your	my/our
we	they	us	them	our	their

٤- يتم تغيير الروابط الزمنية كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
tomorrow	the following day	here	there
yesterday	the day before	last (week)	the (week) before
tonight	that night	ago	before
now	then	this	that
today	that day	these	those

٥- نغير الأزمنة إلى الماضى الأبعد كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect
1. Present simple	Past simple
2. Present continuous	Past continuous
3. Present perfect	Past perfect
4. Past simple	- Past simple - Past perfect
can - will - may	could - would - might

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher said that the students .... work harder for the test.

   a) should b) will c) can d) may

2. Omar told his friend that he .... like chocolate ice cream very much.

   a) doesn't b) isn't c) didn't d) wasn't

3. Leila said that her cat .... in the garden.

   a) played b) plays c) is playing d) will play

4. The coach announced that the game would be ....

   a) tomorrow b) the following day c) yesterday d) today

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The student told the principal that .... (my) backpack was very heavy.
2. Bilal mentioned that his little sister .... (not/want) to go to bed.
3. The student said that mathematics .... (be) becoming easier with more practice.
4. Tarek said that he had lost his toy car .... (yesterday).
5. The boy told his dad that he .... (learn) to play chess from his grandfather.
6. Amira said that her favorite playground was right .... (here).
7. The principal announced that students .... (can) wear casual clothes on Friday.
8. Nader said that his favorite sport .... (be) basketball.
9. The student said that he .... (not/understand) the math problem completely.
10. The child explained that she .... (help) her neighbors feed their hungry cats.
11. Iman said that her favorite season .... (be) spring because flowers bloomed everywhere.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Retelling a story

We can use sequence words like: عند إعادة سرد قصة يمكننا استخدام كلمات ترتيب الأحداث :

- First,... - Next,... - Then,... - After that,... - Finally

A: What story did you choose?
B: I chose Jack and the Beanstalk.
A: Who are the main characters?
B: The main characters are Jack, his mother, and the giant.
A: Where did the story happen?
B: The story happened at Jack's home, the market, and the giant's castle in the sky.
A: What happened in the beginning?
B: First, Jack sold the cow for magic beans.
A: What happened in the middle of the story?
B: Then, a giant beanstalk grew, and Jack climbed it to the sky. He found a giant's castle.
A: What happened next?
B: After that, Jack took gold, a hen, and a harp from the giant.
A: How did the story end?
B: Finally, Jack cut the beanstalk, the giant fell down, and Jack lived happily with his mother.

2. Writing

"The Importance of Reading Stories"

Reading stories is very important for children and adults. When we read stories, we learn many new things in fun and exciting ways. Stories help us learn new words and understand how to use them. They also teach us about different people, places, and cultures. Some stories show us how to be kind, brave, and honest. Others help us learn from the mistakes of the characters. When we read, we use our imagination to picture what is happening. This makes our minds grow stronger. Reading also helps us become better at writing and thinking. In conclusion, reading stories is not just fun—it helps us become smarter, kinder, and more creative people.

(3) Final Guiding Models (General)

Model (1)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Leila and Noor are talking about screen time and why it's important to limit it.

Leila : My mom says I can't have more than two hours of screen time.

Noor : (1).. .

Leila : Why do you think that's fair?

Noor : (2).. .

Leila : (3)..?

Noor : You should be careful. It's too bad.

Leila : (4)..?

Noor : It is bad because it can hurt your eyes.

Leila : What should I do instead?

Noor : (5).. .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

said – told – sadness – determination – take – get

Noor saw that many students didn't understand the new biology lesson. She felt (1)........................, but instead of staying quiet, she decided to (2)........................ initiative. She made a study guide and shared it with her classmates. Her effort helped many students feel less fear. They built a team and studied together. Noor's (3)........................ and kindness helped others succeed. Even her teacher (4)........................ she showed true leadership.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In today's hospitals, robots help doctors and nurses in many ways. Some robots bring food and medicine to patients. Others clean the hospital floors and rooms. These robots can move around using wheels and sensors, so they don't bump into things. In some places, robots help during surgery. A doctor controls the robot to do careful movements that help people get better faster. Some robots are small and can even go inside the body to take pictures. Nurses and doctors like using robots because they save time and help them take care of more people. In the future, hospitals may use talking robots to help patients feel less lonely.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is ....

a) robots are dangerous in hospitals
b) robots can only bring food
c) robots help in many hospital jobs
d) robots take pictures of trees

2. Some robots .... during surgery.

a) bring flowers to the room
b) help doctors make careful movements
c) paint the walls
d) sing to patients

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do some robots bring to patients? ....
4. Why do you think nurses like using robots? ....
5. Write a short summary of what robots do in hospitals. ....
6. What other hospital job might robots do in the future? ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Reading books gave him more .... in speaking.

a) confidence b) popularity c) final match d) pressure

2. The team must be aware .... the new rules before playing.

a) of b) with c) in d) at

3. Ghada and her friends always .... in a team during group activities at school.

a) work b) fight c) hide d) shout

4. Anas loves .... books because the funny characters always make him smile.

a) historical b) comic c) folk d) non-fiction

5. Gamal has recently .... a new football team at his school.

a) join b) joined c) joining d) joins

6. Zain said that his birthday party was ....

a) tomorrow b) yesterday c) the day before d) now

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (No walk) on the wet floor until it dries completely and is safe.
2. You .... (mustn't) be careful when crossing the busy street.

3. The broken bicycle .... (will/repair) by the bike shop owner tomorrow.
4. If I .... (know) the answer to the question, I would have raised my hand high.
5. I have .... (ever) ridden a camel. It's scary.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. How would you describe the playground before Zeina's idea? ....
2. Why didn't Zeina blame anyone when plants didn't grow well? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina learned that being a leader meant being ....
   a) selfish b) responsible c) angry d) confused
4. Growth doesn't happen only in plants, but also in ....
   a) animals b) people c) books d) weather

E Writing

7 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your personal identity"

....

....

Model (2)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hany and Tamer are talking about using tablets.

Hany : I use my tablet for schoolwork every day.
Tamer : That's okay if you're learning. (1) ....?
Hany : I play games on it for hours.
Tamer : (2) ....
Hany : (3) ....?
Tamer : You can set a timer to help.
Hany : (4) .... What else should I do?
Tamer : You also should turn off Wi-Fi after homework.
Hany : I'll do that. (5) ....
Tamer : Good thinking! Smart habits help us grow.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

through – throw – map – corner – told – said

One day, a newcomer named Ziad came to our class. He stood alone near the break-time (1)........................, looking shy. I decided to welcome him by saying hello and showing him around. "Be kind—go talk to someone new today!" I (2).................................. myself. He was very curious about our school (3).................................. and asked many questions. When I listened closely, I could see (4).................................. his eyes. It was hard for him, but he soon felt welcomed.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Omar loved riding his bike, but he had never joined a race before. His school planned a bike race for charity. At first, Omar didn't want to sign up. "What if I lose?" he thought. His sister told him, "Trying is better than doing nothing." So Omar practiced every morning before school. On race day, he was nervous, but he kept going. He didn't win first place, but he finished the race with a big smile. Omar felt proud of trying something new and not giving up.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is Omar ....
   a) gave up before the race
   b) joined a race and felt proud of trying
   c) broke his bike during the race
   d) won the school race
2. The event Omar joined was a ....
   a) reading contest　　b) math game
   c) bike race　　d) science show

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How did Omar prepare for the race? ....
4. What can you tell about Omar's personality? ....
5. Summarize the text in two or three sentences. ....
6. What might Omar try next time he sees a new event? ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He asked his mother to .... him for breaking the vase.
   a) forgive　　b) cause　　c) misunderstand　　d) solve
2. Some gases from factories are harmful .... the air we breathe.
   a) in　　b) with　　c) to　　d) of

3. Fatima asked her mother if they could .... shopping for new school clothes today.

a) come b) go c) take d) make

4. The .... enjoyed the sunny weather in Egypt.

a) fair b) tourist
c) museum d) competition

5. The party .... more fun if more of our friends had come.

a) would be b) will be
c) would have been d) was

6. The school trip .... by Ms. Dalia for all the students next month.

a) arranges b) will arrange
c) is arranged d) will be arranged

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hassan .... (not/ride) his bike since he had his little accident.
2. We have stayed in London .... (since) two years.
3. Before crossing the busy street, always .... (looks) both ways very carefully.
4. Driverless cars will .... (use) everywhere in the future.
5. Students .... (mustn't) come to school on time.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. How did Zeina encourage her team not to give up? ....
2. Do you think Zeina was brave to share her idea? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. To get money, Zeina asked the community for ....

a) food b) donations c) prizes d) toys

4. Some students laughed because Zeina was a ....

a) teacher b) new student c) principal d) parent

E Writing

7 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of communication"

....
....
....
....

Model (3)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Youssef and Mariam are talking about dreams.

Youssef: What do you want to be in the future, Mariam?

Mariam: (1).. .

Youssef: Why do you want to be a writer?

Mariam: (2).. .

Youssef: (3)..?

Mariam: Yes, I do. I usually write in my free time.

Youssef: Can I read one someday?

Mariam: (4)..! I'll bring one.

Youssef: (5)..?

Mariam: I will bring it tomorrow.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

will – carry – draw – won't – help – robots

Robots are now used in many shops to make work easier. They help workers (1).............................. heavy boxes from the storage room to the shelves and (2).............................. customers find the items they are looking for. Some (3).............................. can even answer questions and show people where to go. In the future, they (4).............................. work in more places like schools, hospitals, and airports. These changes will help people save time and energy every day.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Ali and Nader were in a group project at school. Nader did most of the work because Ali was sick. When the teacher asked who helped the most, Ali forgot to thank Nader. Nader felt hurt and stopped talking to Ali. After class, Ali noticed Nader was upset. When he found out why, he felt sorry. The next day, Ali stood up in front of the class and said, "Nader did a great job and helped me a lot. Thank you." Nader smiled, and they gave each other a high five. Their classmates clapped. Their friendship was stronger because Ali admitted his mistake.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is ....
   - a) working alone is best
   - b) always speak first in class
   - c) saying thank you can fix a hurt friendship
   - d) Nader didn't help with the project
2. Nader was upset with Ali because Ali ....
   - a) laughed at him
   - b) didn't help with the project
   - c) forgot to thank him
   - d) gave a low grade

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why didn't Ali help with the project at first?................................
4. What did Ali do to make things right with Nader?................................
5. Summarize the text in three sentences. ....
6. What do you think the class learned from what Ali said?................................

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Everyone has .... fingerprints, so the police can use them to catch bad people.
   a) real b) unique c) personal d) strange
2. The speaker said, "To sum ...., we must work together."
   a) up b) in c) at d) on
3. You should think before you .... a big decision.
   a) take b) make c) cut d) set
4. Loud music can easily .... students when they're trying to do their homework.
   a) manage b) distract c) annoy d) smooth
5. Samir isn't here. He .... to the nearby mall.
   a) had gone b) has gone c) has been d) had been
6. .... it was raining, they went for a walk.
   a) The other hand b) On one hand c) But d) Although

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nour said that her mom .... (not/allow) her to stay up late.
2. You shouldn't .... (making) noise.
3. Younes .... (not/miss) his favorite cartoon if he had finished his homework earlier.
4. Karim has lived in the big yellow house .... (for) he was seven years old.
5. Have you .... (never) tried this food?

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. Why was it important to choose plants suited to their climate? ....
2. What was Zeina's new ambition after the garden project? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina wrote a simple .... about her idea.
   a) letter   b) proposal   c) story   d) song
4. Zeina learned that honesty helps people .... you.
   a) fear   b) trust   c) ignore   d) fight

E Writing

7 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Mazin to tell him about the future of AI and robots. Your name is Hamza.

....

....

....

....

....

Model (4)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Jana and Lina discuss how AI can be used in education.

Jana : How do you think AI helps in education?

Lina : (1).......... .

Jana : (2).......... ?

Lina : Yes, it does. It explains lessons very well.

Jana : Would you like a robot to help you with homework?

Lina : (3).......... I think it will make studying easier.

Jana : (4).......... ?

Lina : No, it won't replace teachers in the future.

Jana : What will happen if a robot teaches the class?

Lina : (5).......... .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

helped – critically – help – tough – simple – face

One time, I read a story about a boy who had to leave his home. It made me feel strong empathy for people in (1)............................ situations. My friend said that the story (2)............................ him see things from a different perspective. I started to think more (3)............................ about people I meet. The story showed that even kids can (4)............................ big challenges. It taught me to be kind and more social with others.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Many children like to watch videos or play games on screens. But too much screen time can make kids feel distracted and tired. Parents say children **must** have limits on screen use. Children should also spend time outside, playing and talking with friends. Using screens at night can make it hard to sleep well. Smart users change settings on their devices to reduce brightness and limit time. Egypt's future depends on children learning smart habits to control their screen time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is ....
   a) why children like to watch videos
   b) why children must limit their screen time
   c) how to play games on a computer
   d) how to talk with friends
2. The passage tells us that children must ....
   a) use screens all night
   b) spend time outside and limit screen use
   c) play games without limits
   d) ignore their parents

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What can children do to control their screen time? ....
4. Why is using screens at night not good for sleep? ....
5. Write a short summary of the passage. ....
6. What do you think will happen if children don't limit screen time? ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Heba thinks it's more fun to .... in a team than to do everything alone.
   a) cry b) work c) sleep d) hide
2. There was a small .... about which movie the family should watch tonight.
   a) story b) conflict c) power d) type
3. The players played .... determination to win the final match.
   a) with b) at c) through d) in
4. Omar told his mother he would .... for his little brother while she went to the store.
   a) imagine b) care c) seem d) improve
5. Bilal and his family have .... to the beach every summer for the last five years.
   a) going b) gone c) went d) go
6. I know we are tired, but we .... keep going to finish our project.
   a) can't b) should c) can d) mustn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you had .... (hear) that funny story, you would have laughed a lot.
2. I .... (didn't) met Kamel since he went to Paris.
3. To learn how to play the guitar, ... (after that) you must practice holding it the right way.
4. Mariam asked her dad if they .... (go) to the beach this weekend.
5. Ahmed .... (not/see) that movie yet.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. How did Noha contribute to the beauty of the garden? ....
2. What role did Ms. Hoda play in supporting Zeina? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Small ideas can lead to big ....
   a) fights b) changes c) mistakes d) problems
4. The next year, Zeina will be the president of the ....
   a) school b) laboratory c) student council d) library

E Writing

7 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Balancing your screen time"

....

Model (5)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Noura and Adam talk about design thinking and what designers do.

Noura : Adam, what do people make during a design sprint?

Adam : (1).. .

Noura : What's a prototype?

Adam : It's a kind of a test.

Noura : (2)..?

Adam : They make a prototype to show their ideas.

Noura : (3)..?

Adam : They know if it's a good idea when they test it with people.

Noura : Do you want to be a designer?

Adam : (4).. .

Noura : (5).. .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

become – became – mutter – outgoing – blend – matter

I've always been (1)......................, but sometimes I talk too fast. One day, while fixing my glasses, I looked in the mirror and said, "Slow down." I had a little chat with myself, just a quiet (2)......................, and smiled. That was my mirror moment. I've (3)...................... more mindful when I speak. I now think before I talk and try to (4)...................... into the moment without rushing. It feels better this way.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One day, I read a story about a girl who dreamed of flying to the moon. She faced many problems, but she never gave up. The story made me use my imagination and dream bigger. My sister said, "The story shows that with hard work, anything is possible." After hearing that, I started to believe in myself more. The story introduced a lifestyle of bravery and determination. It sparked many thoughts in my mind. It also made me feel emotionally strong. I now think about life from different perspectives. I learned to think

critically, not just follow what everyone else does. Stories like these are valuable because they help shape the way we think. They expose us to new experiences and help us grow. Now, whenever I feel scared to try something new, I remember how stories can guide and inspire us.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is that stories can ....
   a) be always real
   b) teach us to be afraid
   c) help us dream and grow
   d) be just about school
2. The writer started to .... after hearing their sister's comment.
   a) stop reading stories
   b) believe in themselves more
   c) travel to the moon
   d) ignore the message in the story

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did the writer's sister say about the story? ....
4. How did the story affect the writer's feelings about trying new things? ....
5. What is the story about the girl mostly about? ....
6. What might the writer do the next time they face a challenge? ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. During the test, I ignored the .... and focused hard.
   a) distractions b) gestures c) plates d) absences
2. Malak didn't know which dress to wear, so she went to .... her mom for advice.
   a) tell b) give c) ask d) show
3. We heard a strange noise .... night and couldn't sleep after that.
   a) off b) in c) at d) on
4. You should try to reduce .... before bedtime for better sleep.
   a) screen use b) balance c) entertainment d) focus
5. My sister told me that she .... find her favorite book anywhere.
   a) can't b) couldn't c) won't d) doesn't
6. The school has been closed .... the big snowstorm started.
   a) since b) for c) from d) until

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The new movie will be .... (show) on Friday.
2. The broken window in our classroom .... (will/fix) next week.
3. .... (Because) he studied hard, but he failed the test.
4. Would you have done your research on time if you .... (have) all the books you needed?
5. Salma has been to Cairo .... (since) two years.

D The Story

6 **A) Answer the following questions**

1. How did Zeina make others feel confident? ....
2. Why do you think Zeina was proud at the end? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Nancy described the playground as ....
   a) exciting b) depressing c) amazing d) peaceful
4. The team researched plants that suit their ....
   a) country b) climate c) school subject d) teacher

E Writing

7 **Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:**

"Your personal identity"

....

Model (6)

A Language Functions

1 **Finish the following dialog:**

Nour and Ziad talk about how stories teach values like kindness and honesty.

Nour: What do stories teach us, Ziad?

Ziad : (1).................. .

Nour: (2)..................?

Ziad : They teach us values like honesty and kindness.

Nour: Do you remember a story about kindness?

Ziad : (3).................. .

Nour: (4)..................?

Ziad : It's about a boy who helped an old man.

Nour: Can I read it, please?

Ziad : (5).................. .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

person – personal – worried – Although – While – control

I used to talk with my friends only online. But one day, our internet stopped. I felt (1)................................, but then I called them and we met in (2)................................ . We had fun! I began to see how much screen time I was using. I decided to make a change. (3)................................ I love videos, I now pick up a book or draw instead. I try to stay in (4)................................ of my day and do things I enjoy outside the screen.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

At break time, Adam noticed a boy sitting alone by the school wall. The boy was new and had a small notebook in his hands. He looked around with curious eyes and seemed to be drawing something. Adam was curious too, so he walked over. "What are you drawing?" he asked. The boy showed him a map of the school that he was sketching to remember places. Adam thought, "It must be hard for him to learn everything." Adam smiled and said, "Let me show you the science room—it's my favorite!" The boy laughed, and they walked together. Seeing through the boy's eyes helped Adam understand how confusing school can be when you're new. He told his friends to be kind and welcoming. From that day on, they always helped the boy feel like he belonged.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main message of the passage is ....
   a) drawing in class is not allowed
   b) Adam helped a newcomer by showing kindness
   c) the science room is very big
   d) the boy already knew the school well
2. The new boy was drawing ....
   a) a robot
   b) a car
   c) a map of the school
   d) his house

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did Adam ask the boy when he saw his notebook? ....
4. Why do you think Adam offered to help him? ....
5. How did the new boy begin to feel more comfortable? ....
6. What do you think Adam and the boy will do at break time tomorrow?

....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Before buying the book, Wael decided to flip .... its pages to see the pictures.
   a) on b) through c) at d) with
2. .... means no voice or sound.
   a) Absence b) Distance c) Speech d) Silence
3. You should divide your work into small .... to finish it easily.
   a) tasks b) mistakes c) emotions d) games
4. It's important to .... time for exercise to stay healthy.
   a) make b) keep c) feel d) share
5. Wael .... a picture of the beautiful bird if he had had his camera.
   a) takes b) could have taken c) can take d) will take
6. We .... take care of nature because the Earth is our only home.
   a) should b) can't c) mustn't d) can

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Salah .... (just/score) a goal to help his football team win.
2. The birthday cake .... (will/bake) by Yara for her special party tomorrow.
3. .... (Not/cry) when you lose a game because winning isn't everything in life.
4. Samir .... (lived) in the USA for two years. He hasn't returned to Egypt yet.
5. If he had driven carefully, he .... (would/avoid) the accident.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. Why might students not care about throwing trash on the ground? ....
2. Why do you think students from other classes visited the garden? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The school playground was .... and gray.
   a) beautiful b) large but empty
   c) green and full of trees d) clean and colorful
4. Students showed more respect for the ....
   a) teachers b) environment c) library d) room

E Writing

7 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Values that are important to you"

....

....

Model (7)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hani is telling Nader about a problem with their car during a trip to Alexandria.

Nader : Hey Hani! How was your trip to Alex with the family?

Hani : It was mostly good, but (1).. .

Nader : Oh no! What happened to the car?

Hani : The engine suddenly stopped working there.

Nader : That sounds serious. (2)..?

Hani : Yes, we were on the highway, and it was really hot.

Nader : (3)..?

Hani : We waited for almost an hour until a mechanic came. If I had checked the engine before the trip, (4).. .

Nader : That's frustrating. (5)..?

Hani : Yes, the mechanic fixed it and it became well.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

told – said – determination – build – do – fair

The science class had to complete a project on biology. Laila showed (1).................. by doing extra research at home. She invited her classmates to (2).................. a team and share tasks. Some students (3).................. they were sad because of the difficulties, but she listened and helped them. In the end, their proposal was selected for the school science (4)..................!

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

AI is all around us in our daily lives. Smart homes use AI to turn on lights, play music, or tell us the weather. Many people use voice assistants like Alexa or Siri to ask questions or set timers. In stores, AI helps count products and check prices. Some cars use AI to drive safely and stop before hitting something. In the future, many jobs may be done by AI, such as cleaning streets or delivering food. This will give people more time for creative work. But some worry that AI might take too many jobs. That is why it's important to use AI in smart ways. It should help people, not replace them. With good planning, AI can make daily life easier, safer, and more fun. It is already changing the world, and it will continue to grow.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The passage mainly talks about how .... is used in daily life.
   a) AI b) CD c) TV d) M3 player
2. The passage says AI helps in ....
   a) cars b) stores c) homes d) All of these

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What are two examples of how AI helps people at home?..................................
4. Why are some people worried about AI taking jobs?..................................
5. Summarize how AI is used in everyday life in 2–3 sentences. ....
6. What do you think AI will do for families in the future? ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After walking in the sun for hours, the children began to .... tired.
   a) get b) make c) go d) do
2. He wants to become a doctor, so he studies .... a lot.
   a) biology b) math c) history d) English
3. Wearing warm clothes is important .... staying healthy in winter weather.
   a) at b) in c) for d) by
4. My grandmother has a lot of .... because she has faced many hard times.
   a) character b) pressure c) self-discovery d) strength
5. The windows look so clean because they .... just been washed.
   a) have b) are c) were d) did
6. Hala said that she .... her grandmother the day before.
   a) visits b) visited c) will visit d) is visiting

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Dalia .... (receive) my invitation last week, she'd have come to my sister's wedding.
2. Yasser .... (lives) abroad for two years.
3. My uncle .... (can't) solve this problem; he is very wise.
4. Beautiful flowers .... (will/plant) in our garden by Dad next week.
5. To build the toy car, ... (finally) you must read the instructions carefully.

D The Story

6 **A) Answer the following questions**

1. What difficulties did the rain cause for the garden? ....
2. If you were Zeina, what new project would you start next year? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina felt .... but she didn't give up.
 a) disappointed b) excited
 c) sleepy d) lucky
4. Noha made the garden beautiful with ....
 a) singing b) signs and drawings
 c) sports d) speeches

E Writing

7 **Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:**
"A problem you solved"

....
....
....

Model (8)

A Language Functions

1 **Finish the following dialog:**

Tamer and Yara talk about reading stories with family and how it brings joy and learning.

Tamer : Do you read stories with your family, Yara?
Yara : (1) .... We read together.
Tamer : That sounds fun. (2) ....?
Yara : We all read in the evening before bedtime.
Tamer : (3) ....?
Yara : We read adventure and animal stories.
Tamer : Do you laugh together?
Yara : (4) .... We sometimes talk about the story.
Tamer : How does that help you?
Yara : (5) ....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

told – design – effort – feedback – said – award

Some children always forgot their lunchboxes. Our group decided to help using (1)................................ thinking. First, we made a chart showing when to pack lunch. We placed it beside our desks. We asked for (2)................................ and improved it. The youngest student, aged seven, (3)................................ it helped her. Don't hesitate—make a reminder that works for you! With little (4)........................, we built a prototype that helped the whole class.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Sara was always scared of deep water. Every summer, her friends would go swimming, but Sara would sit by the pool. One day, her mom signed her up for swimming lessons. "Just try," her mom said. At first, Sara didn't want to go, but she finally agreed. On the first day, Sara only dipped her feet. The next week, she floated with help. Slowly, she got braver. By the end of the month, she could swim across the pool. Her friends cheered for her. Sara couldn't wait for the next swimming trip!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is Sara ....
   a) watched her friends swim
   b) went to a summer camp
   c) learned to swim and overcame her fear
   d) didn't enjoy the pool
2. At the end of the story, Sara could ....
   a) only sit by the pool
   b) float with help
   c) swim across the pool
   d) jump into the deep end

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What steps did Sara take to learn swimming?..
4. Why do you think her friends cheered for her? ....
5. Summarize what happened in the story. ....
6. What challenge might Sara face next? ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It was a huge .... to clean my entire room all by myself, but I did it.
   a) opinion b) challenge c) self-discovery d) message
2. You have to show your .... card when entering the company for the first time.
   a) secret b) post c) identity d) ability

3. We should .... on our goals to achieve success.
   a) focus   b) face   c) forget   d) find
4. Phone .... is the reason why your child achieves less at school.
   a) site   b) seat   c) section   d) distraction
5. If my team .... that final goal, we would have won the championship.
   a) had scored   b) scored   c) scores   d) will score
6. You .... listen carefully to the teacher to understand the new lesson well.
   a) must   b) can't   c) can   d) shouldn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm very sad; I .... (had lost) my cell phone.
2. The teacher said that students .... (must) complete their projects by Friday.
3. .... (Not/throwing) stones at the windows because they will break it.
4. I .... (can) answer this question; it's too difficult.
5. One day, he .... (see) a dragon flying over the hills.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. What changes did Zeina imagine for the playground? ....
2. What do you think would happen if Zeina worked alone? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Zeina showed .... when she spoke at the student council.
   a) courage   b) fear   c) sadness   d) weakness
4. Students started eating lunch .... by flowers and vegetables.
   a) surrounded   b) hidden   c) covered   d) bored

E Writing

7 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Sara to tell her about ways of communication with your family. Your name is Judy.

....
....
....
....
....
....

Model (9)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Nabil and Hana are talking about kindness.

Nabil: Hana, do you think being kind is important?

Hana: (1).. . Kindness makes the world better.

Nabil: (2)..?

Hana: I smile, say nice words, and help others.

Nabil: Do people notice?

Hana: (3).. . They also smile back.

Nabil: (4)..?

Hana: Yes, that makes me feel good.

Nabil: (5).. .

Hana: That's wonderful, Nabil!

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

council – took – since – for – determination – argument

Ayman has wanted to reduce plastic waste (1)...................... a long time. He wrote a proposal with a clear plan to place recycling tools in every classroom. He asked the (2)...................... to review it. Some students laughed at his idea, but he didn't give up. He (3)...................... initiative and gathered students who cared. Together, they built a team, made posters, and explained the idea. Their (4)...................... led to a real change.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One day, a lion was sleeping in the forest. A little mouse ran across his paw and woke him up. The lion was angry and wanted to eat the mouse. The mouse said, "Please let me go. Maybe one day I can help you." The lion laughed but let the mouse go. Days later, the lion was caught in a hunter's net. He roared for help. The mouse heard him and ran to help. She bit through

the ropes and freed the lion. The lion said, "You were right. Even little friends can be a big help." This fable teaches that kindness is always worth giving.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea is that even small creatures .... in big ways.
   a) were caught in a trap b) run away from the forest
   c) can help d) can't help
2. The lion let the mouse go, and the mouse .... the lion.
   a) helped b) chased c) left d) attacked

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the lion let the mouse go at first? ....
4. What lesson does the lion learn? ....
5. Summarize the story in three sentences. ....
6. What might have happened if the lion ate the mouse? ....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You shouldn't .... someone without knowing the full story.
   a) blame b) lead c) support d) grow
2. It started raining heavily, so we decided to go .... to stay warm and dry.
   a) outside b) inside c) over d) through
3. I want to learn how to build a .... one day that can help people and do cool things.
   a) robot b) shape c) behavior d) hospital
4. Before starting her project, Shahd decided to .... down her creative ideas first.
   a) write b) mark c) set d) put
5. ...., we need to gather all the materials before starting the experiment.
   a) Lastly b) First c) After that d) Then
6. Mariam said that her family .... to the new restaurant then.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) will go

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If they had left earlier, they .... (not/miss) the train.
2. We .... (shouldn't) help elderly people.
3. Have you .... (never) been to Hurghada?
4. Even though the test was hard, she .... (can't) answer all questions.
5. Robots will .... (being) developed to do important tasks.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. Why did Zeina believe the garden could bring students together?..............
2. In what ways did the garden change the school community? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The students built a better .... system.
   a) cooking b) watering c) lighting d) sound
4. The garden became a .... of what students could do together.
   a) symbol b) problem c) secret d) story

E Writing

7 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Smart robots"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model (10)

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialog:

Malak : What are you doing now?

Mostafa : (1).. .

Malak : What's your poster about?

Mostafa : (2).. .

Malak : Helping animals! (3)..?

Malak : I'll put it inside the class.

Malak : How will you share your idea with the class?

Mostafa : (4).. .

Malak : (5)..?

Mostafa : Yes, I practiced talking about it a lot.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

show – get – had – have – tools – strengthen

Many young people use social media chat or texting to stay in touch. These (1)............................ help us keep a strong connection, even when there is a distance between us. If we (2)............................ ignored these ways of communication, we might have felt upset or lonely. Having discussions and conversations can (3)............................ relationships and help solve conflicts before they grow. It is always better to (4)............................ care and listen carefully.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One Saturday, Sarah decided not to use her tablet. She wanted to see how much fun she could have without it. In the morning, she helped her mother cook breakfast. Then she went outside to ride her bike with her brother. Later, they visited their grandma, who lives nearby. In the afternoon, Sarah played a board game with her cousin and read a fun book. She felt relaxed and happy. While she usually watched videos all day, she realized she could enjoy herself without screens. In the evening, her family had dinner together and talked in person about their day. Sarah felt more connected to them. Although she missed her games a little, she was proud of how she spent her day. She even wrote in her journal about it before bed. Sarah decided to balance her screen time better from now on.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is Sarah ....
   - a) didn't like cooking
   - b) spent a day without screens and enjoyed it
   - c) wanted to fix her tablet
   - d) played games on her tablet all day
2. Sarah .... in the morning
   - a) played a game on her tablet
   - b) helped her mom and rode her bike
   - c) slept all day
   - d) watched TV

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did Sarah do in the afternoon?............................
4. Why do you think Sarah felt more connected to her family?............................
5. Summarize what Sarah did during her screen-free day. ....
6. What do you think Sarah will do next weekend?............................

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Can you .... which flower is your favorite in the garden?
   a) identify b) involve c) judge d) process
2. Phones and loud music can be big .... in class.
   a) movements b) surprises c) distractions d) distances
3. Waleed's .... to help his team win made him train extra hard.
   a) president b) bravery c) determination d) courage
4. The coach .... the team's confidence by telling them they played very well yesterday.
   a) trusted b) boosted c) arranged d) completed
5. My little brother, Emad, has .... how to ride his new bicycle without help.
   a) learns b) learn c) learning d) learned
6. Mariam would have won the race if she .... at the very end.
   a) didn't fall b) won't fall c) wouldn't fall d) hadn't fallen

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (must) tell lies to your parents, even if you're scared or nervous.
2. Before crossing the busy street, always .... (looking) both ways very carefully.
3. If Heba .... (catch) the bus, she would've arrived on time.
4. The test .... (prepare) by the teacher soon.

D The Story

6 A) Answer the following questions

1. What was the biggest change Zeina noticed at the end of the year?........
2. What did Zeina learn about leadership after the project?..............................

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ms. Hoda liked Zeina's ....
   a) laziness b) determination c) confusion d) fear
4. The main lesson of the story is that teamwork and determination can make ....
   a) nothing b) a big difference
   c) people angry d) gardens die

E Writing

7 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Balancing your screen time"

....

Final Guiding Models (Azhar)

Model (1)

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Leila and Omar talk about how stories can affect our feelings.

Leila : Do stories make you feel good, Omar?

Omar : (1).. . They make me happy or sad.

Leila : (2)..?

Omar : Yes, they teach us about feelings.

Leila : Is that good?

Omar : (3).. . It helps me understand people better.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with word(s) from the list:

care - up - benefit - trash - down

At school lunch, I saw a boy throw (1).............................. on the ground. He laughed, but it didn't seem right. I thought about what to do. I chose to pick it (2).............................. and throw it away. Later, he came and helped me. He said, "I should (3).............................. more." That was a big moment. We've kept the lunch area clean ever since. A small action made a big (4).............................. for everyone in the school environment.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The future home is made of a lot of ideas. It will include devices and technology which will make work easier. It will become safer and friendlier.

Carbon output in the future homes should be as minimal as possible so the use of renewable energy will be the best option in this case. Solar energy that is 100% ecofriendly and renewable will be the main source of energy in the future homes by the use of solar panels. The size of the homes will be another important thing as the population rises, so houses will provide us with everything, but in small sizes. The use of water will be important as clean water is becoming limited, so the homes will have to be equipped with devices which use less water to reduce our use.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where do solar panels get their energy? ....
2. What will we use to reduce carbon output? ....
3. How do you think we will reduce our use of water in our future homes?
....
4. Give a short summary for this text. ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5. This passage is talking about ....
   a) population   b) future cities
   c) solar panels   d) future homes
6. Our future homes will be .... to the environment.
   a) worse   b) friendlier
   c) less helpful   d) more damaged

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The children's .... for their sick teacher made them create beautiful cards.
   a) type   b) mind   c) empathy   d) awareness
2. It took a lot of .... for Jana to memorize all the words for her spelling test.
   a) reminder   b) effort   c) desk   d) chart
3. The policeman had enough .... to face the thief and arrest him.
   a) courage   b) carriage   c) fear   d) fight
4. If we had gone to the museum, we .... the new exhibition.
   a) would see   b) saw
   c) would have seen   d) see

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The picture .... (not/fall) down if you had hung it on the wall properly.
2. The mechanic will .... (be fixed) the car soon.
3. Please .... (to ask) for help when you don't understand something in your lesson today.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"My personality"

....

....

Model (2)

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Aya and Kareem are talking about reading stories and its benefits.

Aya : Do you enjoy reading stories, Kareem?

Kareem : (1).. .

Aya : When do you read?

Kareem : (2).. .

Aya : Does it help you sleep better?

Kareem : (3).. .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with word(s) from the list:

curious - task - welcomed - shared - newcomer

During break time, our teacher gave us a special (1).............................. . "Listen closely and write down how others feel," she said. We had to watch a (2).............................. from another school. He stood near the break-time corner, holding a folded map. He looked (3).............................. but nervous. We felt sorry for him, but we didn't want to make it harder. By seeing through his eyes, we (4).............................. him kindly. He laughed with us before the bell rang.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Leila loved watching funny videos and chatting online. One weekend, the internet connection stopped working. Leila was shocked at first. She didn't know what to do. After a few minutes, she decided to call her friend and invite her over. They played games, made crafts, and even helped Leila's mom bake cookies. Leila felt so happy. While she missed her videos, she was surprised by how much fun she had. Her friend said, "We should do this more often!" That night, Leila wrote in her journal about her day. Although it started with a problem, it ended with a smile. Now, Leila plans time for screens and time for real-life fun. She realized that balancing screen time helps her feel more relaxed and joyful.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What activities did Leila do without the internet? ....
2. Why do you think Leila smiled at the end of the day? ....
3. What might Leila plan next weekend? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of this passage is ....
   - a) Leila's internet was broken forever
   - b) Leila found fun without using the internet
   - c) Leila went to the park alone
   - d) Leila wanted to buy a new phone
5. Leila felt .... when the internet first stopped.
   - a) happy b) relaxed c) shocked d) excited

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My brother designed a/an .... to sell his new product.
   - a) invention b) medicine
   - c) education d) advertisement
2. Unluckily, we lost our internet .... during the meeting.
   - a) voice b) excitement c) idea d) connection
3. Salma felt very .... before the exam because she hadn't studied enough.
   - a) realized b) focused c) stressed d) started
4. If Rawan had found the lost key, she .... the treasure box.
   - a) could have opened b) can open
   - c) opened d) will open

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The new car .... (has/stole) for a few days.
2. If she .... (drove) more slowly, the accident wouldn't have happened.
3. We walked to school .... (because) it was snowing.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"What change have you tried to make?"

....

....

....

....

....

Model (3)

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Kareem and Ziad talk about how AI can help in hospitals.

Kareem : Do you think AI can help in hospitals?

Ziad : (1).. .

Kareem : (2)..?

Ziad : It can remind them to take medicine.

Kareem : Will it do surgeries?

Ziad : Yes, some robots already help with surgery.

Kareem : Is that safe?

Ziad : (3).. .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with word(s) from the list:

strengths – Confidence – shape – worried – popular

In my class, some students think being (1)........................ is the most important thing. But I don't think so. I believe being kind and helpful is more important. (2)........................ comes from knowing yourself, not from what people say. You should know your (3)........................ and feel proud of them. My life experiences helped (4)........................ me into someone who helps others.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Menna and her cousin Hany used to call each other every evening. They would tell jokes, share stories, and talk about school. One day, Hany didn't answer Menna's call. She tried again the next day, but still no answer. Menna thought he was ignoring her and sent him a rude message. Later, Hany replied, "Sorry! I lost my phone." Menna felt ashamed and called to say sorry. Hany laughed and said, "Don't worry, I missed you too!" They laughed and promised to be honest next time. Since then, they always explain things before getting upset.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did Menna and Hany talk about during their calls? ....
2. When did Hany lose his phone? ....
3. Why did Menna send Hany a rude message? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The story is mostly about a ....

a) game
b) misunderstanding
c) new phone
d) city

5. Hany didn't answer Menna's calls because he ....

a) was angry with Menna
b) was asleep
c) lost his phone
d) had exams

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister is ....; she wants to get all the information she needs on "China" to do her research.

a) active
b) lazy
c) curious
d) furious

2. To .... means to share thoughts, feelings, or ideas.

a) communicate
b) resolve
c) supportive
d) understand

3. The gentle farmer .... sixty-seven grows the biggest apples in the town.

a) hesitated
b) aged
c) stated
d) reminded

4. .... touch the hot stove because it might burn your fingers badly.

a) Not
b) Don't
c) No
d) Doesn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (hear) that song on the radio many times before.
2. Would Sarah have come with us to the zoo if we .... (invite) her?
3. Mariam, you .... (should) eat too much candy before dinner.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"What I Stand For"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Model (4)

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hana and Dina talk about fun things to do without using a tablet.

Hana: I'm bored without my tablet.

Dina : How about drawing or painting something?

Hana: (1).. .

Dina : (2)..?

Hana: I can draw animals.

Dina : That's good. (3).. .

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with word(s) from the list:

overcome – view – understanding – feelings – overcomes – mistakes

Last week, I read a story about a girl who lost her pet cat. It made me have sad (1)...................... for her. My friend said the story helped him see things in a new (2)...................... . I understood that even young children can (3)...................... problems in life. The story taught me to be nice and (4)...................... with other people, because we never know what they are going through.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

At school, some students always forgot to bring their lunch boxes. The teacher asked, "Can we use design thinking to help?" The class said yes! They talked to the kids who forgot. One said, "I leave it on the table." Another said, "I'm in a hurry in the morning." The class sketched ideas like door signs, reminder songs, and lunch box stickers. The sticker idea won. They made bright stickers that said, "Got Lunch?" and gave them to the forgetful kids. The next week, fewer kids forgot! They all felt happy. One student said, "This helped me a lot!" Design thinking showed the class how to listen, plan, and test ideas to solve real problems.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What problem did the class want to fix? ....
2. Why do you think the sticker idea worked well? ....
3. What steps did the students follow to solve the problem? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is .... others.

a) helping b) ignoring
c) forgiving d) forgetting

5. ".............................." was written on the stickers.

a) Be Quiet b) Got Lunch?
c) Eat Fast d) Clean Your Hands

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Because she was ...., Heba listened carefully to the story her grandfather was telling.

a) resilient b) bold c) curious d) confused

2. If they had .... the forms earlier, they would have been accepted.

a) submitted b) misunderstood c) caught d) faced

3. The news that some people die of hunger is really ....

a) interesting b) depressing c) hopeful d) careful

4. Camelia has already .... her grandmother three times this week.

a) calling b) call c) called d) calls

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How would you have .... (feel) if you had found a little puppy on your way home?
2. We .... (shouldn't) help our classmates when they are confused or need support.
3. .... (Not/picking) flowers from other people's gardens without asking permission first.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"How to solve a problem"

....
....
....
....
....

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

رقم الإيداع: 2025/8845
خدمة العملاء: 16766

معاك الكتاب معاك الـ APP



نزّل تطبيق الأضواء

استمتع برحلة تعليمية تفاعلية

1 شــاهد فيديوهات

لفهم دروسك بشكل مُبسط وسهل.

2 التدريبات والاختبارات الإلكترونية

لحل تدريبات واختبارات أكثر على كل درس.

3 100% إجابات

راجع إجاباتك من خلال مسح الـQR الخاص بـ«100% إجابات» الموجود بالصفحة الأولى.

Free Gifts

- Ongoing Assessment & Final Revision
- Your Personal Code

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

16766

6 221133 001311

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

قام بإعداد هذه النسخة pdf
وفهرستها ورفعها :
د محمد أحمد محمد عاصم
نسألكم الدعاء